

MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR THE

**AVIATION INTERMEDIATE  
MAINTENANCE  
(AVIM) BATTALION AND COMPANY**



**HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited

1ARMY TRAINING AND  
EVALUATION PROGRAM  
No. 1-500-MTP

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
WASHINGTON, DC, 1 April 2002

# MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE AVIATION INTERMEDIATE MAINTENANCE (AVIM) BATTALION AND COMPANY

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
<b>PREFACE</b> .....	iii
<b>CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING</b>	
1-1. General.....	1-1
1-2. Supporting Material .....	1-1
1-3. Contents .....	1-3
1-4. Missions and Tasks.....	1-4
1-5. Training Principles.....	1-5
1-6. Training Strategy .....	1-7
1-7. Conducting Training .....	1-9
1-8. Force Protection (Safety) .....	1-11
1-9. Environmental Protection .....	1-12
1-10. Evaluation.....	1-14
1-11. Feedback.....	1-14
<b>CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIXES</b>	
2-1. General.....	2-1
2-2. Mission-to-Collective Tasks Listing .....	2-1
2-3. Supporting References-to-Collective Tasks Listing .....	2-9
2-4. Examples of Individual-to-Collective Tasks Listing .....	2-33
<b>CHAPTER 3. TRAINING PLANS</b>	
3-1. General.....	3-1
3-2. Developing Training Exercises.....	3-3
3-3. Long-Range Planning.....	3-4

<sup>1</sup>DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 1-926-MTP, June 1991; ARTEP 1-926-30-MTP, March 1990; ARTEP 1-927-30-MTP, September 1990; ARTEP 1-933-30-MTP, September 1989; ARTEP 1-946-MTP, January 1992; ARTEP 1-946-30-MTP, January 1992; and ARTEP 1-947-30-MTP, June 1991.

	<b>Page</b>
3-4. Short-Range Planning .....	3-8
3-5. Near-Term Planning .....	3-13
3-6. Training the Headquarters .....	3-14
3-7. Mission Outline .....	3-17
<b>CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISES</b>	
<b>Section I. Introduction</b> .....	4-1
4-1. General .....	4-1
4-2. Field Training Exercise .....	4-1
4-3. Situational Training Exercise .....	4-1
4-4. Other Training Exercises .....	4-1
<b>Section II. FTX-1: Perform Logistic and CSS Operations</b> .....	4-3
<b>Section III. STX-1: Provide Personnel, Administrative, and Logistic Support</b> .....	4-11
<b>Section IV. STX-2: Perform Aviation Supply/Repair Parts/AVIM and Backup AVUM Support</b> .....	4-18
<b>CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES</b>	
5-1. Introduction .....	5-1
5-2. Structure .....	5-1
5-3. Format .....	5-1
5-4. Use .....	5-2
<b>CHAPTER 6. EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS</b>	
6-1. General .....	6-1
6-2. Preparing the Evaluation .....	6-1
6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations .....	6-6
6-4. Selecting and Training Observers-Controllers .....	6-7
6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces .....	6-9
6-6. Conducting the Evaluation .....	6-9
6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information .....	6-11
6-8. Conducting the After-Action Review .....	6-15
<b>APPENDIX A. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY</b> .....	A-1
<b>APPENDIX B. EXERCISE OPERATION ORDERS</b> .....	B-1
<b>APPENDIX C. RISK MANAGEMENT</b> .....	C-1
<b>APPENDIX D. TRAINING AIDS, DEVICES, SIMULATORS, AND SIMULATIONS</b> .....	D-1
<b>GLOSSARY</b> .....	Glossary-1
<b>REFERENCES</b> .....	References-1
<b>USER FEEDBACK</b> .....	Feedback-1

## PREFACE

The Army Training and Evaluation Program Mission Training Plan provides the aviation intermediate maintenance battalion and company guidelines for training and evaluation. Specifically, it describes a mission-oriented training program for the aviation AVIM units to perform their critical wartime mission as viewed from the commander's perspective. The objective is to develop bold and decisive commanders and staffs who lead their subordinates in performing maintenance, logistic, and combat service support operations.

MTPs are a basic source document for collective training. They are developed for use by all leaders who have training responsibilities. They are descriptive training documents that provide leaders with an inventory of collective tasks that describe *what* to train and a suggested method of *how* to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency for each unit echelon. This MTP stresses the themes of developing a METL, conducting a training assessment, identifying which collective tasks in the MTP should be trained, executing correct Army doctrine as found in FM 3-04.500(1-500), and training to win the battle. These themes support a successful training system covered in FM 7-10.1(25-100) and FM 7-10(25-101).

This MTP complements the Army's collective training doctrine from a commander's perspective. Tasks listed in this MTP are a combination of the AVIM tasks that support the theater support command, corps support command, and division support command. Some tasks may apply to the AVIM company/battalion, while other tasks may not apply to the unit or mission.

This MTP is intended for all AVIM units with the common mission to provide maintenance support operations. These units include—

- **01925A000 Aviation Maintenance Battalion (AVIM) (AASLTD).**
- 01926A000 HHC, Aviation Maintenance Battalion (AASLTD).
- 01927A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (AASLTD).
- 01927A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (AASLTD).
- 01933A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (Heavy).
- 01933A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (Heavy).
- 01933A300 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (Heavy) .
- 01933A400 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (Heavy).
- 01933A500 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (2ID).
- **01945A100 Aviation Maintenance Battalion (AVIM) (Corps) (I Corps).**
- 01946A000 HHD, Aviation Maintenance Battalion (Corps).
- 01943A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (278<sup>th</sup> RAS).
- 01947A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (I/V Corps).
- 01947A400 Aviation Maintenance Company (I Corps).
- 01947A600 Aviation Maintenance Company (I Corps).
- 01947A800 Aviation Maintenance Company (I Corps).
- **01945A200 Aviation Maintenance Battalion (AVIM) (Corps) (III Corps).**
- 01946A000 HHD, Aviation Maintenance Battalion (Corps).
- 01943A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (3<sup>d</sup> ACR).
- 01947A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (III/V Corps).
- 01947A300 Aviation Maintenance Company (III Corps).
- 01947A500 Aviation Maintenance Company (III Corps).
- 01947A700 Aviation Maintenance Company (III Corps).

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

- **01945A300 Aviation Maintenance Battalion (AVIM) (Corps) (V Corps).**
- 01946A000 HHD, Aviation Maintenance Battalion (Corps).
- 01947A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (I/V Corps).
- 01948A100 Aviation Maintenance Company V Corps).
- **01945A400 Aviation Maintenance Battalion (AVIM) (Corps) (XVIII Corps).**
- 01946A000 HHD, Aviation Maintenance Battalion (Corps).
- 01943A300 Aviation Maintenance Company (2<sup>d</sup> ACR).
- 01948A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (XVIII Corps).
- 01948A400 Aviation Maintenance Company (XVIII Corps).
- 01948A600 Aviation Maintenance Company (XVIII Corps).
- 01948A800 Aviation Maintenance Company (XVIII Corps).
- 01953A000 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (ABND).
- 01967A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (EAC—NEA/SWA).
- 01967A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (EAC—Alaska).
- 01977A100 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (IDL).
- 01977A200 Aviation Maintenance Company (AVIM) (IDL).

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) directly to Commander, US Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

This publication has been reviewed for operations security considerations.

## CHAPTER 1

### UNIT TRAINING

#### 1-1. GENERAL

a. This MTP provides the AVIM commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit with tasks that support the—

- TSC, AVIM company.
- COSCOM, aviation maintenance battalion (battalion headquarters, headquarters and headquarters detachment, AVIM company), RAS AVIM company.
- DISCOM, air assault aviation maintenance battalion (battalion headquarters, headquarters and headquarters detachment, and headquarters company, AVIM company), and DASB AVIM company, airborne AVIM company, light division AVIM company.

b. Specific details of the AVIM units' training program depend on the following factors:

- Unit's METL.
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Training priorities of the unit.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

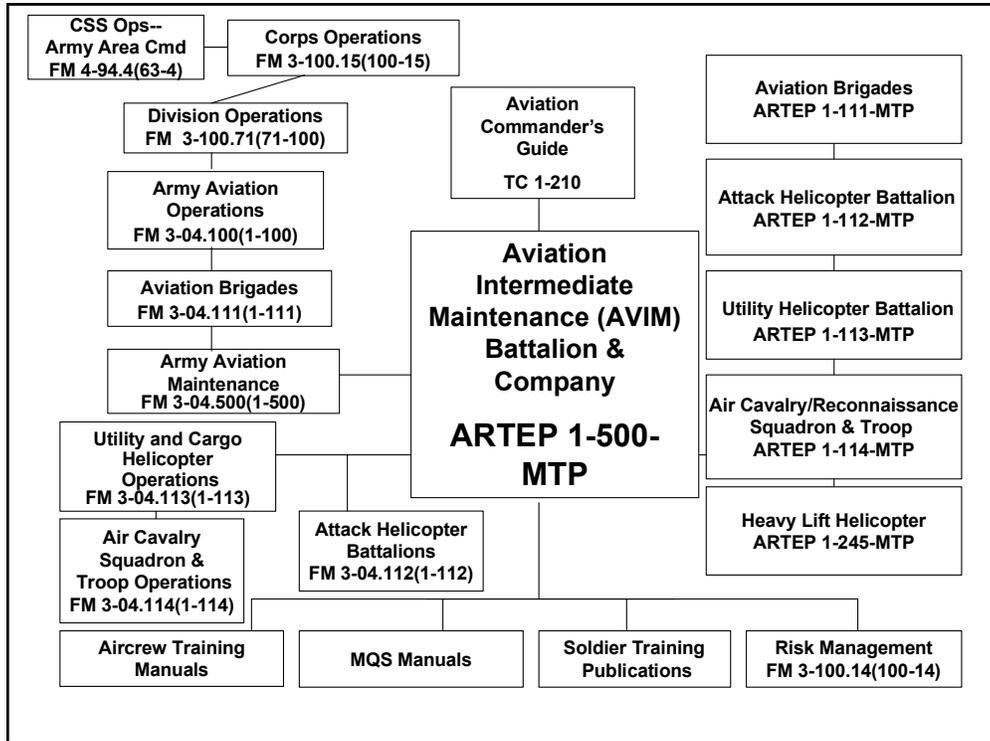
c. All 91 tasks in this AVIM MTP can be used in the following ways:

- As tasks common to all battalions.
- As tasks common to all companies.
- As tasks specific to the support operations section.
- As tasks specific to the AVIM companies.

#### 1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIAL

The AVIM battalion or company is a unit usually employed as a battalion/company. It is involved in the CSS role. This MTP describes the critical, wartime, mission-oriented battalion and company training that is part of the AVIM training program. The AVIM battalion and company will enable the supported commander to mass combat power rapidly at the decisive time and place to affect the battle's outcome. The battalion/company's training program is oriented toward combat service support and its critical wartime missions. In addition to this MTP, the training program is based on the following publications (Figure 1-1 illustrates the relationship of these publications).

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**



**Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationships.**

- a. Soldier's manuals for the appropriate MOS and skill level.
- b. Military qualification standards manual for (aviation) company-grade officers' soldier training program, STP-1-15-II-MQS.

**NOTE:** MQS manuals will be phased out upon replacement by Officer Foundation Standards products.

- c. ARTEP 1-111-MTP.
- d. ARTEP 1-112 MTP.
- e. ARTEP 1-113-MTP.
- f. ARTEP 1-114-MTP.
- g. ARTEP 1-245-MTP.
- h. FM 4-94(FM 63-4).
- i. FM 3-100.15(FM 100-15).
- j. FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100).
- k. FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100).
- l. FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111).
- m. FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112).

- n. FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113).
- o. FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114).
- p. FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500).
- q. FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14).
- r. TC 1-210.

**NOTE:** The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system through the use of CD-ROMs and the Internet. The SATS is a unit-level training development tool that ties into the TRADOC training database Automated System Approach to Training, (<http://www.asat.army.mil>). Through SATS, units can download current doctrine from the General Dennis J. Reimer Digital Library Data Repository (<http://155.217.58.100/dr>) for use in training and training development. The RDL DR (<http://155.217.58.58/atdls.htm>) is the official DA web site. It contains Army field manuals, training circulars, ARTEPs, MTPs, CATS, and STPs. These training products are *built* from the RDL DR database. More information on the RDL is available at DSN 927-5456. How to obtain SATS software and a user's guide for the database is available through the project manager at the Army Training Support Center. The telephone numbers are DSN 927-7001, extension 6504, and commercial 757-878-7001.

### 1-3. CONTENTS

This MTP comprises six chapters and four appendixes.

**a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.** This chapter provides information on the training program. It stresses aspects of training unique to AVIM aviation units. This chapter is a foundation for other chapters and appendixes and explains their use. It also explains how to use the MTP to set up an effective training program.

**b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.** The matrixes in this chapter show the relationship between battalion and company missions and supporting collective tasks. This chapter also contains the references for each collective task, sorted by the battlefield operating system.

**c. Chapter 3, Training Plans.** This chapter describes how to use this MTP to develop battalion-/company-level training plans. It also contains mission outlines. It assists commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions.

**d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.** This chapter provides guidance on planning, preparing, and executing battalion/company training exercises. These exercises may be modified to suit the training requirements of each individual unit.

**e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.** This chapter provides training criteria for all collective tasks that the battalion/company and its subordinate elements—staff, HHC, and CSS sections—must master so that the unit can perform its critical wartime missions. Each T&EO is a part of one or more critical missions. In various combinations, T&EOs compose larger training vehicles. These vehicles include the situational training exercises and field training exercises described in Chapter 4.

**f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations.** This chapter is a guide for planning, preparing, and executing evaluations of battalion/company training exercises. Evaluation involves determining proficiency, based on the training objectives of the exercises and this MTP. This chapter describes, in detail, how to conduct an AAR.

**g. Appendix A, Combined Arms Training Strategy.** This appendix addresses the overarching strategy of training as it applies to aviation maintenance. The CATS is the U.S. Army's training strategy

that captures training event frequency, critical gates, and supporting resources. The strategy describes the mix of training in the institution and unit and for the individual, both now and in the future. In addition, it prescribes the mix of training resources that Army aviation requires for present and long-range training.

**h. Appendix B, Exercise Operation Orders.** This appendix includes a suggested format for a sample OPORD. This example of an OPORD leads the trainer through the process of developing an order to coordinate the execution of an exercise. The sample OPORD pertains to the strategic, operational, and tactical operation of a maintenance unit.

**i. Appendix C, Risk Management.** This appendix aids the trainer or commander in assessing operational and fratricide hazards associated with a mission.

**j. Appendix D, Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations.** This appendix presents the USAAVNC simulation strategy as a management and planning tool for Army aviation simulation personnel.

#### 1-4. MISSIONS AND TASKS

**a.** This MTP concerns two types of missions for the AVIM battalion and company: stated missions, which are found in the TOE, and implied missions, which must be performed to accomplish the stated missions. This paragraph discusses the relationship of tasks to missions and their training requirements. Critical missions for the AVIM battalion/company as found in its CATS include—

- Conduct maintenance operations.
- Perform logistic and CSS operations.
- Provide personnel, administrative, and logistic support.
- Perform aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support.

**b.** The key to training and sustaining proficiency of these wartime tasks is understanding *how we train to fight* at every echelon. Training programs must result in demonstrated technical competence, confidence, and initiative in soldiers and their leaders. FM 7-0(25-100) establishes the Army's training doctrine. FM 7-10(25-101) describes techniques and procedures for planning, executing, and assessing training. TC 1-210 contains unique guidance for aviation commanders. Every commander is expected to know, understand, and apply the concepts found in these manuals.

**(1) Battle-focused training.** Battle focus is a concept used to derive peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. Battle focus guides the planning, execution, and assessment of each organization's training program. Battle focus ensures that unit members train as they are going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process. Commanders allocate resources for training based on the unit's METL. Implementation of battle focus enables commanders to structure a training program that copes with nonmission-related requirements while focusing on mission-essential training activities. Battle focus is recognition that—because of time or other resource constraints—a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task that it can perform. However, commanders can achieve a successful training program by focusing on a reduced number of mission-essential tasks.

**(2) Mission training plans.** Collective training builds supporting teams. It develops teamwork needed by units and provides a challenging environment where units at various echelons can train to progressively tougher and more realistic conditions. It prepares soldiers to perform collective tasks that are essential for success through training events. This manual is the basic source document for the collective training required by the aviation AVIM battalion/company. It is a descriptive training document that provides leaders with an inventory of critical tasks that describe *what* to train and a suggested method on *how* to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency. The CATS complements MTPs by describing *who*, *when*, *where*, and *how* collective tasks will be trained.

**(3) Combined Arms Training Strategies.** The CATS is the Army's *overarching training architecture*. It contains approved training and doctrinal strategy. It is the framework for total Army

structured training for both units and institutions. The CATS functionally groups tasks to guide the integration of tasks into combined-arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies. These strategies include events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer. CATS integrates training horizontally among levels of a type of unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team. Aviation CATS includes a crosswalk of individual, crew, and collective METL tasks. The training program developed and executed by an aviation AVIM unit is a component of the Army's CATS. The CATS provides direction and guidance on how the total Army will train. It also identifies the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and resources required to train to standard. These strategies give the commander a descriptive menu for training.

**(4) Integration of soldier, leader, and collective training.** A critical aspect of the battle-focus concept, in relating to maintenance support tasks, is to understand the responsibility for and the linkage between the collective mission-essential tasks and the supporting individual tasks. Commanders must provide the training guidance, resources, and focus to ensure that they are effectively and efficiently trained to standard. Fortunately, aviation commanders have senior warrant officers and aviation NCOs who have the technical and tactical expertise to train, evaluate, and provide management assistance to the commander. As a CSS team, the commander, command sergeant major, operations officer, and support operations officer must jointly coordinate the collective mission-essential tasks and the individual training tasks on which the unit will concentrate its efforts during a given period. NCOs primarily train and develop individual soldier skills. Officers at every level train units in CSS to established standards, during both individual and collective training.

## 1-5. TRAINING PRINCIPLES

This MTP is based on the training principles outlined in FM 7-0(25-100). These principles rest on the premise that training is the process that melds human and material resources into the required capabilities for the Army to accomplish assigned strategic roles. Aviation units are expected to fight and train as members of CSS teams. A battalion commander must prepare his staff to plan for operations across the BOS, with a focus on operations of the division or corps commander.

**a. Train as a Team.** Army doctrine places a premium on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute coalition operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Proficiency develops when battalions and companies train together. Leaders must regularly practice METL tasks across the full wartime spectrum of CSS. Commanders must actively seek opportunities to train across the BOS. Participation in and the coordination of training strategies with other commanders, formally and informally, are critical to the process. Preparation of long-range training calendars offers an opportunity to plan training exercises.

**b. Train as We Fight.** The goal of training is to achieve METL task proficiency. Units fight as they have been trained. To ensure success, soldiers and units must perform to established standards, which are rigidly enforced by leaders. The type of weather and terrain that a unit will face in the future when actually executing a combat mission is impossible to predict. Thus, AVIM training should be conducted under varying conditions that are both realistic and progressively more challenging. Night operations, using night-vision devices, are especially critical for aviation forces. AVIM aviation units must learn to live in and operate—to include doing maintenance—in the field. They must—

- Operate against capabilities-based OPFOR.
- Exercise their ASE.
- Instinctively employ self-protection measures.

**c. Use Appropriate Doctrine.** Training in an AVIM unit must conform to Army doctrine. Operational and supporting doctrinal manuals describe common procedures and uniform methods that permit commanders and organizations to adjust rapidly to changing situations. AVIM leaders and staffs must understand the supported unit's doctrine. Their aviation commanders need to ensure that

supported units understand aviation doctrine. Aviation commanders must consider themselves to be the primary LNOs in their units. They must be prepared to conduct maintenance training for supported units and coordinate training opportunities. Units will train by performing tasks to the standards specified in MTPs, ATMs, drills, SMS, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

**d. Use Performance-Oriented Training.** Aviators in an AVIM unit are aware of the need to build experience and expertise by frequently performing critical tasks and missions. Task-based aviation CATS is based on sustaining a proficiency in critical individual, crew, and collective tasks. Training resources must be optimized so that accepted tasks, conditions, and standards can be practiced continuously. Aviation commanders must use structured training to optimize the expenditure of limited flying hours, to include TADSS. In addition, leaders are encouraged to become familiar with the insertion of high-technology training techniques and other Army Training XXI initiatives such as distance learning and the RDL.

**e. Train to Challenge.** Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. This training builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Aviation maintenance soldiers should be knowledgeable in the operation of CSS and their unit's maintenance procedures. They must be confident and proficient. Individual, crew, and collective training must be conducted to standard continuously. Aviation maintenance and rearming and refueling personnel, leaders, staffs, commissioned officers, warrant officers, and enlisted personnel must all be challenged to optimize the capabilities of their unique systems.

**f. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques.** Aviation requires technically and tactically proficient soldiers. Commanders must use all available resources to maximum efficiency. The aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. Therefore, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. Not all individual and crew training can be done, however, while units are engaged in training a collective task. Some training resources must be allocated to individual and crew training, as outlined in appropriate ATMs. Again, the CATS takes this training into consideration and reflects the OPTEMPO required to support these tasks.

**g. Train to Maintain.** Maintenance training is a vital part of every training program. Readiness is a function of training, personnel, and equipment availability. It directly reflects the number of missions that a unit can accomplish. Leaders at all levels must balance the often-competing demands of a high mission OPTEMPO with maintenance training proficiency. During surges of high aviation training—such as FTXs, ARTEPs, and CTC rotations—aircraft readiness often decreases. This decrease is followed by an improvement in aircraft readiness rates as training intensity slows. Commanders are challenged to balance maintenance and training to remain in the training band of excellence.

**h. Make Commanders the Primary Trainers.** One of the keys to success is proficient leadership at each level of command. Leaders must understand the training process and their unique responsibilities. Leadership must be given the resources and guidance to train to warfighting standards. Commanders set the standards—personally and professionally—in and out of the cockpit. They plan, integrate, and provide guidance and resources for battalion/company training. The toughest training challenge for most commanders is to train a competent warfighting staff that has mastered the many tasks included in this MTP. Commanders are responsible for safety and standardization programs and the ATP. All aviation commanders have subordinate leaders (officers and NCOs), staff officers, instructor pilots, and standardization officers. These are specifically trained to support aviation training. AVIM units are expected to maintain the highest level of proficiency in the aircraft. Therefore, the battalion commander focuses company training and integrates the company into combined arms training. The company commander integrates his company into the combined arms fight. Like the battalion commander, the company commander is expected to become a pilot in command, a highly proficient crew member and leader in the aircraft. He integrates the platoons and executes company training. He trains platoon leaders and evaluate individuals and crews.

1-6. TRAINING STRATEGY

This MTP facilitates logical and efficient planning, preparation, and execution of unit training. The commander plans, prepares, and conducts unit training. He requires significant help, however, from many agencies within the chain of command to ensure that the battalion's training is maximized within available resourcing. The commander must understand Army training doctrine—FM 7-0(25-100)/FM 7-10(25-101)—as it relates to his specific warfighting requirements. He must also understand the resourcing and training development processes that facilitate his success.

a. **Training Development Process.** Figure 1-2 shows the Army's process of developing training for soldiers. The process for an AVIM battalion/company is initiated at USAAVNC. Aviation doctrine—such as FMs, TTPs, and training publications—CATS, MTPs, ATMs, STPs, and TSPs—are developed and continually updated with feedback from commanders. These manuals are being published and are being placed into a digital database for access by commanders and staffs as well as by personnel providing resources. Therefore, commanders and staffs must become familiar with the RDL so that they can access these digital publications.

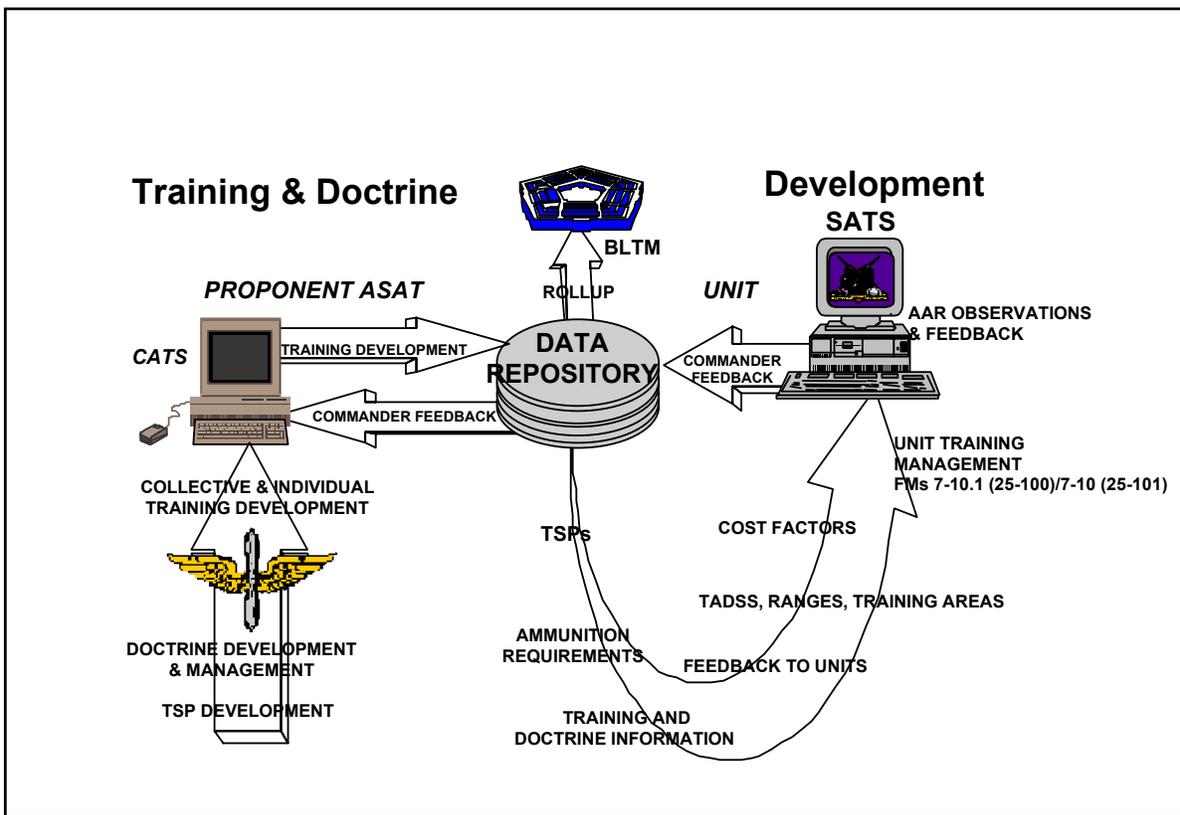


Figure 1-2. Training Development Process.

b. **Standard Army Training System.** SATS is central to training planning. SATS is the commander's interface with the Army's information database. It is the source of training and doctrinal publications, such as this MTP and the ATM; resourcing information; and tools to support the commander's training development. The SATS database provides computer-based access to CATS and the T&EOs in this MTP as well as to the supporting collective and individual tasks. SATS users obtain the CATS and T&EOs via the World Wide Web through the TRADOC RDL DR. They can then tailor task content to specific unit training needs and print the revised T&EOs for use in training exercises. The SATS database also gives users other management tools, such as a training schedule generator and

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

resourcing information, to determine required OPTEMPO. Paragraph 1-2 contains information about SATS.

**c. Battalion Commander's Training Strategy.** The battalion commander's training strategy is to provide structured training. This training prepares his soldiers to deploy, fight, and win in combat at any intensity level, anywhere in the world. His strategy allows for task-based, structured training. This strategy incorporates the three training environments: constructive, virtual, and live. His strategy focuses on his target audience: soldiers, leaders, staffs, and subordinate units. This strategy allows training progress in a *crawl-walk-run* fashion through the training environments. This training ensures that soldiers gain proficiency at the lower level before moving to the next level. The strategy reflects a thorough analysis and understanding of his unit's METL, CATS, ATM, and this MTP. It synchronizes with his specific set of resource constraints and training emphasis.

(1) Maintenance support capabilities and training plans must be synchronized. Army training doctrine challenges commanders to *train to sustain proficiency* or, in other words, sustain proficiency within the *band of excellence*. The aviator's challenge comes with the often-competing demands of keeping aviation maintenance within the band while sustaining training excellence. Aviation commanders must include the maintenance factor in planning to sustain their band of excellence.

(2) Individual, collective, and leader proficiency increases during training surges such as FTXs, ARTEPs, and CTC rotations. However, during high training intensity, aircraft maintenance excellence—as measured by aircraft operational readiness rates and bank time—will gradually decrease. Conversely, as training intensity slows, the status of aircraft maintenance will improve. These effects are manageable. A key element in any unit training strategy is identification of critical training gates. These are defined as training events that must be executed to standard before the soldier or unit moves on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task.

(a) Training gates follow the *crawl-walk-run* methodology. For instance, if the training strategy requires the unit to conduct an FTX and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the unit must execute the training tasks contained in the STX to standard before conducting the FTX.

(b) Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess whether his soldiers or units are ready to move to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the task force METL and the task force commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in the company team's training strategy.

**d. Standardization Program.** The aviation commander is responsible for his unit's standardization program. According to AR 34-4, standardization should improve and sustain proficiency and readiness among soldiers and units throughout the Army. Universal application of approved practices and procedures and reducing the adverse effects of personnel turbulence—such as retraining following reassignment—will accomplish this goal. The commander's primary standardization staff members include subordinate commanders, unit standardization officers, and NCOs.

**e. Resourcing.** Resourcing is a major challenge for all commanders. Appendix A covers CATS. It helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire required training resources. Aviation commanders must understand and work the resourcing processes. Dollars and hours must be tracked concurrently. Often it is a matter of educating higher level commanders and staffs; this can be done during a division commander's QTB.

**f. Readiness.** An AVIM battalion commander submits a recurring USR according to AR 220-1 and TC 1-210. The reports compare selected personnel, equipment, and training factors to determine wartime requirements and contain the commander's overall assessment of the unit. The unit training level indicates the current ability of the unit to perform assigned wartime missions based on the demonstrated proficiency of subordinate units, leaders, soldiers, and the availability of critical resources

required to support METL training. Proficiency is measured in terms of the unit's demonstrated ability to perform the tasks as stated in the approved unit METL. Commanders use results from—

- Recent external evaluations to MTP standards.
- Training densities at the CTCs.
- Emergency deployment readiness exercises
- Field training exercises.
- Command post exercises.
- Combined arms live-fire exercises.
- Operational readiness exercises.
- Other training events described in the units' CATS.

TC 1-210 contains crew-readiness guidelines. These guidelines emphasize collective proficiency, rather than currency, as the standard for individual aviators, crews, and units. Most aviation units are resourced to a command-and-control level of readiness.

**g. Sustainment Training.** First, individuals and units must be trained to a required level of proficiency. Then, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustained proficiency. Army units prepare to accomplish wartime missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks rather than by infrequent *peaking* to the appropriate level of wartime proficiency. Sustainment training enables crews and individuals to operate in the *band of excellence* described in FM 7-0(25-100) by repetitions of critical task training. MTPs, ATMs, and the ITEP are tools to help achieve and sustain collective, crew, and individual proficiency. The aviation task-based CATS crosswalks these tools to support the development of unit training plans.

**h. Training Management.** To ensure proficiency at all levels, the commander's collective challenges include—

- Developing a battle-focused ATP with the battle-focused plans of the other combined-arms team members.
- Synchronizing individual, crew, and collective training.
- Managing scarce resources such as flying hours, time, and maintenance support.

**i. Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations.** It is difficult to train and maintain a modern aviation maintenance battalion/company at a training "T" level of proficiency without using TADSS. Resources, environmental restrictions, PERSTEMPO, and safety limit the unit's ability to follow the dictum to *train as we fight*. Commanders are encouraged to become familiar with the Army's training modernization process, Army Training XXI, to ensure that they capitalize on high-technology training concepts such as distance learning using Classroom XXI.

**j. Protecting the Force (Safety).** The protection of aviation soldiers and their weapon systems is a way of life in aviation. An effective training program that is well thought out and planned, based on appropriate regulations and guidance, is arguably the most important factor in any unit's safety program—when every soldier in the unit embraces it.

## 1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING

This MTP facilitates logical and efficient planning, preparation, coordination, and execution of unit training. Although coordination is not discussed as a separate step, it must take place throughout the entire process. Continuous coordination reduces the likelihood of unforeseen training distracters. It helps ensure that enough resources will be on hand for training. It also provides the commander with a means to identify and address issues before they become serious challenges. Coordination is the thread that binds the training process together. It should be encouraged at each level of command. Coordination between line units and AVIM company commanders, as an example, can often lead to valuable, mutually

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

supporting training opportunities for both units. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of the battalion/company's training plan. It is an expression of the commander's vision, based on an understanding of the unit's mission, doctrine, capabilities, supporting and supported units' doctrine and capabilities, enemy capabilities, training philosophy, and the training environment.

**a.** Planning for the training program involves leaders at all levels of the unit organization. Each subordinate must understand the higher commander's intent. In turn, the subordinate must develop his own intent and synchronize his training into his commander's plan.

**(1)** The brigade commander is the primary trainer of all the battalions/companies within the brigade. He develops a comprehensive, long-term training strategy, encompassing a variety of training events such as FTXs and STXs. Based on the unit's METL, the commander initially assesses the entire brigade and the battalion and its companies to identify systemic weaknesses. He develops a training focus and specifies the individual and collective tasks that he wants to train and evaluate. Critical to the planning process of a brigade and its subordinate units is the synchronization of its training plan with the division/corps commanders and supported units.

**(2)** The battalion commander will use the brigade commander's plan to define his responsibilities and to develop and execute his own training strategy. He helps the company commanders plan and execute training for their units. He will usually focus on individual leader training, collective tasks, and battle drills, primarily through STXs.

**(3)** Company leaders then focus on individual and collective training. Companies should be able to perform all collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate field manuals, MTPs, ATMs, and unit SOPs. Therefore, companies should plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in battalion-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individual crew members and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the company commander can use the AVCATT, sand-table exercises, ROC drills, and OPORD drills to ensure that the unit has a basic understanding of the tasks that it must execute.

**(4)** TC 1-210 provides critical guidance to commanders at all levels on how to integrate individual, crew and collective training in their aviation training strategy. Aviation commanders use a *crawl-walk-run* strategy for individual and crew training and then integrate individual and crew sustainment training into their collective training strategy.

**b.** In developing the battalion/company training plan, leaders at all levels should follow the principles outlined in FM 7-0(25-100) and FM 7-10(25-101). In addition, they should use this MTP, the ATM, and TC 1-210 as guides. They should employ the following development *tools* from this MTP.

**(1)** The lists in Chapter 2 and the battalion CATS identify the battalion collective tasks and leader tasks used during training exercises.

**(2)** The mission outlines in Chapter 3 show the hierarchy of related missions that must also be trained to meet the commander's goals. The outlines are adjustable, allowing leaders to tailor STXs to their needs.

**(3)** Chapter 4 provides guidance for planning and conducting exercises used to train designated missions (FTXs) or single tasks or groups of related tasks (STXs). TC 1-210 and the CATS support the integration of individual and crew training into these FTXs and STXs.

**(4)** Chapter 5 contains training and evaluation outlines for the battalion/company collective tasks that support the critical wartime operations.

**(5)** Chapter 6 provides guidance for planning, conducting, and evaluating company exercises.

**c.** There is never enough time to train everything. In developing their training plans, therefore, leaders must prioritize the tasks that require training. They should focus on their units' biggest

operational challenges and on their most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, commanders must conduct, according to TC 25-30, a training meeting with all leaders in their units—including company commanders, company first sergeants, company standardization, and company safety officers—to analyze training requirements and prioritize tasks. This kind of session can also help to identify weak areas that require the attention of trainers and leaders.

**d.** Once the unit leaders have identified the tasks to be trained, they must integrate them into a training schedule. The company commander may submit a list of the tasks and selected training events to the battalion commander. The commander, in turn, develops his own list, but he must review the company commander's recommendations. Once the commander has approved the list of tasks and related training events, he includes them on the battalion training schedule. The battalion commander can use the following procedures:

- List the tasks according to their priority and the frequency with which they need to be trained.
- Determine the amount of time required and decide how multiechelon training will be used.
- Determine the site for the training.
- Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
- Organize needs into blocks of time and required training resources, such as equipment, and suitable training areas.

**e.** The QTB—ATB for RC units—is important to the battalion commander. It is the forum in which commanders identify their training resource needs and get resource commitments from the higher commander. It is an opportunity for the battalion's leaders to discuss warfighting and training challenges with their senior commander. The focus should be on the unit's proficiency level at the individual and collective levels. It is an opportunity for a senior commander to coach and teach subordinates on the fine points of his philosophy and strategies in all aspects of warfighting. It is also an excellent opportunity for a subordinate commander and his key leaders to better understand how their METL relates to the battle-focused training programs of their senior commanders and peers.

**f.** Army Reserve and Army National Guard Aviation units continue to face multiple challenges. These challenges include equipment modernization, declining resources, and ever-increasing operational requirements. Tactically, collective training is the most challenging issue for the commander of these units. Commanders need to become more innovative in their approach to training opportunities. They can do this by managing and allocating resources, based on a tier concept, to meet readiness requirements. IDT periods are used mainly for individual and crew training. AT periods include rotational deployments in support of JCS exercises, NTC/JRTC support, and worldwide partial selective reserve call-ups. These training periods focus on collective training. Army National Guard aviation units also remain a valuable asset in state and local emergencies. This dual-mission capability, unique to the National Guard, meets this need while strengthening ties to the local community.

## **1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY)**

**a.** Military history reveals risk as a principle of operations and the severe consequences resulting from not effectively managing it. Military operations are inherently risky and dangerous—whether in training or in actual operations. The element of risk, along with the combined effects of terrain, time, and the environment—and the designed efforts of the enemy to induce failure—can combine to produce disastrous results. Their outcome cannot be left to play out according to chance or in the hope that things will work out well. As an institution, the Army demands responsible action, which includes protecting soldiers as they accomplish their mission. Complacency or a cavalier disregard of risk is not acceptable. Articulating risk—collecting data, quantifying risk, and making a decision—is a command responsibility.

**b.** Risk management identifies operational risks so that hazards can be reduced or eliminated. Risk management allows units to operate successfully in high-risk environments. Leaders at every level are responsible for identifying hazards, taking measures to reduce or eliminate hazards, and then

accepting risk only to the point that the benefits outweigh the potential losses. The Army's doctrinal manuals articulate the risk-management process as the principal risk-reduction tool. Risk management is a fully integrated element of planning and executing operations. The goal is to make risk management a routine part of planning and executing operational missions. Therefore, it is fully integrated into this MTP.

## **1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION**

Protection of natural resources is an ever-increasing concern to the Army. All unit leaders should minimize and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment during training. The commander's challenge is to conduct tough, realistic training while complying with environmental restrictions.

**a. Environmental Awareness Involved With Maintenance and Logistical Support.** Aviation units use large amounts of hazardous materials during routine maintenance. Commanders are responsible for the proper disposal of oils, lubricants, and rags. The operation of FARPs is especially challenging because of the potential for major environmental catastrophes. Most training areas have specific environmental SOPs for operations in those areas. The SOPs will specify the proper disposal of oils and lubricants, using drip pans, and washing grease and oil off vehicles.

**NOTE:** Each U.S. installation is subject to local and state environmental regulations as well as federal legislation. The installation environmental office will have information on that specific installation. Personnel who are overseas or on deployment should contact a higher headquarters' S3/G3.

**b. Environmental Risk Management.** Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy and principles. It consists of the following steps.

**(1) Identify hazards.** Identify potential sources of environmental degradation during analysis of the factors of METT-TC. Environmental hazards are conditions that could pollute air, soil, or water and/or destroy cultural or historical artifacts.

**(2) Assess hazards.** Use the environmental risk-assessment matrix (Figure 1-3) to analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation for each training activity. The matrix allows trainers to quantify the risk to the environment. The risk impact value is an indicator of the level of severity.

**(3) Make environmental risk decisions.** Make risk-management decisions based on the results of the assessment. Other than the overall risk rating, the risk-assessment matrix can also help make environmental risk decisions. For example, the unit operations that are most likely to cause damage (Step 2) can be the focus of risk controls. The environmental areas that are most at risk can also be determined (Step 3).

**(4) Brief the chain of command.** Brief all responsible individuals and agencies. These agencies should include the installation environmental office, if applicable, on proposed plans and high-risk environmental factors. Risk decisions are made at the level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**(5) Implement controls.** Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training standards, and rehearsals.

**(6) Supervise.** Enforce environmental protection standards during supervision of all training activities.

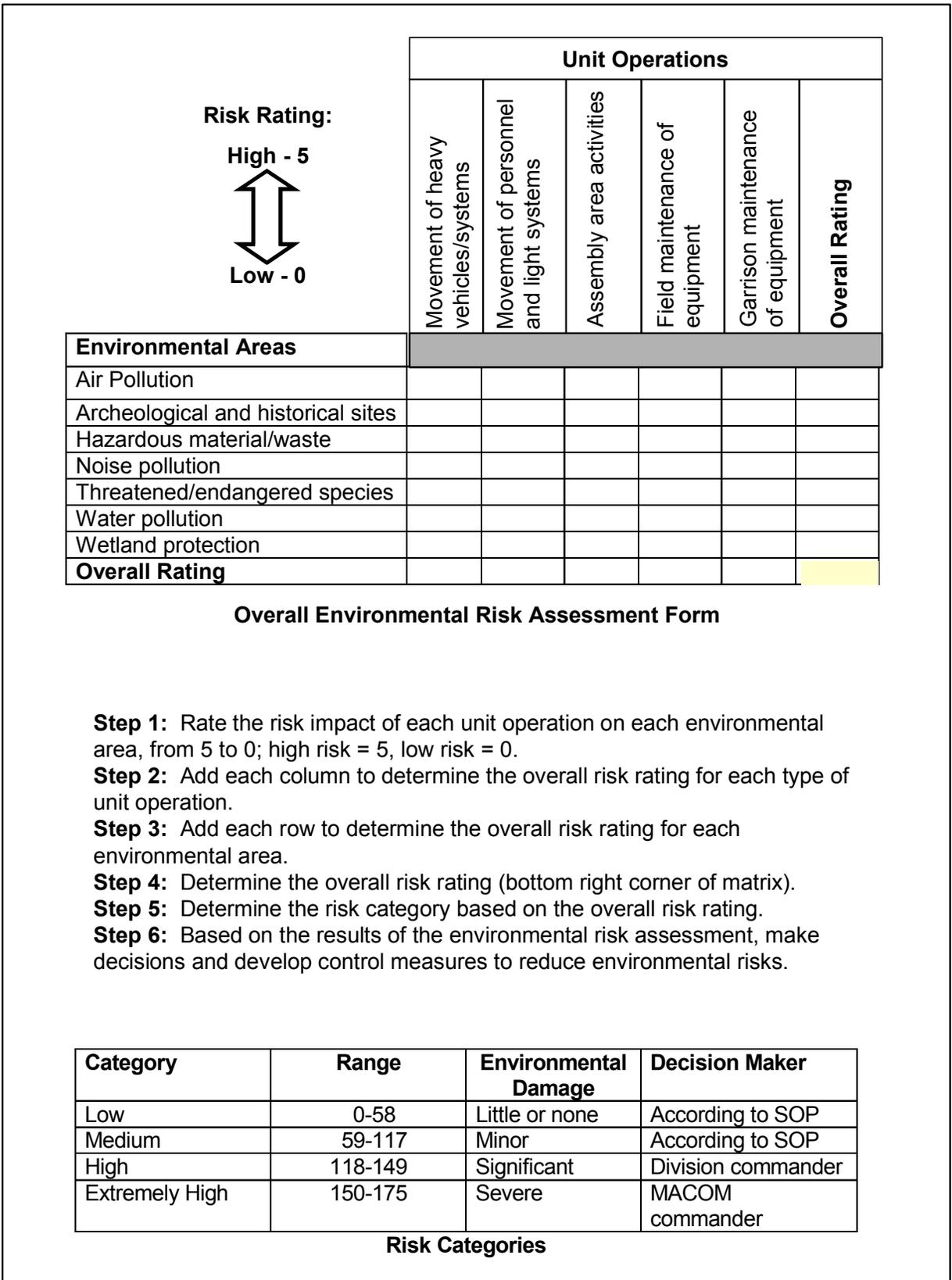


Figure 1-3. Environmental risk-management matrix.

## **1-10 EVALUATION**

The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

**a.** All training must be evaluated. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels; they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations (Chapter 6 ) are usually more formal. They are normally conducted by a headquarters that is two levels above the unit being evaluated.

**b.** This ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard; later, during a training exercise, they are not corrected when they execute that task poorly or incorrectly. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

**c.** Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators; however, on-the-spot evaluations should not be totally eliminated.

**d.** FM 7-10(25-101) provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also contains detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

## **1-11. FEEDBACK**

Recommendations for improving this MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that appropriate changes are included in future training publications. A questionnaire is included at the end of this MTP to facilitate the submission of recommendations and comments. The mailing address is Commander, U.S. Army Aviation Center, Directorate of Training, Doctrine, and Simulation, Doctrine Division, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000. Points of contact may be reached by telephone at (DSN) 558-2329 and commercial 334-255-2329.

## CHAPTER 2

### TRAINING MATRIXES

#### 2-1. GENERAL

The training listing assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table (Figure 2-1) lists unit missions.

MISSION TITLE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ CONDUCT AVIM MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS (BATTALION)</li><li>▪ CONDUCT AVIM MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS (COMPANY)</li><li>▪ CONDUCT SECURITY OPERATIONS</li><li>▪ PROVIDE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT</li><li>▪ PROVIDE AVIM SUPPORT</li><li>▪ PROVIDE COMBAT SUPPORT AND COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</li><li>▪ PROVIDE LOGISTICAL SUPPORT</li><li>▪ PROVIDE SUPPORT TO THE AVUM</li><li>▪ CONDUCT MISSION SUPPORT</li></ul>

Figure 2-1. Mission identification table.

#### 2-2. MISSION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASKS LISTING

This listing (Figure 2-2) identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The battlefield operating systems used in this listing are defined in TRADOC Pamphlet 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training focuses on operational weaknesses.

<b>MISSION: CONDUCT AVIM MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS (BATTALION)</b>		
<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-4-7734)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SECTION)
	(01-4-7735)	PLAN AND DIRECT AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES (SPO SECTION)
	(01-4-7737)	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM WHILE AVIM COMPANY/ BATTALION MOVES (SPO SECTION)
	(01-4-7740)	COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLEFIELD DAMAGE ASSESSMENT REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)
	(01-4-7741)	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION (SPO SECTION)
	(01-4-7742)	MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)
<b>MISSION: CONDUCT AVIM MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS (COMPANY)</b>		
<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-2-7011.01-00CS)	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7012.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7013.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7014.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7015.01-00CS)	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7016.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7017.01-00CS)	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIRS (BDAR)/ RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7020.01-00CS)	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7730.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-4-7736)	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
	(01-4-7738)	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing.

**MISSION: CONDUCT SECURITY OPERATIONS**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-2-0102.01-0NRC)	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
	(01-2-2048.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
	(01-2-7039.01-00CS)	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
	(01-1-1016.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
	(01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT

**MISSIONS: PROVIDE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT AND PROVIDE AVIM SUPPORT**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-2-7011.01-00CS)	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7012.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7013.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7014.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7015.01-00CS)	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7016.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7017.01-00CS)	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIRS (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7020.01-00CS)	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7730.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-4-7736)	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
	(01-4-7738)	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing (continued).**

**MISSION: PROVIDE COMBAT SUPPORT AND COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-1-0062.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
	(01-1-1023.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
	(01-1-1031.01-0NRC)	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
	(01-1-1102.01-0NRC)	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
	(01-1-1103.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1104.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING
	(01-1-1105.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
	(01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT
	(01-1-1402.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
	(01-1-1403.01-0NRC)	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
	(01-1-1405.01-0NRC)	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
	(01-1-1406.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
	(01-1-7743.01-0NRC)	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
	(01-2-0702.01-0NRC)	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
	(01-2-7015.01-0NRC)	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
	(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
	(01-2-2064.01-0NRC)	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
	(01-2-7000.01-00CS)	PLAN COMPANY MOVE
	(01-2-7001.01-00CS)	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE
	(01-2-7011.01-00CS)	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7012.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7013.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7014.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7017.01-00CS)	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-2-7032.01-00CS)	EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER
	(01-2-7037.01-00CS)	PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS
	(01-2-7102.01-0NRC)	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
	(01-2-7707.01-00CS)	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
	(01-2-7714.01-0NRC)	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
	(01-2-7730.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-3-7015.01-00CS)	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing (continued).**

**MISSION: PROVIDE COMBAT SUPPORT AND COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (CONTINUED)**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-3-7016.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-3-7020.01-00CS)	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
	(01-4-7008.01-00CS)	SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST
	(01-4-7042.01-00CS)	OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)
	(01-4-7708.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
	(01-4-7723.01-0NRC)	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
	(01-4-7734)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SECTION)
	(01-4-7735)	PLANS AND DIRECTS AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES
	(01-4-7736)	PERFORM MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
	(01-4-7737)	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/ BATTALION MOVES (SPO)
	(01-4-7738)	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
	(01-4-7740)	COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR), DOWNED AIRCRAFT RECOVERY TEAM (DART), AND AIRCRAFT EVACUATION OPERATIONS
	(01-4-7741)	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION
	(01-4-7742)	MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS
	(01-5-1110.01.0NRC)	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS PROGRAM

**MISSION: PROVIDE LOGISTICAL SUPPORT**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-1-1401.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
	(01-1-1402.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
	(01-1-1403.01-0NRC)	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
	(01-1-1405.01-0NRC)	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
	(01-1-1406.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
	(01-1-1023.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
	(01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT
	(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
	(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE UNIT LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
	(01-3-7020.01-00CS)	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVUM COMPANY

**MISSION: PROVIDE SUPPORT TO THE AVUM**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-4-7737)	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM WHILE AVIM COMPANY/ BATTALION MOVES (SPO SECTION)
---------------------------	-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing (continued).

**MISSION: CONDUCT MISSION SUPPORT**

<b>Collective Task(s)</b>	(01-1-0034.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
	(01-1-0062.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
	(01-1-1001.01-0NRC)	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1002.01-0NRC)	DIRECT THE STAFF
	(01-1-1016.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
	(01-1-1017.01-0NRC)	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)
	(01-1-1022.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT
	(01-1-1023.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
	(01-1-1024.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM
	(01-1-1028.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)
	(01-1-1031.01-0NRC)	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
	(01-1-1060.01-0NRC)	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL
	(01-1-1101.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)
	(01-1-1102.01-0NRC)	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
	(01-1-1103.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1104.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING
	(01-1-1105.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
	(01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT
	(01-1-1120.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)
	(01-1-1201.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)
	(01-1-1202.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES
	(01-1-1203.01-0NRC)	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE
	(01-1-1206.01-0NRC)	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR
	(01-1-1301.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)
	(01-1-1302.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)
	(01-1-1303.01-0NRC)	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1306.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
	(01-1-1311.01-0NRC)	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1351.01-00CS)	DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN
	(01-1-1401.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
	(01-1-1402.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing (continued).**

(01-1-1403.01-0NRC)	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
(01-1-1405.01-0NRC)	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
(01-1-1406.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
(01-1-7743.01-00CS)	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
(01-2-0001.01-0NRC)	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE
(01-2-0013.01-0NRC)	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK
(01-2-0017.01-0NRC)	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK
(01-2-0101.01-0NRC)	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
(01-2-0102.01-0NRC)	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
(01-2-0201.01-0NRC)	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
(01-2-0203.01-0NRC)	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
(01-2-0280.01-0NRC)	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
(01-2-0609.01-0NRC)	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
(01-2-0610.01-0NRC)	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
(01-2-0611.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION
(01-2-0702.01-0NRC)	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
(01-2-0715.01-0NRC)	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
(01-2-2035.01-0NRC)	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
(01-2-2036.01-0NRC)	REPORT INFORMATION
(01-2-2047.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES
(01-2-2048.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
(01-2-2051.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
(01-2-2052.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
(01-2-2064.01-0NRC)	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
(01-2-2160.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE
(01-2-7000.01-00CS)	PLAN COMPANY MOVE
(01-2-7001.01-00CS)	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE
(01-2-7011.01-00CS)	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-2-7012.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-2-7013.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-2-7014.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-2-7017.01-00CS)	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-2-7032.01-00CS)	EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing (continued).**

(01-2-7037.01-00CS)	PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS
(01-2-7039.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
(01-2-7102.01-0NRC)	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
(01-2-7707.01-00CS)	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
(01-2-7714.01-0NRC)	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
(01-2-7730.01-00CS)	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-3-7015.01-00CS)	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-3-7016.01-00CS)	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-3-7020.01-00CS)	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
(01-4-1352.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS
(01-4-1414.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING
(01-4-7008.01-00CS)	SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST
(01-4-7042.01-00CS)	OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)
(01-4-7508.01-00CS)	ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)
(01-4-7708.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
(01-4-7723.01-0NRC)	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
(01-4-7734)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SECTION)
(01-4-7735)	PLANS AND DIRECTS AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES
(01-4-7736)	PERFORM MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
(01-4-7737)	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO)
(01-4-7738)	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
(01-4-7740)	COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR), DOWNED AIRCRAFT RECOVERY TEAM (DART) AND AIRCRAFT EVACUATION OPERATIONS
(01-4-7741)	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION
(01-4-7742)	MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS
(01-5-1110.01-0NRC)	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task listing (concluded).**

### **2-3. SUPPORTING REFERENCES-TO-COLLECTIVE TASKS LISTING**

This listing (Figure 2-3) identifies references that provide additional information on each of the collective tasks.

<b>BOS: Develop Intelligence</b>		
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1060.01-0NRC	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 2-0(FM 34-1)	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
	FM 2-50.3(FM 34-25-3)	All-Source Analysis System and the Analysis and Control Element
	FM 2-19.202 (FM 34-25-6)	(S) Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Electronic Processing and Dissemination System (U)
	FM 2-33.4(FM 34-3)	Intelligence Analysis
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1206.01-0NRC	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations
	JP 3-50.21	Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2036.01-0NRC	REPORT INFORMATION
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75)	Combat Skills of the Soldier
<b>BOS: Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>		
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)	Cavalry Operations
	FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units And Operations
	FM 4.01-9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing.

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0101.01-0NRC	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)	Cavalry Operations
	FM 3-34.103(FM 5-103)	Survivability
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-09(FM 6-20)	Fire Support in the Airland Battle
	FM 3-21.10(FM 7-10)	The Infantry Rifle Company
	FM 3-21.7(FM 7-7)	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
	FM 4.01-9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
<b>BOS: Employ Firepower</b>		
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1022.01-0NRC	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-09(FM 6-20)	Fire Support in the Airland Battle
	FM 3-09.31(FM 6-71)	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support for the Combined Arms Commander
	FM 3-91.1(FM 71-1)	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>BOS: Protect the Force</b>		
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0034.01-0NRC	COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100)	Chemical Operations, Principles and Fundamentals
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 6-02.33(FM 24-33)	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
	AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program
	AR 380-19-1	(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U)
	FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30)	Physical Security
	FM 6-02(FM 24-1)	Signal Support Operations in the Airland Battle
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 381-10	US Army Intelligence Activities
	AR 381-12	Subversion And Espionage Directed Against the U.S. Army (SAEDA)
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30)	Physical Security

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0013.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100)	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0017.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0201.01-0NRC	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3)	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys
	FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75)	Combat Skills of the Soldier
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2035.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130)	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8)	Combined Arms for the Air Defense
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2052.01-0NRC	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8)	Combined Arms for the Air Defense
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2160.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
<b>BOS: Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>		
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM)
	AR 25-400-2	The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)
	FM 3-35(FM 100-17)	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1014.01-0NRC	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1031.01-0NRC	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	JP 3-50.21	Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1104.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)	Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft
	JP 3-50.21	Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 27-10	Military Justice
	DA PAM 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1107.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1403.01-0NRC	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-7743.01-00CS	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM)
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-35(FM 100-17)	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 4.01-9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0715.01-0NRC	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine
	FM 4-25.10(FM 21-10)	Field Hygiene and Sanitation
	FM 4-25.12(FM 21-10-1)	Unit Field Sanitation Team

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2054.01-0NRC	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 4-20.05(FM 10-27-4)	Organizational Supply for Unit Leaders
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2064.01-0NRC	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7000.01-00CS	PLAN COMPANY MOVE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 380-19	Information Systems Security
	TB 380-41	(O)Procedures for Safeguarding, Accounting, and Supply Control of COMSEC Material
	AR 690-11	Mobilization Planning and Management
	AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability
	AR 700-4	Logistic Assistance Program
	AR 70-1	Army Acquisition Policy
	DA PAM 710-2-2	Supply Support Activity Supply System Manual Procedures
	AR 71-32	Force Development and Documentation—Consolidated Policies
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
	AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7001.01-00CS	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-34.2 (FM 5-101)	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations
	FM 3-34.102(FM 5-102)	Countermobility
	FM 3-34.170(FM 5-170)	Engineer Reconnaissance
	FM 4-01(FM 55-1)	Transportation Operations
	FM 4-01.3(FM 55-10)	Movement Control
	FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
	FM 4-93.3(FM 63-3)	Corps Support Command
	FM 4-93.4(FM 63-4)	Combat Service Support Operations—Theater Army Area Command
	STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier’s Manual of Common Tasks, Skill Level 1
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 25-400-2	The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)
	AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability
	AR 700-4	Logistics Assistance
	AR 70-1	Army Acquisition Policy
	DA PAM 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-04.508(FM 1-508)	Maintaining Aviation Life Support Equipment
	SF 368	Product Quality Deficiency Report
	TM 1-1500-204-23-1	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (General Maintenance and Practices), Volume 1

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

	TM 1-1500-250-23	Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance for General Tie-Down and Mooring on All Series Army Models, AH-64, UH-60, CH-47, UH-1, AH-1, OH-58 Helicopters
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 25-51	Official Mail and Distribution Management
	AR 750-1	Army Material Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance
	FM 4-30.2(FM 9-43-1)	Maintenance, Operations and Procedures
	FM 4-20(FM 10-1)	Quartermaster Principles
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	TB 43-0106	Aeronautical Equipment Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP)
	TB 43-180	Calibration and Repair Requirements for the Maintenance of Army Materiel
	TB 750-25	Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair and Support (C&RS) Program
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7013.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	DA PAM 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7014.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	DA PAM 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7017.01-00CS	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)	Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7032.01-00CS	EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20)	The Infantry Battalion
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7037.01-00CS	PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20)	The Infantry Battalion
	FM 3-21.8(FM 7-8)	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-22.6(FM 22-6)	Guard Duty
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7707.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-02.6(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7714.01-0NRC	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System—Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
	FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11)	First Aid for Soldiers
	FM 4-02.6(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7730.01-00CS	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System—Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-3-7015.01-00CS	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 380-19	Information Systems Security
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	TM 1-1500-204-23-4	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Electrical and Instrument Procedures and Practices) Volume 4
	TM 11-5895-1174-23	Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Control, Communication System C-6533/ARC (NSN 5895-00-895-4175)
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-3-7016.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-3-7020.01-00CS	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)
	DA PAM 710-2-2	Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures
	AR 725-50	Requisitioning, Receipt, and Issue System
	AR 735-5	Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability
	AR 746-1	Packaging of Army Materiel for Shipment and Storage
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	TM 743-200-1	Storage and Materials Handling
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level
	DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7008.01-00CS	SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
	FM 4-93.2(FM 63-2)	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Divisions
	STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks, Skill Level 1
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7042.01-00CS	OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 4-93.21(FM 63-21)	Main Support Battalion

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7708.01-0NRC	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-20.2(FM 10-23)	Basic Doctrine For Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management
	FM 4-20.51(FM 10-23-1)	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
<b>Reference</b>	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7734	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SEC)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 600-67	Effective Writing for Army Leaders
	DA PAM 600-8-20	SIDPERS—Handbook for Commanders
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7735	PLANS AND DIRECTS AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
	AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability
	AR 700-4	Logistics Assistance
	AR 710-1	Centralized Inventory Management of the Army Supply System
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)	Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7736	PERFORM MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 4-93.40(FM 54-40)	Area Support Group
	FM 4.01-9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7737	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM)
	AR 350-35	Army Modernization Training
	AR 380-19	Information Systems Security
	AR 385-10	Army Safety Program
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
	AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations
	FM 4-30.2(FM 9-43-1)	Maintenance, Operations and Procedures
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)	Flight Operations Procedures
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations
	FM 4.01-9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7738	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 385-10	Army Safety Program
	AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-04.508(FM 1-508)	Maintaining Aviation Life Support Equipment

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7740	COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR), DOWNED AIRCRAFT RECOVERY TEAM (DART), AND AIRCRAFT EVACUATION OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-04.508(FM 1-508)	Maintaining Aviation Life Support Equipment
	FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)	Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft
	FM 3-04.514(FM 1-514)	Fundamentals of Rotor and Powertrain Maintenance—Techniques and Procedures
	FM 3-04.563(FM 1-563)	Fundamentals and Procedures of Airframe Maintenance
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7741	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 710-2-2	Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures
	AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations
	FM 4-30.2(FM 9-43-1)	Maintenance, Operations and Procedures
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.400(FM 1-400)	Aviator's Handbook
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	TB 750-25	Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair and Support (C&RS) Program
	TM 1-1500-204-23-3	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Maintenance Practices for Fuel and Oil Systems) Volume 3

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7742	MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 25-50	Preparing and Managing Correspondence
	AR 420-49	Utilities Services
	AR 680-8-6	Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting
	AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability
	AR 700-4	Logistics Assistance
	AR 70-1	Army Acquisition Policy
	DA PAM 710-2-2	Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures
	AR 746-1	Packaging of Army Materiel for Shipment and Storage
	AR 725-50	Requisitioning, Receipt, and Issue System
	AR 735-5	Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability
	DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
	AR 740-26	Physical Inventory Control
	AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations
	AR 750-43	Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment Program
	DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 4-30.2(FM 9-43-1)	Maintenance Operations and Procedures
	JP 4-0	Doctrine for Logistic Support of Joint Operations
	TM 743-200-1	Storage and Materials Handling

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-5-1110.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 1-05(FM 16-1)	Religious Support
<b>BOS: Exercise Command and Control</b>		
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 25-400-2	The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)
	DA PAM 385-1	Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide
	DA PAM 600-41	Military Personnel Managers Mobilization Handbook
	DA PAM 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 6-22(FM 22-100)	Army Leadership
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1017.01-0NRC	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1024.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 385-10	Army Safety Program
	AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	AR 385-10	Army Safety Program
	AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 600-67	Effective Writing for Army Leaders
	DA PAM 600-8-20	SIDPERS—Handbook for Commanders
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 2-0(FM 34-1)	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
	FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130)	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
	FM 2-00.21(FM 34-2-1)	Tactical, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	DA PAM 385-1	Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1302.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1306.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1311.01-0NRC	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1351.01-00CS	DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7039.01-0NRC	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20)	The Infantry Battalion
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 6-02(FM 24-1)	Signal Support Operations in the Airland Battle
	FM 6-02.11(FM 24-11)	Tactical Satellite Communications
	FM 6-02.16(FM 24-16)	Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records and Reports
	FM 6-02.18(FM 24-18)	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques
	FM 6-02.19(FM 24-19)	Radio Operator's Handbook
	TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
	FM 6-02.22(FM 24-22)	Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS)
	FM 6-02.33(FM 24-33)	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
	FM 6-02.35(FM 24-35)	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI"

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (continued).**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 6-02(FM 24-1)	Signal Support Operations in the Airland Battle
	FM 6-02.7(FM 24-7)	Tactical Local Area Network (LAN) Management
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-7508.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)
<b>Reference(s)</b>	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 6-02.33(FM 24-33)	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
	FM 6-02.35(FM 24-35)	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI"
	FM 6-02.19(24-19)	Radio Operator's Handbook

**Figure 2-3. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing (concluded).**

**2-4. EXAMPLES OF INDIVIDUAL-TO-COLLECTIVE TASKS LISTING**

Figure 2-4 shows examples of how individual tasks relate to collective tasks.

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7001.01-00CS	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE
Enlisted MOS: Common Skill Level: 2		
<b>Individual Task(s)</b>	071-329-1006	Navigate From One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7707.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
Enlisted MOS: Common Skill Level: 1		
<b>Individual Task(s)</b>	081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty

**Figure 2-4. Examples of individual-to-collective tasks relationship.**

## CHAPTER 3

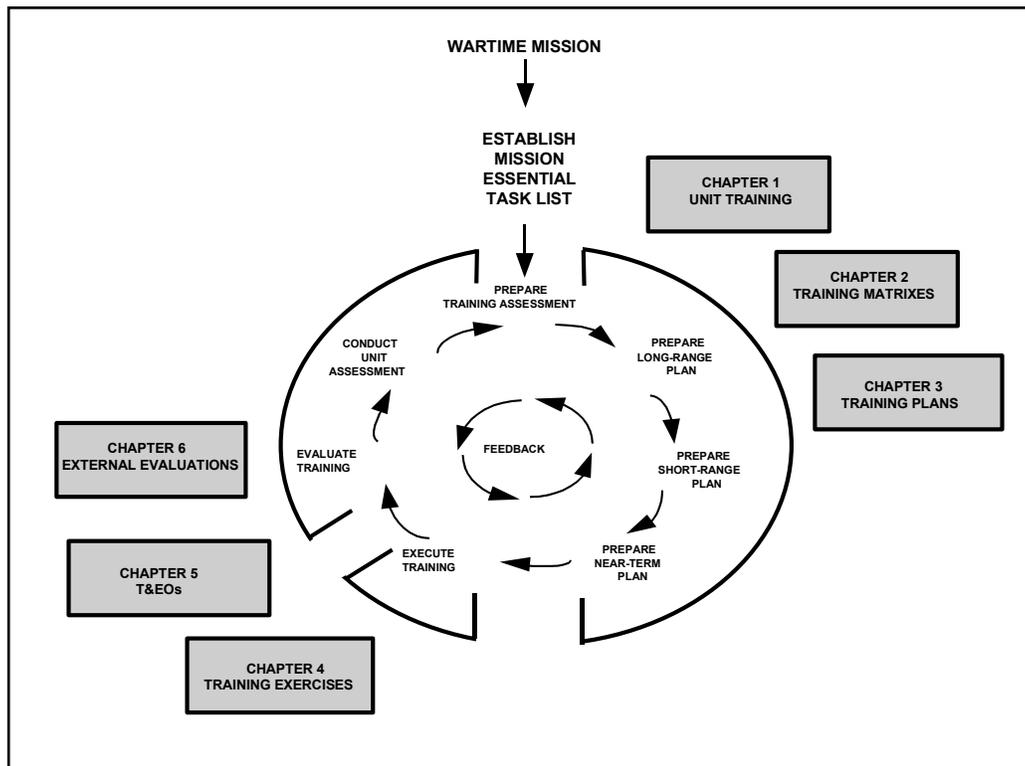
### TRAINING PLANS

#### 3-1. GENERAL

This chapter describes the use of the MTP to develop AVIM battalion- and company-level training plans and also provides mission outlines. It assists commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions. FM 7-0(25-100) and FM 7-10(25-101) provide detailed information on training management. They should be used along with this MTP.

**a. Battle-Focus Planning.** Planning lays the foundation for executing any training plan. Planning involves leaders at all levels of the organization. It is an extension of the battle-focus concept that links organizational METL with the execution and evaluation of training. Battle focus allows the commander to narrow his scope of planning to wartime mission-essential tasks. All training must be linked to the METL and support collective battle tasks. This training includes improving proficiency on some tasks and sustaining performance on others. When planning training, aviation commanders should include the senior warrant officer and the senior NCO at each level of command, as the senior trainers in their unit. The battalion commander is responsible for three types of training plans: long-range, short-range, and near-term plans.

**b. Training Management Cycle.** Figure 3-1 depicts the stages of the training management cycle. The training management cycle is METL-based and depends on continuous feedback. This cycle is a common thread throughout Chapter 3.



**Figure 3-1. Training Management Cycle.**

**c. Training Management Automation.** The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system using CD-ROMs and the Internet. Accomplishing these Army Training XXI training management automation objectives will support unit training at the battalion level. These improvements are described below and throughout this MTP.

**(1) The Standard Army Training System.** The SATS is a unit-level training-development tool. SATS ties into ASAT, the TRADOC training database program. SATS combines training doctrine with automated information management technologies to help commanders plan, manage, develop, execute, record, and report training programs. It supports AC and RC units from squad to Army level. It automates training management doctrine found in FM 7-0(25-100), FM 7-10(25-101), and FM 3-0(100-5). SATS enables units to download current doctrine for training and training development. Information on how to obtain SATS software and a user's guide for the database are available through the SATS project manager at the Army Training Support Center, Fort Eustis, VA 23604. The Internet address for SATS is <http://www.SATSBBS.com/public/default.htm>.

**(2) Training support packages.** Warfighter TSPs provide unit-tailored training scenarios for live, virtual, and constructive simulation training. Warrior TSPs and WarMod TSPs provide scenarios, courses, and materials for individual and systems training. TSPs minimize unit preparation time and increase actual training time.

**(3) Training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations.** TADSS is a set of training tools to offset the financial, safety, environmental, and technological constraints associated with training. TADSS enhances realism through the synthetic application of all battlefield operating systems, related units, and diverse training environments. It includes physical devices for institutional and collective training and synthetic-environment tools. Appendix D contains more detailed information.

**(a) Progressive exercises.** For battalion-level units, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, and CPXs in preparation for upcoming battalion FTXs. This technique exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and also makes optimum use of unit field training time. The Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer (see paragraph 3-6) virtual simulation system provides an excellent medium to conduct combined company- and battalion-level command and staff training. The bottom line is that each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

**(b) Staff training using simulations.** Constructive and virtual simulation systems are making staff and unit training easier as TADSS becomes accessible to units. The following simulations may contribute to training the battalion staff and subordinate companies.

**(c) Brigade and Battalion Simulation.** BBS is a microcomputer-based simulation system that trains officers and NCO leaders at battalion and brigade levels in all facets of combat, combat support, and combat service support operations in a CPX or STAFFEX mode. BBS is a training tool that exercises the full spectrum of battle command and staff execution orders. The virtual combat environment remains transparent to the training audiences, who conduct operations from their normal TOC/TAC configurations. Work cells within the simulation center replicate platoons and companies/troops fighting on the battlefield and provide realistic battle events derived from the BBS through SOP-based reports to their higher headquarters. BBS aids in building effective teams by causing participants to coordinate tasks, refine and standardize processes, and exchange information. BBS can be exercised from within a local simulation center or deployed to remote locations. Exercises may run from 2 to 36 hours, depending on training objectives. AARs may be formal or informal and generally last two hours.

**(d) Janus Army.** This microcomputer-based, two-sided, interactive combat simulation model employs a dynamic graphical representation to simulate force-on-force engagements. Janus A focuses on individual fighting system engagements and assessments, with aggregation capability up to company-size elements. Command and control of the individual systems can be exercised; however, simulation of combat support and combat service support is limited. Janus trains NCOs and officer

leaders at the platoon and company level in an educational setting. Simulation supports training of tactical leadership skills and is excellent for evaluating OPODs and battle synchronization. Leaders can experiment and receive immediate individual feedback. It is relatively easy to set up an exercise, but setup requires about 8 hours. A typical exercise takes about 4 hours, followed by an AAR lasting about 1-1/2 hours.

**(e) Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer.** The AVCATT is the centerpiece of Army aviation's collective training strategy. It will train up to six crews simultaneously in a virtual simulation environment. A modular suite of reconfigurable helicopter platforms, it will provide individual, crew, combined arms, joint task force, brigade and battalion staff training for attack, reconnaissance, assault, and heavy helicopter units in both the active and reserve components worldwide. Friendly and opposing semiautomated forces, environmental conditions, terrain databases, and realistic depiction of communication, navigation, weapons, aircraft survivability equipment, and sensor systems are included in AVCATT.

**(4) Standard Army After Action Review System.** The STAARS after-action systems provide standardized and automated data/information storage, distribution, and retrieval in support of trainers, doctrine writers, testers, analysts, materiel developers, combat developers, and training developers to provide DTLOMS-based data.

**(5) General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library.** The RDL information repository allows trainers, trainees, training developers, and doctrine writers to store and retrieve training and doctrine products and materials via the Internet and personal computers. The Internet address of the RDL is <http://www.adtdl.army.mil/atdls.htm>.

### 3-2. DEVELOPING TRAINING EXERCISES

Chapter 4 provides suggested formats for exercises for the unit to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Units may also use TSPs in developing their training exercises. TSPs are task-based and provide structured situational training scenarios for live, virtual, or constructive training. TSPs include all needed training products and subsequently simplify the commander's tasks of planning, executing, and assessing training. This paragraph provides general procedures for the staff to use to prepare for FTXs and for the unit supporting STXs. Exercise plans are normally prepared as part of the short-range plan. The following topics should help in preparing a unit exercise.

**a. Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training.** The missions and tasks are selected during long-range plan development and refined during short-range plan development.

**b. Training Site Selection.** The selection of a training maneuver area should be confirmed.

**c. Scenario Development.** After missions and tasks are selected, a detailed scenario should be prepared for the exercise as follows:

- List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.
- Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise; these activities would normally include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical actions necessary for the exercise.
- Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.
- Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario; the total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

**d. Selection of Observer-Controllers and OPFOR.** OCs and OPFOR are normally desired for every FTX and STX. It is difficult for a battalion-size unit to provide these from its own resources. When

units must provide OCs and OPFOR from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the OCs for their units. The OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units deemed not essential for attaining exercise objectives. Ideally, higher headquarters or sister units should provide OCs and OPFOR.

**e. Preparation of the Control Plan.** Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and OCs. The scenario is used, and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan includes—

- Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
- Detailed instructions for the OPFOR, to include ROE.
- Detailed schedule of activities for units.
- OPODs and FRAGOs for friendly units.
- Administrative preparation instructions.
- AAR schedule and instructions.

**f. Preparation of the Evaluation Plan.** All training is evaluated by someone, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan includes—

- Specific instructions for the OCs.
- A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each OC.
- Detailed time schedules for evaluation of tasks and AARs.

### 3-3. LONG-RANGE PLANNING

**a. Publish Command Training Guidance.** The CTG is published at division/COSCOM level and brigade/group level. It documents the organization's long-range (annual) training plan. It is the training counterpart of the organization's operational war plan. Every commander must read and understand the CTG because it is a ready reference for planning, executing, and assessing training throughout the long-range planning period.

**b. Develop the Unit METL.** This is the initial process for developing a battle-focused, long-range training plan. The METL is an unconstrained statement of tasks required to accomplish wartime missions. It must be continuously reviewed and crosswalked with the unit MTOE, CATS, and this MTP. It must support and complement the METL of the next-higher headquarters and be based on the wartime mission. The TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade commander provides a restated wartime mission and approved METL to the battalion/company commander. All members of the organization must understand their unit METL. The battalion/company commander identifies specified and implied tasks.

(1) Collective tasks that support critical wartime missions and other tasks required to execute war plans, are identified using the mission-to-collective-task matrix in Chapter 2. All collective tasks are listed in the sequence in which they are expected to occur during the wartime mission.

(2) The TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade commander then approves the battalion's METL. A unit's METL is stabilized when approved and is normally modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. FM 7-10(25-101), Chapter 2, covers METL development in detail. The restated mission is analyzed. Only those tasks essential to accomplishing the wartime mission are selected from the task list. Subordinate commanders, key warrant officers, and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. When the tasks are approved, these mission-essential tasks compose the specific battalion/company's METL and battle tasks.

(3) The battalion/company's restated mission and approved METL are provided to the subordinate chain of command. Figure 3-2 depicts a sample METL for an aviation intermediate maintenance battalion/company.

<b>METL DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>BRIGADE METL ⇔ BATTALION METL</b>	
<b>TSC/CORPS/DIVISION/DISCOM/ BRIGADE METL</b>	<b>BATTALION/COMPANY METL</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Conduct Transition to War</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Conduct Reconnaissance and Security Operations</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Support Attack Operations</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Support Air Assault Operations</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Sustain the Force</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Protect the Force</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Conduct SASO</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>Conduct Transition to War</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Conduct Offensive Operations</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Conduct Defense Operations</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Perform Logistic and CSS Operations</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Exercise Command and Control</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Protect the Force</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Perform AVIM, backup AVUM, and Class IX Support</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Provide Personnel, Administrative, and Logistical Support</i></li> </ul>

**Figure 3-2. Sample aviation intermediate maintenance battalion/company METL.**

**c. Establish Training Objectives.** After the METL is approved, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards that describe the situation or environment and outcome criteria that the unit must meet to perform the tasks. The MTP, STP, higher headquarters' command guidance, and local SOP contain training objectives and standards for the METL. Every task must have a condition and a standard so that all training can be evaluated and critiqued to the standard.

**d. Commander's Training Assessment.** Every commander has specific goals and training objectives. These are based on his own vision, guidance from higher commanders, and guidance in appropriate doctrinal manuals. An initial METL assessment sets the starting point for developing the battalion's training strategy. An ongoing evaluation process ensures that the battalion continues to focus on preparing for its wartime missions. The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Needs Practice), or "U" (Untrained). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements. The METL assessment compares current levels of training with the Army standard and is used to update unit goals and objectives. Figure 3-3 summarizes the METL assessment process. Table 3-1 depicts a sample commander's training assessment for an aviation intermediate maintenance battalion/company. The following are tips for conducting the commander's training assessment:

- Review all formal and informal evaluations.
- Review past QTBs.
- Review all equipment availability and readiness reports to detect trends.

- Talk to key personnel and soldiers.
- Review past USR data for readiness information.
- Review CIS reports.
- Review the personnel status report for critical personnel shortages.
- Participate in several company-level training exercises.
- Determine operator proficiency on newly fielded equipment.
- Consult with the company aviation safety officer; review the unit safety record.
- Consult with the TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade commanders.

**NOTE:** Army National Guard/Reserve commanders face additional challenges in the training assessment process. Sources that may offer training insight include the brigade FER if the unit has recently completed a BCBST rotation, the TAM after an annual training exercise, or information gained from consulting with the unit’s training support battalion.

- **Is made by the commander**
- **Compares the current level of training with the Army standard**
- **Is the cornerstone of the long-range planning process**
- **Is based on first-hand observations and input from all leaders**
- **Is a continuous process**
- **Is used to set or update unit goals and objectives**
- **Is influenced by future events**

**Figure 3-3. Training assessment.**

**Table 3-1. Sample battalion commander’s training assessment.**

METL TASKS	BOS						OVERALL
	INTELLIGENCE	DEPLOY/ MANEUVER	EMPLOY FIREPOWER	PROTECT THE FORCE	CSS/ SUSTAINMENT	CMD & CONTROL	
Conduct Transition to War	T	T		T	T	T	T
Conduct Offensive Operations	P	P	P	T		P	P
Conduct Defensive Operations	P	P	P	T		P	P
Perform Logistic and CSS Operations	P	P	P		P	P	P
Exercise Command and Control	P	P	P		P	P	P
Protect the Force	P	P	P	T		P	P
Perform AVIM, Backup AVUM, and Class IX Support	P	P	P		P	P	P
Provide Personnel, Administrative, and Logistic Support	P	P	P		P	P	P

e. **Develop Training Strategy and Commander’s Guidance.** The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency that each

mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance that includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must—

- Review the higher commander's goals.
- Spell out what his unit will do to comply with the goals of higher commanders.
- List in broad terms his goals for the unit. Figure 3-4 provides a sample of the commander's guidance with training goals, objectives, and priorities.

**TRAINING GOALS: Battalion/company/platoon METL proficiencies trained to standard. Refine battle-staff proficiencies and support divisions'/brigades' aviation mission. The battalion/company is poised to conduct a well-planned and precisely executed FTX during this quarter.**

**TRAINING OBJECTIVES:**

- Newly assigned soldiers and leaders trained and confident on battalion SOPs/TTPs.
- Maintenance support proficiency maintained.
- Troops and staff sections trained for the battalion maintenance support operations FTX to be conducted this quarter.

**TRAINING PRIORITIES:**

- Individual/crew proficiency sustainment.
- Battalion/company/platoon mission training.
- Maintenance skills.
- Combat service support operations.
- NBC training.

**Figure 3-4. Sample commander's guidance.**

**f. Establish Training Priorities.** Priority for training METL tasks is based on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis that the task should receive.

**g. Integrate Training Into the Long-Range Planning Calendar.** Long-range planning is the process of integrating the battalion/company's training strategy into the TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade long-range training calendar. This process ensures that resources—such as major training areas, ammunition, and fuel—are allocated and shortfalls are identified. The calendar synchronizes supporting units and agencies so that training events can be executed. The tools used to develop a long-range training plan are the battalion/company training strategy, the TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade's CTG, and the long-range training calendar—12 to 18 months out. Included below are some basic steps to follow in developing the long-range planning calendar.

**(1) Required training events on the calendar.** Brigade or higher headquarters directs these requirements. These events provide excellent training opportunities. Evaluate the training strategy, and determine what areas that the battalion/company can train on during these events.

**(2) Other requirements.** Identify other requirements that affect training—such as announced inspections, weekly sergeants' time, new equipment fielding, and community and installation support events such as post cleanup and parades.

**(3) Time management.** Highlight prime-time training periods available to the unit and support periods. Focus resources and training exercise planning to take advantage of prime-time training. Account for holiday periods.

**(4) Training-cycle management.** Many headquarters use a training-cycle system to insulate units from training distracters during peak training periods. Capitalize on training opportunities during these peak periods. However, the nature of support in a battalion/company often mandates some level of continuous support to other combat units, even during peak training cycles. Alignment of AVIM battalion/company in support relationships will affect training management. Integrate unit exercises and other training. Schedule events that will improve or sustain METL proficiency with the higher headquarters'-directed training requirements.

**h. Use of SATS During Long-Range Planning.** The commander and S3 can use SATS to automate many of the long-range planning steps.

**(1) METL development.** During METL development, SATS can be used to download the MTOE for the battalion by selecting the RDL icon and following the instructions. A generic mission statement for the battalion is in the MTOE. The battalion's official mission, as approved by the brigade commander, and the brigade's approved METL can be obtained through the SATS database. With this information and the commander's guidance, the S3 can prepare a proposed METL for discussion with company commanders. After incorporating results from these discussions and examining implied battle tasks, informal coordination can be made with the brigade S3. The battalion commander then approves the unit's proposed METL and sends it to the brigade commander for approval. The commander may send this approval electronically through shared databases on the battalion and brigade terminals.

**(2) Commander's training assessment.** The commander or the S3 can use SATS to access the RDL and download the battalion's MTP and other appropriate publications such as FM 7-0(25-100). Another assessment tool is the previous commander's training assessment. Coordinating with the CSM, company commanders, senior warrant officers, 1SGs, and the staff, the commander updates the commander's training assessment based on the new METL, any training evaluations available, and the personal observations of his team of leaders. From these, the battalion commander develops his training vision, goals, and priorities that he will publish as the commander's guidance. Face-to-face coordination will occur throughout this process. The assessment documentation will be shared electronically through SATS.

**(3) Long-range planning calendar.** For the new annual training calendar, the S3 carefully studies the TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade CTG and key training events in which his unit will participate. The TSPs that relate to those events can be found through SATS and the RDL. Based on the commander's training assessment, the S3 will tailor the T&EOs or STXs for each event so that they will emphasize the METL tasks that need practice. The METL tasks that must be trained will be the focus of battalion-directed training. The S3 selects appropriate training scenarios with supporting OPLANs from the TSPs on the SATS database. OPLAN annexes provide details on resources, sequences, and duration of training. Coordinating with the brigade, division, and the military community, the S3 chooses training event dates that do not conflict with other key calendar events. The proposed annual training calendar is then ready to be published. It is coordinated and approved by the battalion commander and meets the requirements of the CTG, and training resources are available. The S3 includes the newly approved METL and establishes training objectives for each mission-essential task. The S3 also identifies long lead-time resources and long-term coordination requirements for CTC rotations.

### 3-4. SHORT-RANGE PLANNING

A short-range training plan defines, in greater detail, the broad guidance on training events and other activities contained in the long-range training guidance and on the long-range calendar. It begins with a review of the commander's training assessment and the brigade QTG. It results in the quarterly training calendar and QTB. The short-range plan is prepared using the steps listed below.

**a. Review the Training Program.** The commander reviews the training program described in the long-range planning process. He determines whether assessments made during long-range planning are still valid. The commander reviews the following information:

(1) The short-range (quarterly) training guidance published by each level of command from division through battalion. Quarterly training guidance enables commanders and staffs to prioritize and refine mission essential training guidance contained in the long-range CTG. Battalion commanders publish their QTG after receiving the brigade and division QTG, usually about 90 days before each quarter begins. The roles of the CSM and battalion standardization officer are important to QTG development. They help identify the individual and crew training tasks that must be integrated into collective mission training during the short-range planning period.

(2) The training goals and priorities to determine whether goals are still valid. Established priorities must support these goals. To update priorities during the short-range planning process, the commander uses the same process followed to establish priorities during long-range planning.

(3) Training guidance from higher headquarters to ensure that the training program described in the long-range planning calendar meets the established training guidance.

(4) Long-range planning calendars of the unit and higher headquarters for entries that affect short-range planning. Changes to the long-range planning calendar may affect the unit's ability to accomplish its training program.

(5) Previous short-range planning calendars for the AC—or monthly schedules for the RC—for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(6) The commander reviews unit proficiency to update priorities. This review of the commander's training assessment provides a snapshot of the unit's current soldier, leader, and collective task proficiency. The plan must include individual and crew training sustainment.

(7) The commander reviews resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

**b. Review the Training Environment.** The commander reviews the training environment for a second time. This second review assumes greater importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively affect the training program are—

- Personnel assigned.
- Personnel turbulence.
- Morale.
- Education programs.
- Mandatory training.
- Visits, inspections, and tests.
- Supplies and equipment.
- Nonmission-related activities.
- Other programs.

**c. Develop a Detailed Plan of Action.** The commander develops a detailed plan for the duration of the short-range plan. He prepares the detailed plan of action as described below.

(1) **Validate the need for scheduled events.** The commander examines the events identified on the long-range training plan to determine whether they are still valid.

(2) **Transfer valid events to a quarterly training calendar.**

(3) **Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events.** The commander determines what he expects to accomplish with each event and then plans backward to achieve the desired outcome.

(4) **Analyze supporting missions.**

**(5) Select specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained.** The T&EOs in Chapter 5 give the commander conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures for the collective tasks that support the unit's missions.

**(6) Prepare a quarterly training calendar.** When preparing the quarterly training calendar, the S3 studies the TSC/corps/division/DISCOM/brigade CTG and the battalion annual training calendar. He refines and expands the annual calendar. He also identifies, allocates, and coordinates short lead-time resources such as local training facilities. The S3 pays particular attention to CTC lessons learned—obtained from STAARS and the RDL on the SATS database—as he begins to develop training objectives and tasks to include in an FTX OPORD. He allocates time on the AVCATT-A (paragraph 3-6) and other critical training resources. The S3 cross-references each event with specific training objectives and coordinates with all supporting agencies, the battalion/company staff, and unit commanders.

**(7) Issue guidance addressing how to train.** Higher headquarters will pass guidance to lower echelons in many ways, including—

- Letters of instruction.
- Training meetings.
- Command and staff calls.
- Published S3 notes.

### 3-5. NEAR-TERM PLANNING

Near-term planning covers a six- to eight-week period before training. It defines specific actions required to execute the short-range plan and is the final phase of planning before training execution.

**a. Automated Near-Term Planning.** For the monthly training schedule, using AT XXI automated tools, the S3 calls up TADSS on the SAT terminal and allocates training resources to specific trainers. He uses the STAARS so that AARs are included in training. He also uses it to ensure that lessons learned from other units are studied before training begins and that new lessons learned are captured when the event ends. The S3 must supervise to ensure that all training events are presented as scheduled and accurate. He also ensures that they are well structured, efficient, realistic, safe, and effective. He must ensure that informal evaluation and feedback by trainers and senior leaders are continuous and that formal evaluations are included in training plans. Evaluation documentation can range from annotated T&EOs to CTC take-home packages. The STAARS can be accessed to provide simple, codified methods for capturing and disseminating the results of formal evaluations, as well as lessons learned using standard CALL formats. Using the command assessment program established earlier by the battalion commander, the S3 gathers all of the related reports, results, feedback, scores, evaluations, and related data to assist in the commander's organizational assessment. The commander assesses the battalion's overall go-to-war readiness in every area, not just training. The commander uses the assessment results to update the unit files in STAARS. The information is then available—

- For input to the ULLS.
- For the SIDPERS to update the resource database.
- To update the RDL.
- To link to the SORTS.

#### **b. Company and Platoon Planning.**

**(1)** The battalion staff uses the training plan to define responsibilities and assist company commanders in planning and executing training for their unit. To prepare for training, the company commander may execute his own training strategy. Maintenance company commanders focus on individual soldier/maintainer development and maintenance team development.

(2) Training meetings are nonnegotiable at the battalion and company level; they must be held. During training meetings, commanders provide guidance for forming training schedules, conduct near-term planning, and provide resources for long-range planning. The primary focus of training meetings is management issues for the next six weeks. At the company level, training meetings focus on the specifics of training to be conducted. Well-structured, well-organized, and recurring training meetings produce training events that are demanding and directly related to the unit's mission. Training meetings are conducted in three phases: Phase I—assessment of completed training; Phase II—coordination; and Phase III—future planning. These meetings produce coordinated and locked-in training schedules.

Battalion training meetings—

- Are conducted by the commander.
- Focus on training issues only.
- Are conducted weekly.
- Are routinely scheduled on the same day and time.
- Are posted on the training schedule.
- Are agenda oriented.
- Are attended by all necessary participants to include all commanders.
- Focus on training that is METL oriented.
- Integrate risk management into training.
- Are forums to identify and overcome problems or distracters.

(3) Platoon leaders focus on individual and collective training. The platoon should be able to perform all of its collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate ATM, MTP, FMs, and unit SOPs. Platoons can plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in company-level training. These exercises increase the confidence level of the individual and provide valuable operational experience. In developing the platoon training plan, leaders at all levels should adhere to the principles outlined in FM 7-0(25-100) and FM 7-10(25-101) as well as use this MTP as a guide. Platoon leaders should use crosswalk training references to identify the platoon collective tasks and leader and individual tasks used during training exercises.

**c. Review the Training Program.** This review determines if previous assessments are still valid.

**d. Finalize Plans and Training.** Based on the review of the training program, plans for training are finalized. The best sequence for training tasks is determined, and the final coordination of the training events and activities is completed.

**e. Tips for Commanders.** In near-term planning, commanders—

- Conduct battalion and company training meetings.
- Provide specific guidance to trainers.
- Prepare training objectives.
- Prepare T&EOs.
- Ensure that attached units or units under OPCON have been integrated.
- Determine time for preexecution checks.
- Prepare detailed training schedules.
- Crosswalk aircraft requirements with aircraft maintenance.

**f. Training Schedules.** The training schedule is the company's primary management tool to ensure that training is conducted on time, by qualified trainers, and with the necessary resources. Draft training schedules must be initiated at least six- to eight-weeks out to ensure that resources are coordinated and external support is requested. Once the battalion commander approves and the company commander signs the training schedule, it constitutes an official order. Training schedules must be living documents; however, the S3 should approve all changes. He ensures that they are up-to-date and posted where every soldier in the unit can read them. Training schedules ensure that information is

disseminated and that every soldier knows who is to be at the scheduled training and with what equipment and when (date and time) and where the training will take place.

**g. Preparation for Training.** Aviation units must be proficient at the tasks necessary to deploy, establish assembly areas and conduct operations, perform maintenance, and defend organizational assets from a field site. The following discussion covers preparation for training.

**(1) Train and certify leaders.** This important step covers all trainers, evaluators, and unit leaders involved in unit training. The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team will directly affect the quality of training and the proficiency that units gain at the training site. Before training begins, senior leaders must certify all trainers and leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency. Trainers and leaders use a series of OPD/NCOPD sessions, followed by certification exercises or examinations. These can take many forms; for example, written exams and sand-table evaluations. Trainers should have held the position of the individuals who they are selected to evaluate. Leaders must also undergo training before the unit takes part in a collective training exercise. Commanders at each level must ensure that subordinate leaders can perform the required leader tasks to support the collective tasks to be trained. In turn, the leadership trains subordinate leaders on the individual and crew tasks supporting the collective tasks.

**(2) Reconnoiter the site.** After trainers, evaluators, and leaders are certified, the commander and evaluation team must make a site reconnaissance of the area where the training will be conducted. At this point, they can begin to develop graphic control measures for the exercise. They also conduct a terrain analysis to identify all key terrain as well as the following locations:

- STX lanes.
- OPFOR positions.
- Assembly areas.
- Leader training sites.
- AAR sites.
- Logistical support locations.
- Command post locations.
- Retraining areas.

**(3) Conduct risk management.** Risk management can be a great asset to training realistically and safely. Identifying hazards, assessing hazards, making decisions, implementing controls, and supervising execution—whether formal or informal—are the commander's responsibility. Training realistically for war requires commanders to manage the inherent risks. Managing risk means eliminating all unacceptable risks and dealing with the acceptable calculated risks that remain. Appendix C covers risk management in detail.

**(4) Issue the plan.** After planning and coordination are completed, the training event begins. The platoon leader receives the OPORD and begins his troop-leading procedures. While he formulates his plan, the rest of the platoon conducts the various activities of troop-leading procedures, including crew training, in preparation for the exercise. The trainer/commander evaluates the platoon leader on his understanding of the OPORD, requiring him to back-brief the order. This back-brief ensures that the platoon leader is ready to issue the OPORD to his platoon. The back-brief also tests his ability to understand oral orders and builds his confidence before he steps in front of his team leaders, pilots, and vehicle commanders to issue the order.

**(5) Brief the mission.** The mission briefing communicates mission specifics—specified and implied tasks and intent—to leaders and soldiers. Communicating information and intent is the commander's responsibility. The mission briefing indicates how much preparation has gone into a given mission. An incomplete, poor briefing sheet may falsely indicate adequate or better planning or it may be a true indicator of less-than-adequate planning.

**(6) Rehearsal.** The key to execution is practice. Regardless of the unit's level of proficiency, it will benefit from rehearsals. Rehearsals ensure understanding of the mission, concept of the operation and commander's intent, specific responsibilities and timing of actions, and backup procedures. Although time may be critical, some form of rehearsal must be done before mission execution. Commanders should avoid redundancy. The commander should also know the desired outcome of the rehearsal and establish standards. Some rehearsal techniques used at battalion and company level are map rehearsals, sand-table/terrain model, and ROC drills. A well-thought-out and executed rehearsal results produces synchronized, successful execution of combat actions. The rehearsal should cover the mission from start to finish, concentrating on actions in the objective area. If time is limited, the commander must decide which events are critical to the mission and rehearse them first.

**(a)** Minimize changes at the rehearsal. Rehearsals generally occur at the eleventh hour; major changes at this point can be disastrous. Instill in the members of the unit that if they see a potential conflict, they should not wait until the rehearsal to voice it—the more time to implement a change, the better. Reinforce earlier training, and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.

**(b)** Synchronize the actions of team leaders, vehicle commanders, aircraft crews, and other subordinate elements. Confirm coordination requirements between the platoon and adjacent units.

**(7) Training execution.** A training exercise should be attempted only when the unit/individual clearly understands how to execute the mission. The trainer determines this after the rehearsals conclude. At that point, he either allows the unit to execute the task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. In the execution phase, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use during the AAR, which immediately follows the exercise.

**(8) Conduct the AAR.** A properly conducted AAR is the key to assessing the training program. There are two types of AARs: formal and informal. Formal AARs are normally scheduled and conducted as part of an external or internal evaluation. Informal AARs require less planning, and on-the-spot reviews of soldier and collective training performance are the focus. AARs should take the format of issues, discussion, and recommendations. They analyze the training event through the planning, preparation, and execution phases of the operation. The AAR is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review process allows training participants to discover for themselves what happened and why it happened and how the unit can improve its performance. These lessons learned should be captured and shared at the next company briefing. AARs should always—

- Train to standards and capture the good and bad aspects of the training.
- Provide participants with a rating for each task trained during the exercise.
- Tell a story about who, what, when, and why.
- Tell what was good and needs to stay the same.
- Reinforce and increase the learning that took place.
- Increase soldier and leader interest and motivation.
- Identify and analyze both strengths and weaknesses.
- Involve all participants.
- Guide the training unit toward achieving learning objectives.
- Link lessons learned to subsequent training.

**(9) Retrain.** Based on the evaluation results, the unit should undergo retraining on each task for which it receives a “No-Go” rating. Trainers and leaders must develop a training program to meet these specific requirements. The unit can then be reevaluated later.

### 3-6. TRAINING THE HEADQUARTERS

**a. Training at the Battalion/Company Level.** Planning training for the battalion staff presents the commander with unique challenges. The staff and headquarters are involved in day-to-day priority

operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements; however, they must be able to fulfill their roles for the unit to perform its wartime missions. The battalion/company XO is the key. He must coordinate with the commander to ensure that staff tasks are mastered while still accomplishing the day-to-day priorities.

**b. Training the Coordinating Staff.** Chapter 5 identifies the training tasks for the battalion/company staff. The strategy for training the staff varies based on the considerations used in planning training—such as level of proficiency and training support available. FM 7-10(25-101) contains detailed information on conducting exercises. Methods of training the staff are discussed below.

### (1) Tactical exercise without troops.

**(a) General.** The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. It is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training to plan the execution of a unit mission, which may include the employment of CS and CSS assets. A TEWT can be used to train personnel to—

- Analyze terrain.
- Plan conduct of the unit's mission.
- Plan and place CS and CSS assets.
- Coach subordinates on the best use of terrain.

**(b) Planning phase.** TEWTs require limited resources—maps, graphic materials, and organic vehicles for transportation during the exercise. Commanders begin planning, using the following categories: operations, tasks, objectives, personnel trained, and resources.

- During reconnaissance of the terrain, inspect the area for all military aspects; take detailed notes about the area; and select the rendezvous points, briefing or AAR sites, parking areas, and routes.
- Include the general situation, initial situation, requirements, and time schedule to develop the scenario; check the scenario to ensure that it fits the terrain. During this check, war-game likely staff responses to various situations and requirements.
- Finalize plans and the scenario. The starting point for a TEWT can be either the issuance of an OPORD or the commander's concept of the operation and intent; then reconnaissance, planning, coordination, and preparation can begin. The higher headquarters' staff should assist in preparing the OPORDs.

**(c) Preparation phase.** Conduct a rehearsal by war-gaming with the staff.

**(d) Execution phase.** Ensure that all participants are present—to include staff, company commanders, platoon leaders, and CS and CSS personnel. If the staff and commander are initially preparing an OPORD, only the planning staff needs to be present. The execution phase should include the following:

- Explaining the exercise and general situation.
- Identifying terrain features.
- Forming personnel into groups and releasing groups to conduct reconnaissance.
- Maintaining combat organization (company commanders with platoon leader; staff with special elements).
- Moving through the area to observe personnel conducting reconnaissance and formulating plans.
- Ensuring that all personnel meet at the designated time and place.
- Selecting the order and personnel to brief.

- Ensuring that briefers use sand tables or map boards with graphics and walk the terrain; for example, the commander may want leaders to brief on organization and employment of CS and CSS elements.
- Conducting a sand-table or terrain-board rehearsal of the operation at the end of subordinate back-briefs.
- Conducting TEWTs using the same procedures and techniques as for planning and preparing an actual operation.

**(e) After-action review.** At the conclusion of each plan or after all solutions have been presented, conduct an AAR that covers solutions, employment of forces, and the seven BOS. Conduct the final AAR using the same steps and procedures as for an FTX.

**(2) Map exercise.**

**(a) General.** The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise. The MAPEX requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders in planning, coordinating, and executing operations under simulated wartime conditions. MAPEXs can be conducted internally or with higher headquarters' MAPEXs. They should include all leaders of attached and supporting elements. MAPEXs can be conducted several ways. One method involves only the staff and commander. The commander issues a higher headquarters' order to his staff and then war-games, plans, and develops an OPORD. Another method involves staff and subordinate commanders. The commander and staff plan, as in the first method, and present the OPORD to the battalion orders group. The subordinate commanders and leaders then prepare orders and position forces on sand tables, map boards, or overlays. The orders group war-games through the operation. The commander presents different "what-if" situations to test the participants. In these MAPEXs, the commander acts as the primary trainer but participation from higher headquarters and supporting CS and CSS elements increases the value of the exercise. The commander uses a MAPEX to train his staff and leaders in the following:

- Functioning as an effective team.
- Exchanging information.
- Preparing estimates.
- Giving appraisals.
- Making recommendations and decisions.
- Preparing plans.
- Issuing orders.
- Coordinating execution of orders.

**(b) Planning phase.** The commander uses the following sequence to plan and conduct a MAPEX for his unit:

- Determine the tasks, operations, and objectives to be evaluated as part of short-range planning. Normally, tasks on which staff performance is weak—as identified during FTXs—have priority.
- Determine who will be trained. The first MAPEX may involve the commander and staff; follow-on exercises can include leaders down to platoon level. Staff planning should involve all CS and CSS leaders: ADA, FSB, engineers, FAC, MI, and organic elements; the higher headquarters staff should provide the OPORD and representatives during the exercise.
- Develop an outline plan (scenario).
- Determine the location of the exercise and resources required—classroom, tents, map boards, sand tables, butcher paper.

**(c) Preparation phase.** The commander prepares for a MAPEX by—

- Training on staff coordination, estimates, recommendations, or orders preparation.
- Setting up the MAPEX site.
- Writing orders, which is normally done by the higher headquarters staff, to promote coordination and teamwork between the headquarters and the battalion.

**(d) Execution phase.** The commander explains to his staff and leaders the objectives, sequence of events, and procedures:

- Begin the exercise when the higher headquarters' OPORD is given to the staff by the commander or a headquarters representative.
- Give initial guidance and start the MDMP.
- Develop the plan or order using FM 5-0(101-5).
- Stop the sequence of events at any time to conduct an AAR.
- Plan and position forces on a map board or sand table.
- Use OPFOR to drive a MAPEX.

**(e) After-action review.** AARs are conducted throughout the exercise, with a final AAR at the end of the MAPEX.

### **(3) Command post exercise.**

**(a) General.** The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise that may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters in which the forces are simulated. It requires at least the establishment of unit command posts with their communications equipment, demanding a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as to establish and use communications equipment. Battalions often conduct either a staff exercise or a tactical operations center exercise. They may conduct both before conducting a CPX. In a STAFFEX, principal and special staffs practice organizing for war—such as establishing CPs and conducting staff calls—and training for wartime missions. In a TOCEX, the command group and staff practice setting up their command posts. Battalions normally participate in a CPX as part of a larger force; however, they may conduct internal CPXs. Simulation systems (as discussed below) assist in conducting realistic CPXs. The CPX trains commanders and staff to—

- Execute the MDMP.
- Refine SOPs.
- Build teamwork and cohesion.
- Exchange information correctly, using tactical SOPs.
- Prepare estimates, plans, and orders.
- Establish and use tactical communications.
- Displace headquarters and CPs.
- Integrate synchronized BOS.

**(b) Planning phase.** The CPX requires most of the senior leadership and staff elements to conduct extensive battlefield planning, preparation, and command and control while using their tactical communications equipment and TAC CPs. In addition to MAPEX and TEWT considerations covered previously, the following are some additional considerations:

- Normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced.
- CPXs should be conducted under battlefield conditions to validate staff and unit procedures. Tactical exercises integrate nuclear and chemical weapons employment; NBC warning and reporting; reconnaissance; MOPP, logistical, and decontamination operations; and perimeter defense. Electronic warfare should be

portrayed to show its importance to all elements and to illustrate how it hinders commanders and staff who are not prepared.

- CPXs require controllers and evaluators. The controllers, directed by the chief controller, manage the exercise and cause play to flow to a logical conclusion. The evaluators observe player activities to determine if tasks are performed to established standards at each echelon.
- Battalion produces an LOI that is the basis for subunit planning as well as for briefing controllers and evaluators.

**(c) Preparation phase.** Controllers and players require training in certain basic subjects before starting the exercise. Subjects to consider include—

- Purpose and scope of the exercise.
- Training objectives.
- Controller duties.
- Casualty and damage assessment.
- Controller records and reports.
- Intelligence play.
- War-game procedures.
- After-action reviews.
- Rules of engagement.

**(d) Execution phase.** This phase begins with the chief controller and staff giving the player commander and staff a commander's update briefing. The briefing covers any changes to the LOI or other items that must be addressed. Immediately following the commander's update briefing, the chief controller assumes the role of the players' higher commander and is briefed by controllers representing the higher staff. The chief controller converts the OPLAN to an OPORD and announces the staff is available for coordination with player counterparts; this marks the start of exercise.

**(4) Field training exercises.** The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise that simulates combat conditions in the field. The FTX exercises command and control of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated opposing forces. It provides a method for training a battalion in its entire mission and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's METL. The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the example supporting STXs. The commander can combine a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs. Chapter 4 provides more details on executing the FTX.

### 3-7. MISSION OUTLINE

The mission outline graphically portrays the relationship of the critical wartime missions to FTXs and STXs. It illustrates the relationship between the missions and their collective supporting tasks. An outline gives the trainer a diagram of the unit missions and the supporting collective tasks. Because unit training is mission oriented, mission outlines show how task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its missions. The outline helps the commander and staff prepare to train. Figures 3-5 through 3-16 show examples of mission outlines for a TSC AVIM company; COSCOM aviation maintenance battalion (battalion headquarters, headquarters and headquarters detachment, and AVIM company); DISCOM air assault aviation maintenance battalion (battalion headquarters, headquarters and headquarters company, and AVIM company); DASB AVIM company; and airborne AVIM company and light-division AVIM company.

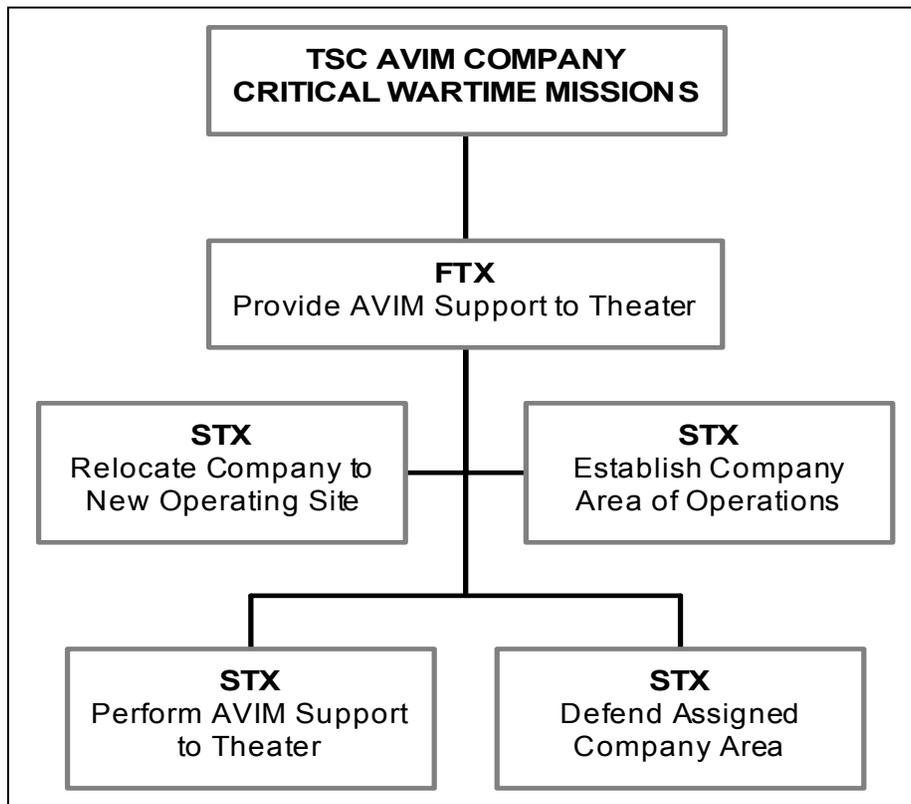


Figure 3-5. Example of an AVIM company, TSC, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

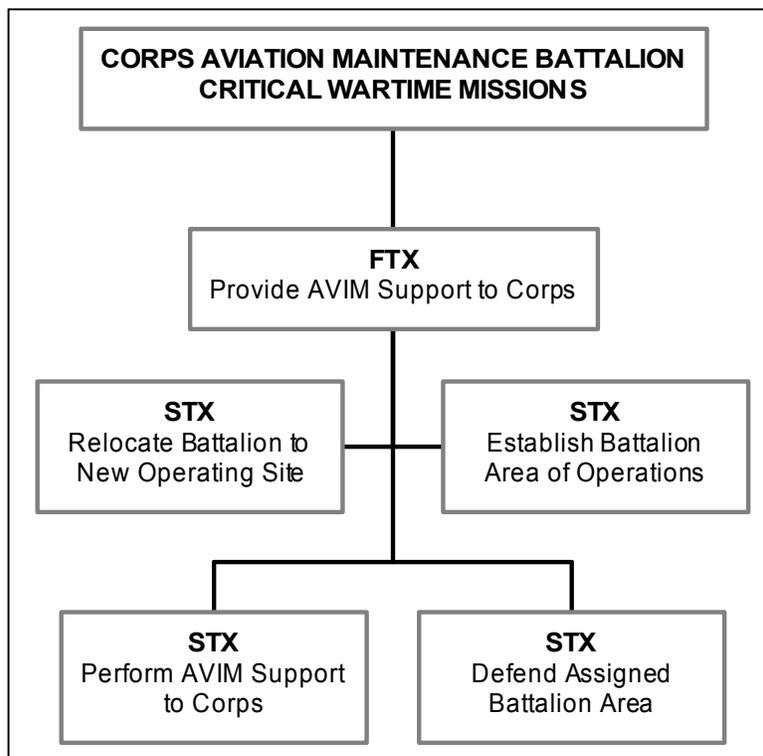


Figure 3-6. Example of an aviation maintenance battalion, COSCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

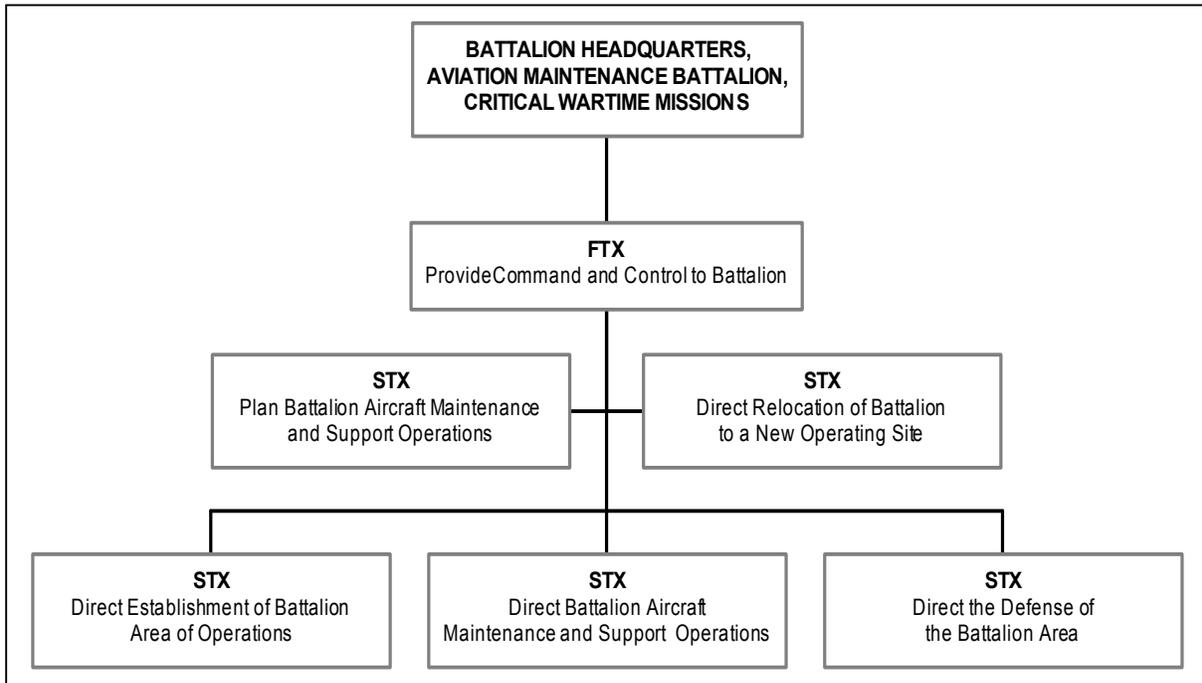


Figure 3-7. Example of a battalion headquarters, aviation maintenance battalion, COSCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

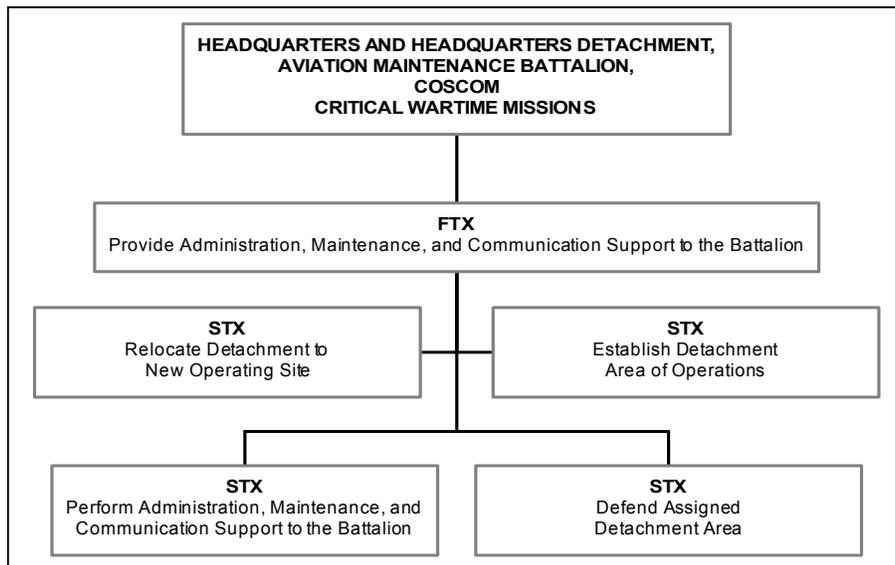


Figure 3-8. Example of an HHD, aviation maintenance battalion, COSCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

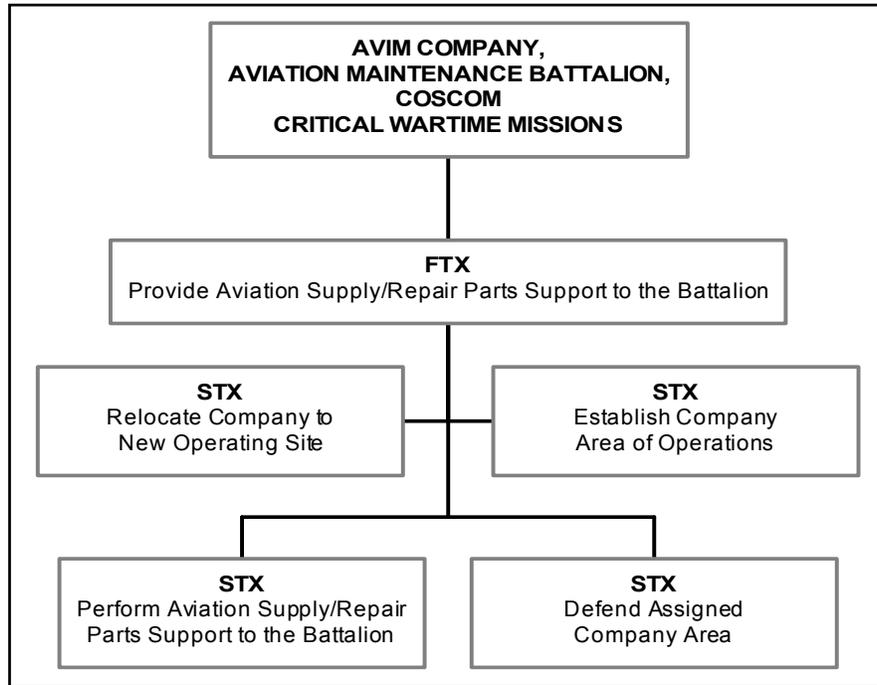


Figure 3-9. Example of an AVIM company, aviation maintenance battalion, COSCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

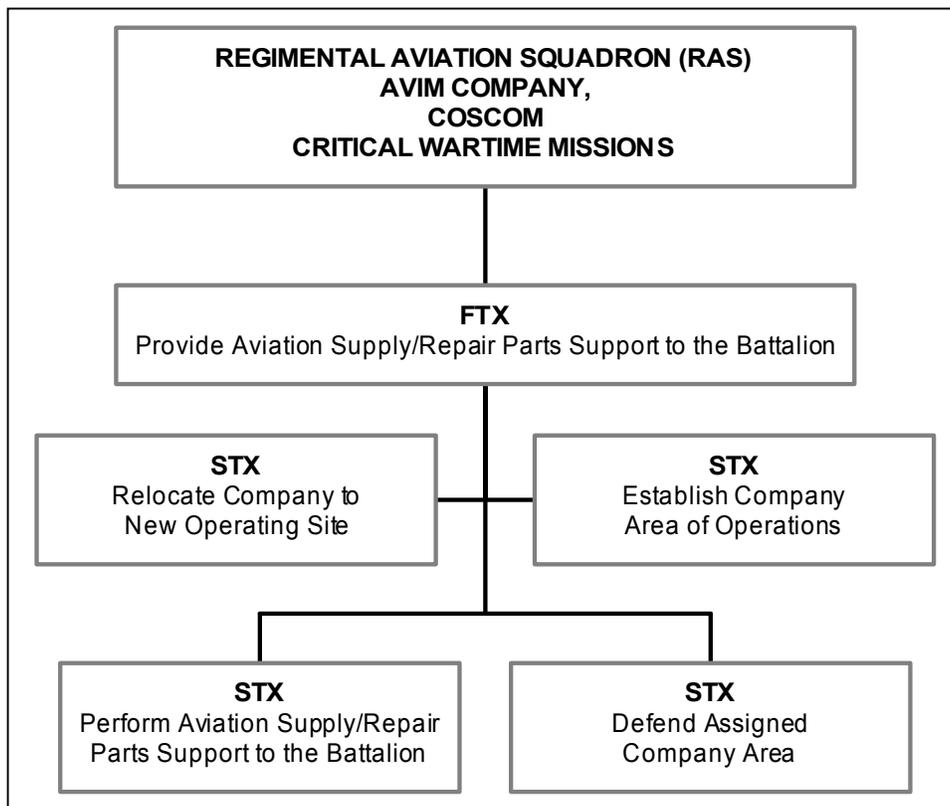


Figure 3-10. Example of a RAS AVIM company, COSCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

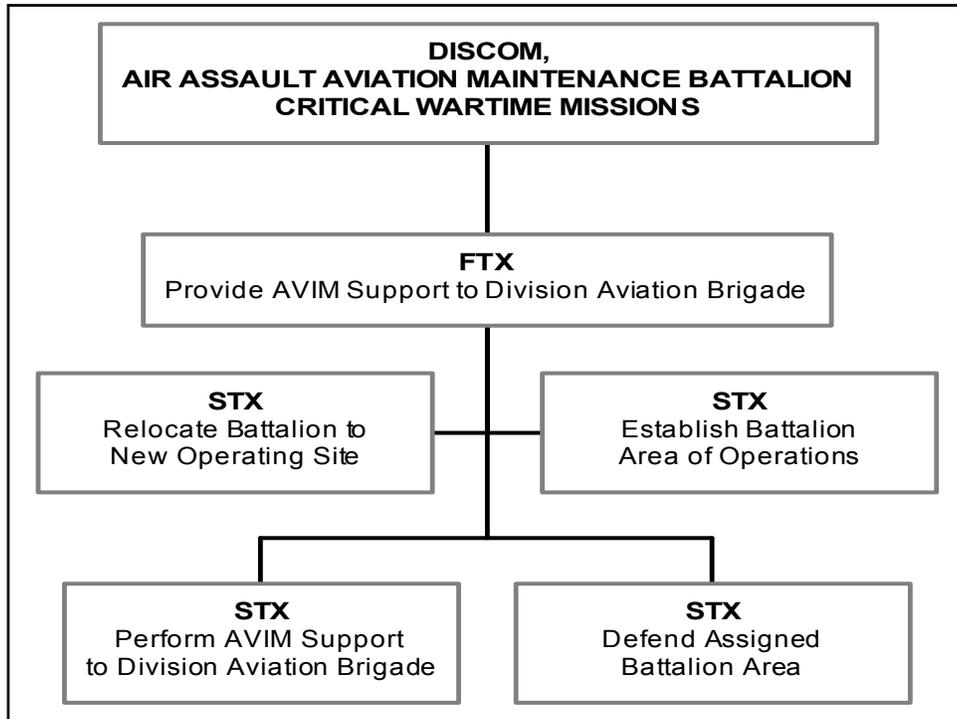


Figure 3-11. Example of an air assault aviation maintenance battalion, DISCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

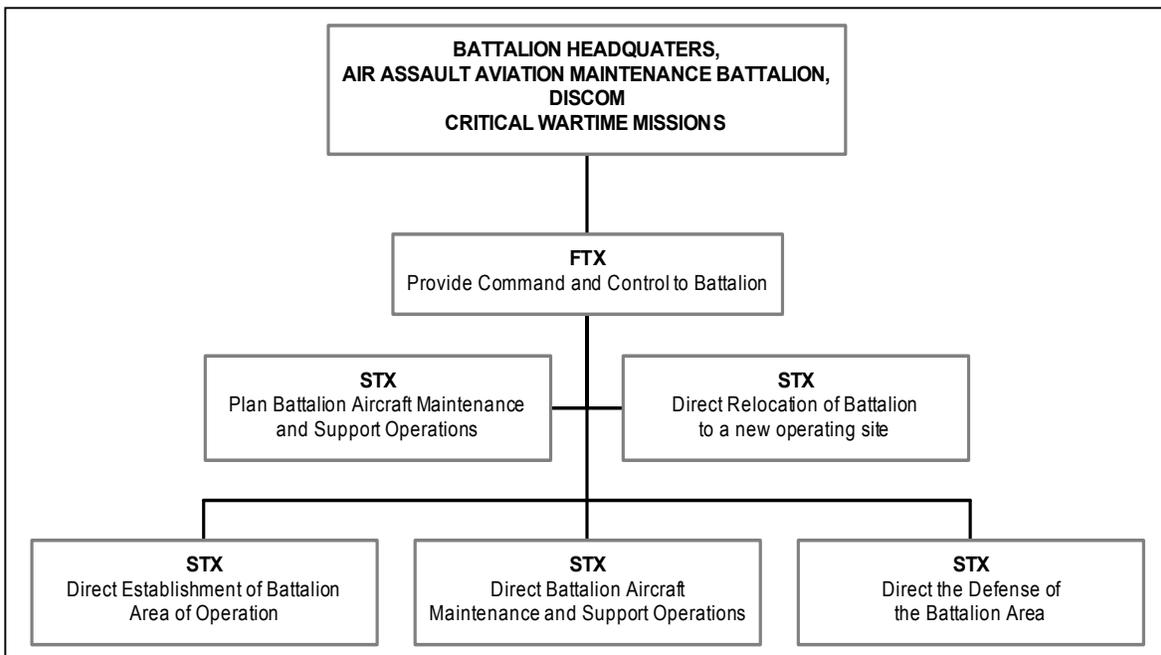


Figure 3-12. Example of a battalion headquarters, air assault aviation maintenance battalion, DISCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

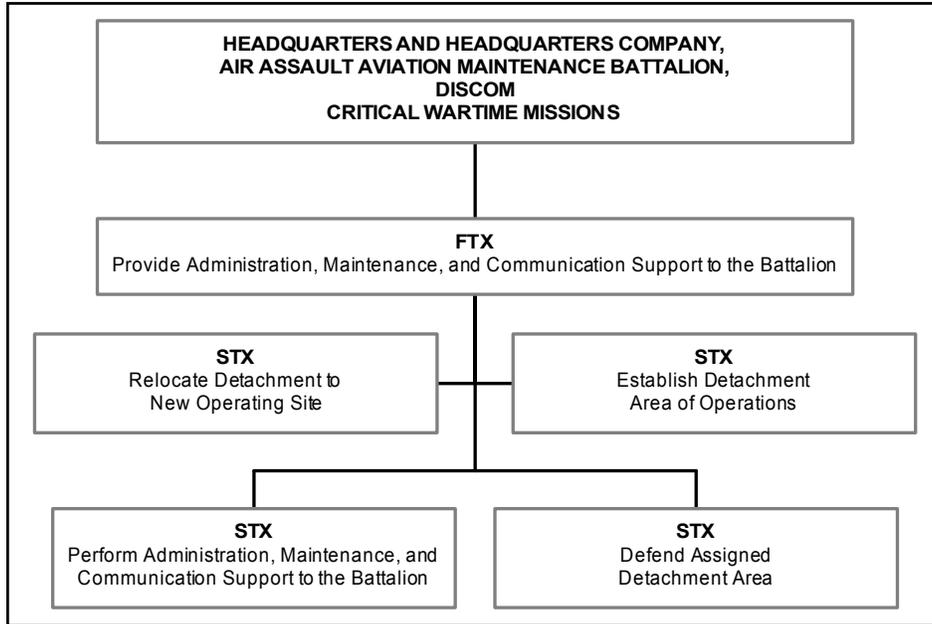


Figure 3-13. Example of an HHC, air assault maintenance battalion, DISCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

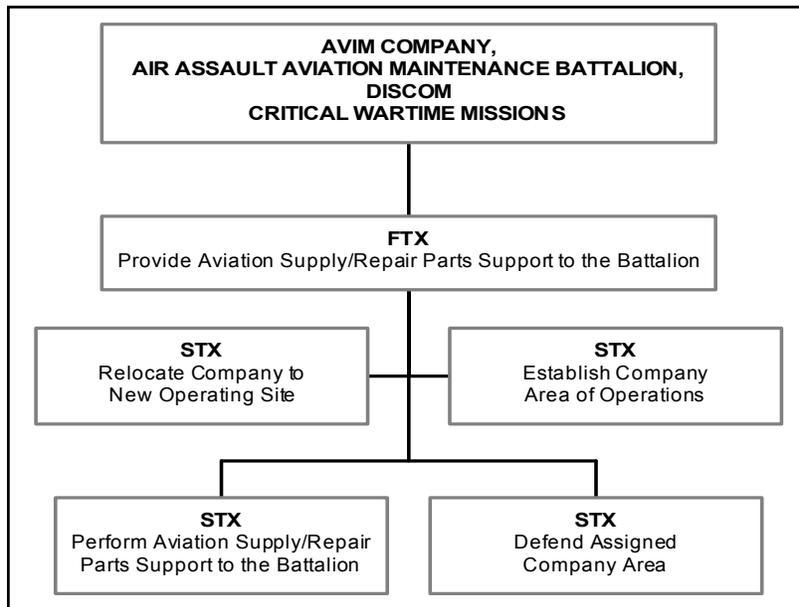


Figure 3-14. Example of an AVIM company, air assault aviation maintenance battalion, DISCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

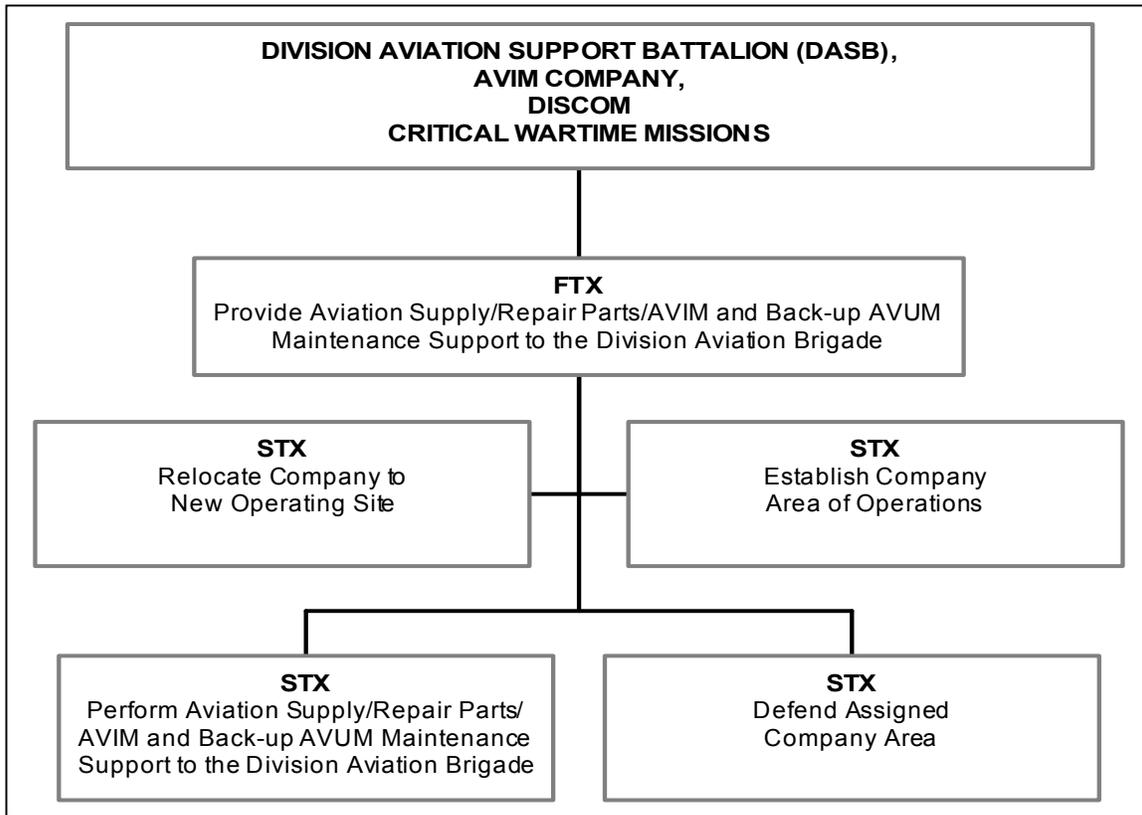


Figure 3-15. Example of a DASB AVIM company, DISCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

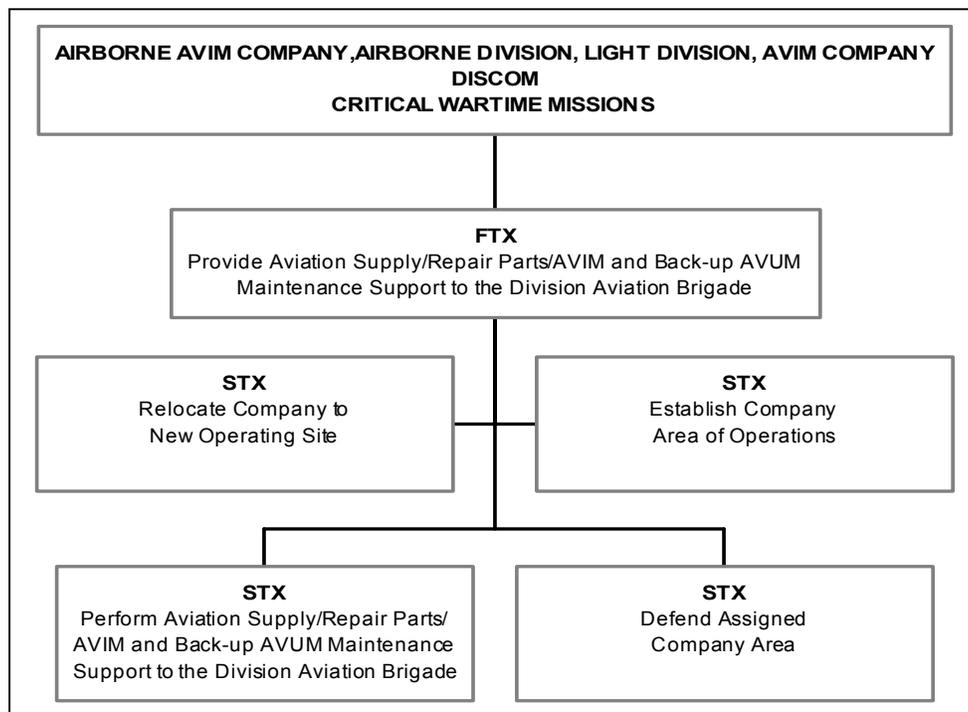


Figure 3-16. Example of an airborne AVIM company, airborne division, and light division, AVIM company, DISCOM, mission-to-FTX/STX outline.

## CHAPTER 4

### TRAINING EXERCISES

#### SECTION I. INTRODUCTION

#### 4-1. GENERAL

Collective training exercises help trainers at all levels to develop, sustain, and evaluate unit proficiency in collective tasks. Collective tasks constitute critical wartime tasks and special mission requirements. Training exercises prepare units to execute combat, combat support, or combat service support missions. The commander can conduct collective training with a range of training exercises. These vary from simple to complex, from inexpensive to resource-intensive, and from simulations to hands-on. Examples of two of these, an FTX and two STXs, are developed later in this chapter.

**Table 4-1. Training exercises.**

Exercise Number	Title	Page
FTX-1	Perform Logistic and CSS Operations	4-3
STX-1	Provide Personnel, Administrative, and Logistic Support	4-11
STX-2	Perform Aviation Supply/Repair Parts/AVIM and Backup AVUM Support	4-18

#### 4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE

The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise. It is conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises command and control of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated opposing forces. It is a method for training a battalion in its entire mission and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's METL. The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the examples of supporting STXs. The commander can combine a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

#### 4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE

The STX is a mission-related, limited exercise. The STX trains one collective task—or a group of related tasks or drills—through practice. It has distinct start and stop points, representing a segment of battle. The STXs in this chapter are mission-oriented exercises that cover a group of closely related tasks. These tasks collectively compose a tactical operation. The STXs can be used to train a separate unit or as part of the parent unit's training. These STXs support the referenced FTX. They should involve the unit's full complement of CS and CSS assets.

#### 4-4. OTHER TRAINING EXERCISES

Listed below are brief descriptions of other recognized exercises.

**a. Battle Simulation Exercise.** The BSX is a military war game that recreates combat situations on a map or terrain model. Pieces or markers represent units. Specific rules govern movement, fire, losses, and other aspects of actual combat. The BSX is best suited for leader training, especially in terms of fire and maneuver.

**b. Combined Arms Live Fire Exercise.** The CALFEX is a high-cost, resource-intensive exercise. During the CALFEX, player units maneuver, employing organic and supporting weapons systems with full-service ammunition. This exercise integrates all combat, combat support, and combat service support functions.

**c. Computer Assisted Exercise.** The CAX is a CPX in which a computer driver provides force simulation.

**d. Command Field Exercise.** The CFX is an exercise with reduced troop and vehicle density but with full command and control, CS, and CSS elements; for example, a platoon leader in his aircraft representing the entire platoon. The CFX lies between the CPX and FTX in terms of resources. The CFX may serve as a backup for an FTX if maneuver damage, weather, or other factors prohibit FTX execution. The CFX is less expensive and exercises intersystem linkages and actual distances.

**e. Communications Exercise.** The COMEX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise. The COMEX ensures the operational abilities of communications systems as well as the training status of operators, staffs, and leaders. The COMEX should include, at a minimum, proper use of the SOI; the establishment of, entry into, and exit from the radio net; and communications discipline.

**f. Command Post Exercise.** The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise. It may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters. The forces are simulated in the CPX. At a minimum, it requires the establishment of unit command posts with their communications equipment. It demands a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as to establish and use communications equipment.

**g. Combined Training Exercise.** The CTX is conducted jointly by military forces of more than one nation. It is also referred to as multinational training.

**h. Deployment Exercise.** The DEPEX provides training for soldiers, units, and support agencies. The training includes tasks and procedures for deploying from home stations or installations to areas of potential employment.

**i. Decision-Making Exercise.** The DMX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise that assesses how a unit's key leadership reviews and performs case-study analysis of previous war-gaming decisions. A DMX usually incorporates a MAPEX.

**j. Digital Training Exercise.** The DTX is conducted on a simulated battlefield. The DTX is used to train battalion/squadron and brigade staffs and subordinate elements. It can involve a constructive simulation-based MAPEX linked to collective virtual simulators such as the AVCATT/legacy simulators—both ground and air—from remote locations.

**k. Emergency Deployment Readiness Exercise.** The EDRE is a minimum-notice exercise that tests unit deployment capabilities for contingency operations.

**l. Fire Coordination Exercise.** The FCX is a medium-cost, reduced-scale exercise that can be conducted at the platoon, company team, or battalion task-force level. It exercises command and control skills through integrating and synchronizing organic weapon systems, indirect fires, supporting fires, and maneuver. Targets, ranges, and weapon densities may be reduced for participating units and subcaliber devices substituted for service ammunition.

**m. Joint Training Exercise.** The JTX is an exercise that involves forces of more than one service.

**n. Logistical Coordination Exercise.** The LCX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise in which leaders train to conduct unit sustainment operations such as supply, transportation, medical, personnel replacement, maintenance, and graves registration. The LCX clarifies the key elements of the unit's logistics apparatus, as well as their relationships. The LCX incorporates a tactical war game that produces a variety of logistical requirements while exercising the flow of logistical information.

**o. Live Fire Exercise.** The LFX is a resource-intensive exercise. In an LFX, player units maneuver and employ organic and supporting weapons systems using full-service ammunition. Extensive range and resource requirements limit unit sizes to platoon and company team level. Thus, the focus is on small units and their integration of weapon systems.

**p. Logistics Exercise.** The LOGEX concentrates on tasks associated with the CSS battlefield operating system.

**q. Lane Training Exercise.** The LTX is a technique for training company-level and smaller units on a series of selected soldier, leader, and collective tasks (STX) using specific terrain.

**r. Map Exercise.** The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise. The MAPEX requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. Training aids, such as terrain models and sand tables, may supplement the MAPEX. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders in planning, coordinating, and executing operations under simulated wartime conditions.

**s. Mobilization Exercise.** The MOBEX is a major-scale exercise conducted by FORSCOM. It is usually part of an Armywide involvement in a CJCS or HQDA exercise. The MOBEX involves actions necessary to deploy active and reserve components on short notice up to the point of actually moving to the proposed deployment location. The MOBEX tests plans, procedures, and systems for mobilization, deployment, sustainment, redeployment, and demobilization. All or parts of this exercise can be executed, depending on the commander's assessment.

**t. Partnership For Peace Exercise.** The PFPX is a NATO exercise, one of a series of training events. The PFPX enhances the coordination of military forces for peacekeeping, humanitarian assistance, and search-and-rescue operations. Based on nonlethal scenarios, the PFPX program expands and intensifies military and political cooperation throughout Europe.

**u. Staff Exercise.** The STAFFEX is a training exercise in which the principal and special staffs organize for war (CPs and cells) and train MTP wartime missions.

**v. Sealift Emergency Deployment Readiness Exercise.** The SEDRE is a minimum-notice exercise; it tests surface deployment capabilities of the unit, installation, and transportation-operating agency for contingency operations.

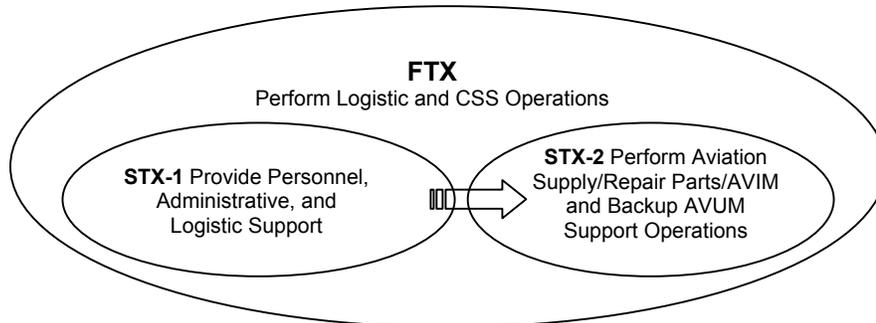
**w. Tactical Exercise Without Troops.** The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise. It is conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. During a TEWT, subordinate leaders and battle staffs are trained on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training to plan the execution of a unit mission, which may include the employment of CS and CSS assets.

## SECTION II. FTX-1: PERFORM LOGISTIC AND CSS OPERATIONS

**1. OBJECTIVE.** This sample FTX provides training for the AVIM battalion/company conducting continuous maintenance operations while deployed to a field site. It trains the unit to move from one location to another and conduct maintenance operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, conducts sustainment operations, and continues its mission. Within the FTX, the unit should incorporate STXs to train unit deficiencies or to take advantage of training resources not usually available. The battalion may train as a unit or as separate companies or as a combination. All exercises may be conducted with battalion staff support. The success of the exercise depends on the unit's ability to secure and defend an assembly area, provide force protection, and sustain maintenance operations.

**2. INTERFACE.** STX 1—*Provide Personnel, Administrative, and Logistic Support* and STX 2—*Perform Aviation Supply/Repair Parts/AVIM and Backup AVUM Support Operations* support this FTX. These

STXs may be battalion- or company-level exercises, depending on the level of involvement during the exercise. Figure 4-1 depicts the general relationship between this FTX and the supporting STXs.



**Figure 4-1. FTX-1: Perform Logistic and CSS Operations.**

**3. TRAINING ENHANCERS.** Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission. The following training events enhance the unit's ability to perform the missions.

- a. Staff training (paragraph 3-6).
- b. Map and sand-table exercises (key leaders—officers and NCOs).
- c. Classes on threat-force capabilities, tactics, and doctrine and how to counter them (all soldiers to a varying degree).
- d. Adventure training to increase morale and confidence such as escape-and-evasion exercises, land navigation, and orienteering.
- e. Reverse-cycle training.
- f. Review of T&EOs (all key leaders).
- g. Review of FTX training objectives (all key leaders).
- h. Review of STX training objectives (all key leaders).
- i. Review of field SOPs, to include load plans (all key leaders).
- j. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this FTX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this FTX may be conducted under several condition options:
  - With OPFOR.
  - During night movement and assembly-area establishment.
  - Within an NBC environment.
- k. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations such as—
  - Defend against attack.
  - Downed aircraft recovery/escape and evasion.
  - Decontamination operations.

I. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards or retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

**NOTE:** The critical training gates shown in the CATS are covered in Appendix A and should be conducted before executing the FTX.

#### **4. CONDUCT OF THE FTX.**

a. This exercise must be tailored to the specific requirements of the battalion/company with defined training goals. It should be based on mission priorities and the TOE structure. This suggested format for an FTX may begin with an alert or recall exercise or the receipt of an OPORD. The FTX ends after all stated training objectives are satisfactorily demonstrated.

b. An AAR should be conducted after major events during the FTX, after completing each STX, and following the end of the FTX. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be repeated until the unit's performance is satisfactory.

c. Figure 4-2 graphically portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this FTX.

d. Table 4-2 shows a suggested time allocation for the FTX. Many training tasks listed may be a part of an STX. It has approximate times required to perform tasks. Because of such factors as the location of and distance to training areas, actual times may vary. The table also provides a sample of the thought process that trainers must use when planning an FTX. Leaders and trainers must identify all relevant training objectives. They also must collectively establish an FTX schedule that accomplishes all training goals. The schedule should include flexible events and timetables to allow for weather variables. It may also provide time for a second iteration of a particular task to ensure proper training.

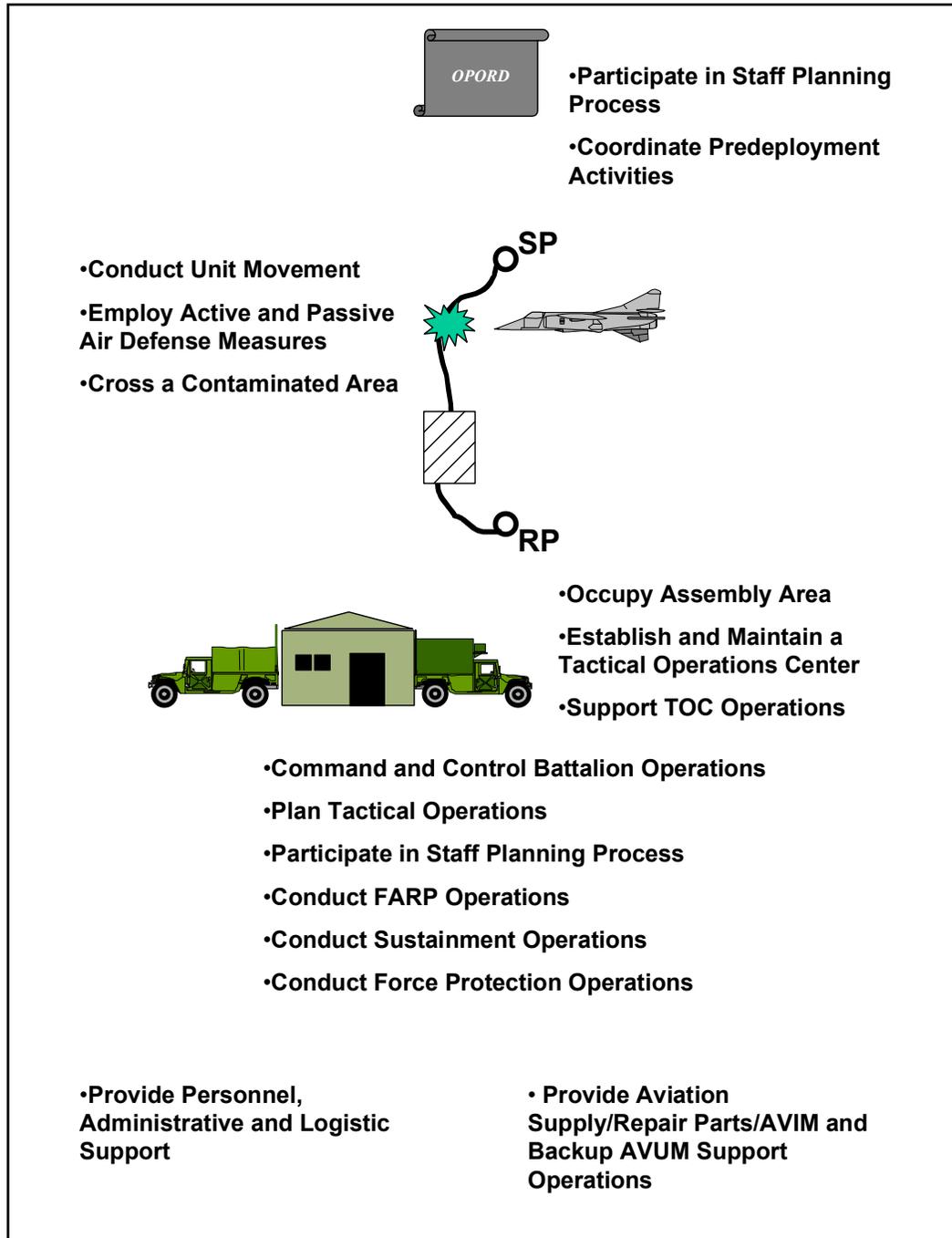


Figure 4-2. General scenario illustration of the FTX.

Table 4-2. Suggested time allocation for an FTX.

FTX: Perform Logistic and CSS Operations		
Number	Task or Event	Time Required
1	Administrative preparations.	Pre-FTX
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues warning order to companies.	2 hours
4*	Battalion prepares for movement.	4 hours
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
6*	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour
8*	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours
9*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
10	Main body conducts move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)
11*	Advance party secures AA and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
13	Main body continues move to AA.	NA
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
15	Main body continues move to AA.	NA
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)
17*	Battalion establishes perimeter defense, ( <b>force protection</b> ).	1 hour
18*	Aircraft arrive on site and conduct arming and refueling as necessary.	0.7 hour (Depends on distance)
19	Battalion headquarters establishes operations center.	1 hour
20*	Companies establish command posts.	1 hour
21*	Battalion establishes communications with higher HQ (may be simulated).	0.5 hour
22*	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour

**Table 4-2. Suggested time allocation for an FTX (concluded).**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Task or Event</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
23	Conduct AAR: company and battalion.	1.5 hours
24	Battalion conducts sustainment.	72 hours
25*	Battalion executes STX-1: <i>Provide Personnel, Administrative and Logistic Support.</i>	12 hours
26*	Battalion executes STX-2: <i>Provide Aviation Supply/Repair Parts/AVIM and Backup AVUM Support Operations.</i>	12 hours
27	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station and issues warning order to companies.	1 hour
28*	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours
29	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by battalion.	1 hour
31*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
32	Main body conducts move.	1.5 hours
33	Main body closes on and occupies AA Home Station.	3 hours  (May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)
34	Conduct final AAR: company and battalion.	1.5 hours
		Total Time: 96 hours
<p>* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</li> <li>• Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</li> <li>• AARs are not time constrained.</li> </ul>		

**5. T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs in Chapter 5 to be used for this FTX.

Table 4-3. T&amp;EOs supporting the FTX.

Task Number	Task Title
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)
01-1-1024.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE COMMANDER'S SAFETY PROGRAM
01-101028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE
01-1-1014.01-0NRC	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
01-1-1031.01-0NRC	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
01-1-1060.01-0NRC	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)
01-1-1302.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS
01-1-1306.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
01-1-1311.01-0NRC	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
01-1-1017.01-0NRC	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)
01-1-1022.01-0NRC	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT
01-4-7042.01-00CS	OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)
01-1-1351.01-00CS	DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN
01-1-0034.01-0NRC	COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTER (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING
01-4-7508.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
01-1-1403.01-0NRC	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
01-1-1107.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW)
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
01-5-1110.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
01-4-7708.01-0NRC	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
01-4-7734.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7735.01-00CS	PLAN AND DIRECT AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7737.01-00CS	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7740.01-00CS	COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLEFIELD DAMAGE ASSESSMENT REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)

Table 4-3. T&amp;EOs supporting the FTX (concluded).

Task Number	Task Title
01-4-7741.01-00CS	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7742.01-00CS	MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)
01-2-0101.01-0NRC	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
01-2-0715.01-0NRC	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
01-2-2035.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
01-2-2036.01-0NRC	REPORT INFORMATION
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
01-2-2052.01-0NRC	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
01-2-2054.01-0NRC	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
01-2-2064.01-0NRC	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
01-2-7000.01-00CS	PLAN COMPANY MOVE
01-2-7001.01-00CS	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE
01-2-7032.01-00CS	EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER
01-2-7037.01-00CS	PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS
01-2-7039.01-0NRC	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
01-2-7707.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
01-2-7714.01-0NRC	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
01-2-0013.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK
01-2-0017.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK
01-2-0201.01-0NRC	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION
01-2-2160.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE
01-4-7008.01-00CS	SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST
01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7013.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7014.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-3-7015.01-00CS	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-3-7016.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7017.01-00CS	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIRS (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-3-7020.01-00CS	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7730.01-00CS	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-4-7736.01-00CS	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
01-4-7738.01-00CS	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY

### SECTION III. STX-1: PROVIDE PERSONNEL, ADMINISTRATIVE, AND LOGISTIC SUPPORT

**1. OBJECTIVE.** This sample STX trains the organization to conduct aviation maintenance operations. During the exercise, the unit will plan and execute logistic and maintenance support, react to threat situations, reorganize, and continue maintenance support operations. This STX helps the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs; prevents wasted time and effort; and maintains operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or at company level.

**2. INTERFACE.** This STX supports the FTX *Perform Logistic and CSS Operations*. It is not supported by drills.

**3. PRELIMINARY LEADER TRAINING.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following:

- Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.
- MAPEX using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
- Terrain boards or sand-table exercises that permit the use of simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
- TEWT in which emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.

**4. LEADER TRAINING TIPS.** The following are training tips for leaders.

- a. Know the requirements of aviation maintenance and logistics in FM 3-04.500(1-500).
- b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting aviation maintenance and logistics.
- c. Become familiar with the other T&EOs listed in Table 4-5 that support this exercise.
- d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.
- e. Develop a plan based on METT–TC. Consider such questions as—
  - What information is available on the area of operations from which the battalion/company will conduct aviation maintenance and logistics operations?
  - What is the likelihood of a ground or an air or NBC attack?
  - What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
  - What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
  - How many aircraft will be supported?
  - What is required of the supported units?
  - What are the DART arrangements?
  - How much time is needed to prepare?
  - How long will it take to complete the operation?
  - How much planning time is available?

**5. TRAINING ENHANCERS.**

a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under several condition options:

- With OPFOR.
- At night, using night-vision devices.
- Within an NBC environment.

**b.** The exercise should be tailored to the level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations such as the following:

- Threat ADA
- Downed aircrew recovery/escape and evasion.
- Simulated loss of a leader (premission or midmission).
- MIJI incidents.
- En route change/modification of mission.
- With external loads.

**c.** During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards. Otherwise, the unit must retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

**d.** The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

**e.** During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions.

**f.** When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

## 6. STX 1—GENERAL SITUATION.

- a. The company is in an assembly area. It is ordered to conduct aviation maintenance and logistical support operations.
- b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.
- c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency in conducting aviation maintenance and logistics support operations.
- d. Figure 4-3 graphically portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this STX.
- e. Table 4-4 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

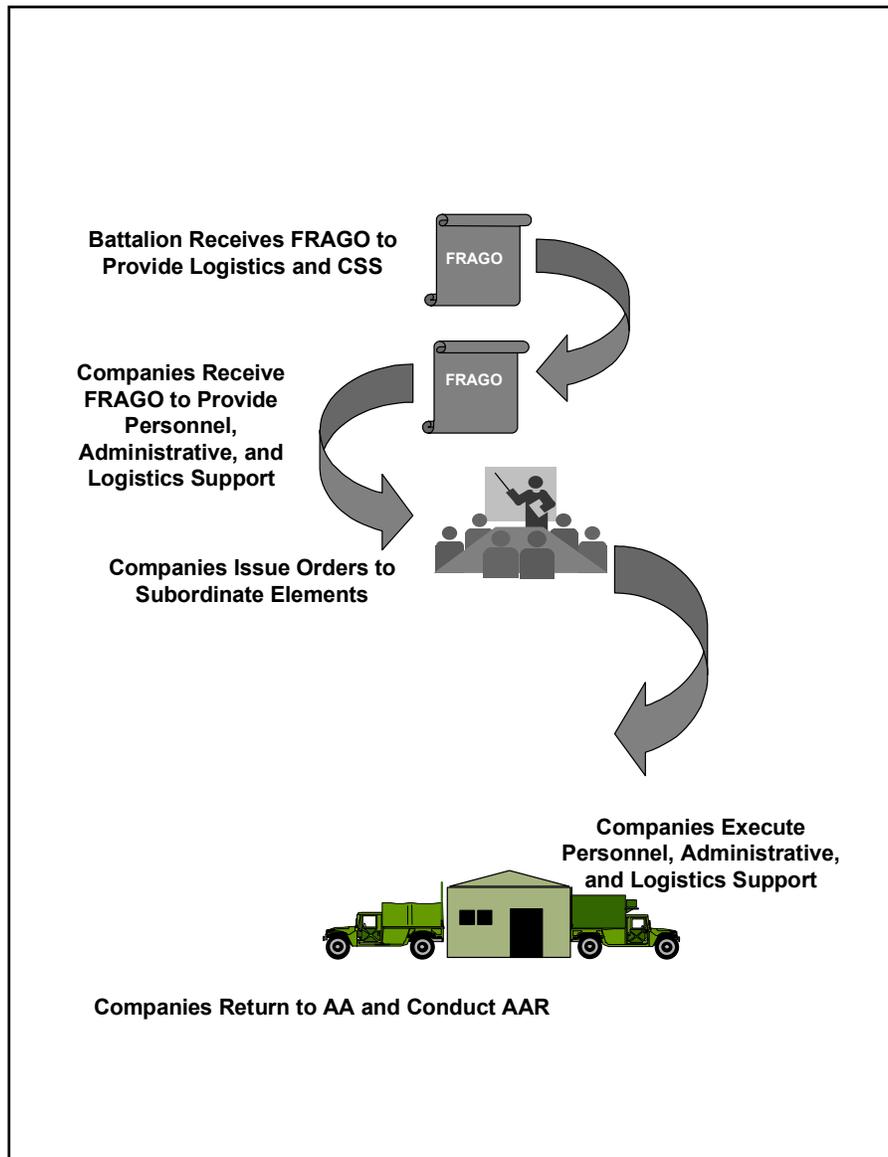


Figure 4-3. General scenario illustration of STX-1.

**Table 4–4. Suggested time allocation for STX-1.**

<b>STX-1: PROVIDE PERSONNEL, ADMINISTRATIVE, AND LOGISTIC SUPPORT</b>		
<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
1	Battalion receives FRAGO to provide logistic and CSS.	1 hour
2	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies to provide logistics and CSS.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
3	Companies coordinate and plan operations according to the FRAGO.	2.5 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
4	Company commanders issue the mission briefing to personnel and conduct rehearsals.	1 hour
5	Companies execute personnel, administrative, and logistic support missions.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity and distance traveled)
6	Conduct AARs at company/battalion.	1.5 hours
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	NA
		Total Time: 12 hours
<p>* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</li> <li>• Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</li> <li>• AARs are not time constrained.</li> </ul>		

**7. STX 1—SPECIAL SITUATION.**

a. The commander may choose to use a FRAGO to initiate STXs in support of the FTX. Figure 4-4 shows a suggested format for a FRAGO.

**FRAGMENTARY ORDER \_\_\_\_\_****1. SITUATION.**

**a. Enemy Forces.** Elements of the (enemy force) are in hasty defensive positions between Phase Line (designation) and Phase Line (designation).

**b. Friendly Forces.** (Battalion designation) provides personnel, administrative, and logistic support to AVN BDE (higher headquarters) beginning NLT (date-time group).

**2. MISSION.** (Training unit) Battalion/Company provides personnel, administrative, and logistic support to AVN BDE located at (grid location\*), beginning NLT (date-time group).

**3. EXECUTION**

**Intent:** Provide personnel, administrative, and logistic support

**a. Concept of Operations.** (Training unit) Company is the main effort.

**b. Tasks to Subordinate Units.** (Optional).

**c. Coordinating Instructions.** See change \_\_\_ to Annex C, Operations Overlay.

**4. SERVICE SUPPORT.** (Designation), located at (grid location), will be operational beginning NLT (date-time group), until end of mission.

**5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.** No change to OPORD \_\_\_.

\* **NOTE:** Location of the LZ should be within enemy area of operations.

**Figure 4-4. STX-1 suggested format for a FRAGO.**

**b.** Leaders use troop-leading procedures. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute the assigned mission. The commander will evaluate and critique the unit's performance, consider any information on threat conditions, and brief leaders on sustainment operations.

**8. SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS.**

**a. Minimum Number of Trainers or Observer-Controllers.** The commander is the primary trainer. One OC is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary OC. At least one other OC is required if OPFOR is used.

**b. Opposing Forces.** Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the *run* phase of training. The OPFOR should be familiar with maintenance operations. Tactics may affect assembly area occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the maintenance support operation.

**c. Vehicles and Communications.** Only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand should be used. When OPFOR is employed, the OPFOR and the OC will require additional vehicles and communications equipment. These additional vehicles and this equipment should come from outside the unit.

**d. Maneuver Area.** The training area should be large enough to allow for displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

**e. Pyrotechnic and Ammunition Support Requirements.**

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. DA Pamphlet 350-38 covers pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pamphlet 350-38 is available via the Internet from USAPA at <http://www.usapa.com>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics are listed in DA Pamphlet 350-38. The HHC and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise.

(3) Pyrotechnic requirements for combat training centers are provided resources separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(4) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and MILES devices, an additional company OC is required.

**9. T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs in Chapter 5 to be used for STXs.

**Table 4-5. T&EOs supporting STX-1.**

Task Number	Task Title
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)
01-1-1024.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE COMMANDER'S SAFETY PROGRAM
01-101028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE
01-1-1014.01-0NRC	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
01-1-1031.01-0NRC	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
01-1-1060.01-0NRC	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)
01-1-1302.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS
01-1-1306.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
01-1-1311.01-0NRC	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
01-1-1017.01-0NRC	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)
01-1-1022.01-0NRC	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT
01-4-7042.01-00CS	OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)
01-1-1351.01-00CS	DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN
01-1-0034.01-0NRC	COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS

Table 4-5. T&amp;EOs supporting STX-1 (continued).

Task Number	Task Title
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTER (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING
01-4-7508.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
01-1-1403.01-0NRC	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
01-1-1107.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW)
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
01-5-1110.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
01-4-7708.01-0NRC	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
01-4-7734.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7735.01-00CS	PLAN AND DIRECT AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7737.01-00CS	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7740.01-00CS	COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLEFIELD DAMAGE ASSESSMENT REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7741.01-00CS	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION (SPO SECTION)
01-4-7742.01-00CS	MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)
01-2-0101.01-0NRC	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
01-2-0715.01-0NRC	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
01-2-2035.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
01-2-2036.01-0NRC	REPORT INFORMATION
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
01-2-2052.01-0NRC	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
01-2-2054.01-0NRC	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
01-2-2064.01-0NRC	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
01-2-7000.01-00CS	PLAN COMPANY MOVE
01-2-7001.01-00CS	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE
01-2-7032.01-00CS	EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER
01-2-7037.01-00CS	PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS
01-2-7039.01-0NRC	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
01-2-7707.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
01-2-7714.01-0NRC	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
01-2-0013.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK
01-2-0017.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK
01-2-0201.01-0NRC	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION
01-2-2160.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE
01-4-7008.01-00CS	SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST

**Table 4-5. T&EOs supporting STX-1 (concluded).**

Task Number	Task Title
01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7013.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7014.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-3-7015.01-00CS	PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-3-7016.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7017.01-00CS	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIRS (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-3-7020.01-00CS	PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-2-7730.01-00CS	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY
01-4-7736.01-00CS	COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES
01-4-7738.01-00CS	PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY

**NOTE:** If a company conducts this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

#### **SECTION IV. STX-2: PERFORM AVIATION SUPPLY/REPAIR PARTS/AVIM AND BACKUP AVUM SUPPORT**

**1. OBJECTIVE.** This sample STX trains the organization to conduct aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM maintenance operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, and continues maintenance/logistic operations. This STX helps the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs. It also prevents wasted time and effort and maintains operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or at company level; however, because of the nature of joint operations, planning functions will occur at the battalion level.

**2. INTERFACE.** This STX supports the FTX *Perform Logistic and CSS Operations*. It is not supported by drills.

**3. PRELIMINARY LEADER TRAINING.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following:

- Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit SOP.
- MAPEX using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
- Terrain boards or sand-table exercises that permit the use of simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
- TEWT in which emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.

**4. LEADER TRAINING TIPS.** Training tips include the following.

- a. Know the requirements of aviation maintenance operations as discussed in FM 3-04.500(1-500).

- b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting maintenance operations.
- c. Become familiar with the T&EOs listed in Table 4-6 that support this exercise.
- d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.
- e. Develop a plan based on METT–TC. Consider questions such as the following:
  - What information is available on the area of operations from which the battalion/company will conduct aviation maintenance and logistics operations?
  - What is the likelihood of a ground or an air or NBC attack?
  - What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
  - What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
  - How many aircraft are being supported?
  - What is required by the supported units?
  - What intelligence is available for mission planning?
  - What are the DART arrangements?
  - How much time is needed to prepare?
  - How long will it take to complete the operation?
  - How much planning time is available?

## 5. TRAINING ENHANCERS.

a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under several condition options:

- With OPFOR.
- At night, using night-vision devices.
- Within an NBC environment.

b. The exercise should be tailored to the level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations such as the following:

- Threat ADA.
- Downed aircrew recovery/escape and evasion.
- Simulated loss of a leader (premission or midmission).
- En route change/modification of mission.
- Backhaul of equipment and personnel.

c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards. Otherwise, the unit must retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions.

f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

**6. STX-2—GENERAL SITUATION.**

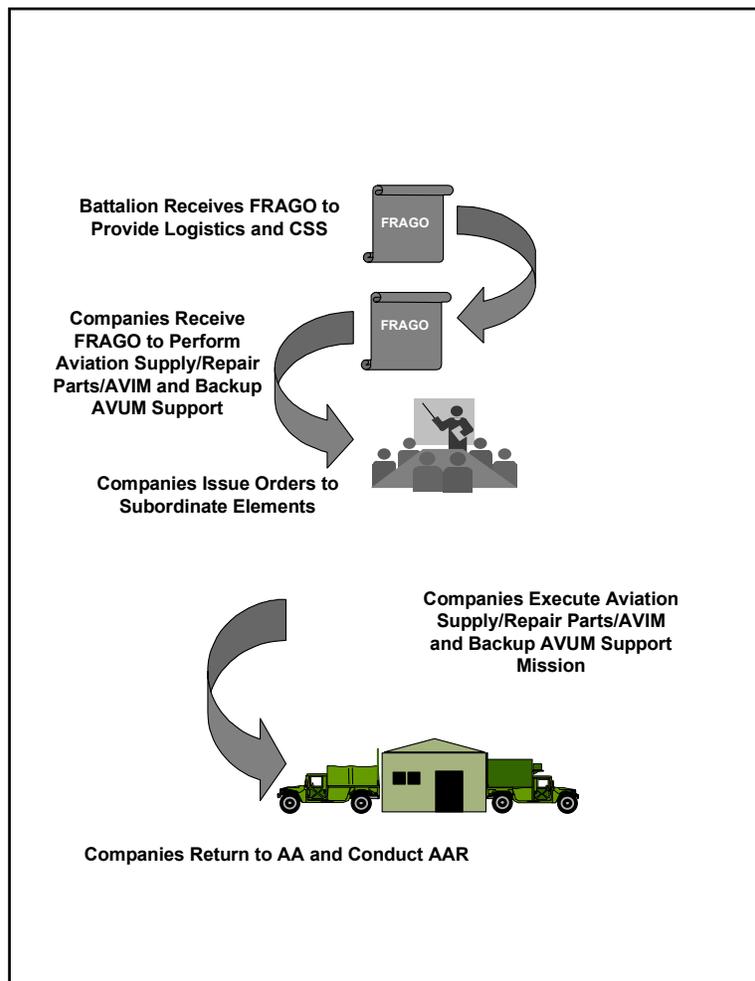
a. The company is in an assembly area. It is ordered to perform aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support operations.

b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.

c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at performing aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support operations.

d. Figure 4-5 graphically portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this STX.

e. Table 4-6 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.



**Figure 4-5. General scenario illustration of STX-2.**

**Table 4-6. Suggested time allocation for STX-2.**

<b>STX-2: PROVIDE AVIATION SUPPLY/REPAIR PARTS/AVIM AND BACKUP AVUM SUPPORT</b>		
<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
1	Battalion receives FRAGO to provide aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support operations.	1 hour
2	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
3	Companies coordinate and plan operations according to FRAGO.	2.5 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
4	Company commanders issue mission briefing to personnel and conduct rehearsals.	1 hour
5	Companies execute aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support missions.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity and distance traveled)
6	Conduct AARs at company/battalion.	1.5 hours
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	NA
		Total Time: 12 hours
<p>* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</li> <li>• Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</li> <li>• AARs are not time constrained.</li> </ul>		

**7. STX 2—SPECIAL SITUATION.**

**a.** The commander may choose to use a FRAGO to initiate subsequent STXs in support of the FTX. The FRAGO shown in Figure 4-6 is an example.

<p><b>FRAGMENTARY ORDER _____</b></p> <p><b>1. SITUATION.</b></p> <p><b>a. Enemy Forces.</b> Elements of the (<u>enemy force</u>) are in hasty defensive positions between Phase Line (<u>designation</u>) and Phase Line (<u>designation</u>).</p> <p><b>b. Friendly Forces.</b> (<u>Battalion designation</u>) performs aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support to AVN BDE (<u>higher headquarters</u>) beginning NLT (<u>date-time group</u>).</p> <p><b>2. MISSION.</b> (<u>Training unit</u>) Battalion/Company performs aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support to AVN BDE located at (<u>grid location*</u>), beginning NLT (<u>date-time group</u>).</p> <p><b>3. EXECUTION</b></p> <p><b>Intent:</b> Perform aviation supply/repair parts/AVIM and backup AVUM support.</p> <p><b>a. Concept of operations.</b> (<u>Training unit</u>) Company is the main effort.</p> <p><b>b. Tasks to subordinate units.</b> (Optional).</p> <p><b>c. Coordinating instructions.</b> See change ___ to Annex C, Operations Overlay.</p> <p><b>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</b> FARP (<u>designation</u>), located at (<u>grid location</u>), will be operational beginning NLT (<u>date-time group</u>), until end of mission.</p> <p><b>5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</b> No change to OPORD ___.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Location of the LZ should be within the enemy area of operations.</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Figure 4-6. Suggested format for an STX-2 FRAGO.**

**b.** Leaders use troop-leading procedures to conduct AVIM maintenance operations. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute the assigned mission. The commander will evaluate and critique the unit's performance, consider any information on threat conditions, and brief leaders on sustainment operations.

**8. SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS.**

**a. Minimum Trainers or OCs.** The commander is the primary trainer. One OC is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary OC. At least one other OC is required if OPFOR is used.

**b. Opposing Forces.** Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the *run* phase of training. The OPFOR should be familiar with attack operations and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution. Such tactics may affect assembly area occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the operation.

**c. Vehicles or Communications.** Only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand should be used. When OPFOR are employed, the OPFOR and the OC will require additional vehicles and communications equipment. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

d. **Maneuver Area.** The training area should be large enough to allow for displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

e. **Pyrotechnic and Ammunition Support Requirements.**

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. DA Pamphlet 350-38 covers pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pamphlet 350-38 is available via the Internet from the USAPA, at [www.usapa.com](http://www.usapa.com). Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics listed in DA Pamphlet 350-38 are the total annual allocation for an aviation maintenance helicopter battalion. The HHC and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(3) Pyrotechnic requirements for combat training centers are provided resources separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(4) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and MILES devices, an additional company OC is required.

**9. T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for STX-1 and STX-2.

**NOTE:** If a company conducts this STX independently, battalion staff must coordinate external maintenance support requirements.

## CHAPTER 5

### TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

#### 5-1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives—task, conditions, and standards—for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately or in an STX or FTX or in live-fire exercises.

#### 5-2. STRUCTURE

Table 5-1 shows the T&EOs in this chapter. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific battlefield operating system.

#### 5-3. FORMAT

The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operations. Each T&EO contains the following items.

- a. **Element.** This identifies the unit or unit elements that perform the task.
- b. **Task.** This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.
- c. **References.** These are in parentheses following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, the reference is not underlined.
- d. **Iteration.** The iteration identifies how many times that the task is performed and evaluated during training. The “M” identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.
- e. **Commander/Leader Assessment.** The unit leadership assesses the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective; the leadership should use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization’s overall capability to accomplish the task. The following ratings should be used.
  - (1) **T—Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
  - (2) **P—Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
  - (3) **U—Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. **Condition.** The condition is a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.
- g. **Task Standard.**

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to accomplish the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. Every soldier should understand it.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit’s training status using performance observation measurements, where applicable, and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. Such conditions establish a common baseline for unit performance.

**h. Task Steps and Performance Measures.** These list actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. An asterisk (\*) indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. The performance measures that must be accomplished to perform the task step are listed under each task step. If the unit fails to perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

**i. GO/NO-GO Column.** This column is provided for annotating the platoon’s performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step. Place an “X” in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a “GO” for the task step to be considered successful.

**j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block.** This block allows the trainer to record the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as “GO.” It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit’s demonstrated performance as a “GO” or “NO-GO.” It also ensures that the leader has a historical record for five training iterations.

**k. Supporting Individual Tasks.** This is a list of all supporting individual tasks required to perform the task. The list shows the references, task number, and task title.

**l. OPFOR Standards.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or “lose” to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify *what* must be accomplished—not *how* it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy it is portraying.

**5-4. USE**

The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX. Table 5-1 shows the T&EOs by element. Table 5-2 shows the T&EOs by BOS.

**Table 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines—by element.**

ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>BATTALION COMMANDER</b>		
COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/ SQUADRON OPERATIONS	01-1-1001.01-0NRC	5-175
<b>BATTALION EXECUTIVE OFFICER</b>		
DIRECT THE STAFF	01-1-1002.01-0NRC	5-178
<b>COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	01-1-1120.01-0NRC	5-192
<b>AVIATION SAFETY OFFICER</b>		
COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM	01-1-1024.01-0NRC	5-184
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	01-1-1028.01-0NRC	5-186
<b>BATTALION S1 SECTION</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	01-1-1101.01-0NRC	5-189
PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	01-1-1102.01-0NRC	5-74

Table 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines—by element (continued).

ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>BATTALION S1 SECTION (CONTINUED)</b>		
CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	01-1-1103.01-0NRC	5-76
CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	01-1-1104.01-0NRC	5-78
PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	01-1-1105.01-0NRC	5-81
COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	01-1-0062.01-0NRC	5-67
DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN	01-1-1351.01-00CS	5-211
<b>BATTALION S2 SECTION</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	01-1-1201.01-0NRC	5-194
ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	01-1-1202.01-0NRC	5-37
PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	01-1-1203.01-0NRC	5-12
PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	01-1-1206.01-0NRC	5-14
PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS	01-1-7743.01-00CS	5-96
MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE	01-1-1031.01-0NRC	5-72
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL	01-1-1060.01-0NRC	5-10
<b>BATTALION S3 SECTION</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	01-1-1301.01-0NRC	5-197
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)	01-1-1302.01-0NRC	5-200
PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	01-1-1303.01-0NRC	5-203
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)	01-1-1306.01-0NRC	5-207
PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	01-1-1311.01-0NRC	5-209
EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	01-1-1016.01-0NRC	5-35
PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)	01-1-1017.01-0NRC	5-181
COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT	01-1-1022.01-0NRC	5-30
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)	01-4-7042.01-00CS	5-146
<b>CHEMICAL SECTION</b>		
COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE	01-1-0034.01-0NRC	5-32
<b>COMMUNICATIONS SECTION</b>		
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	01-4-1352.01-0NRC	5-220
PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTER (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	01-4-1414.01-0NRC	5-223
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)	01-4-7058.01-00CS	5-226
<b>BATTALION S4 SECTION</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	01-1-1401.01-0NRC	5-213
COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	01-1-1402.01-0NRC	5-87
INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS	01-1-1403.01-0NRC	5-90
PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	01-1-1405.01-0NRC	5-92
COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	01-1-1406.01-0NRC	5-94
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	01-1-1023.01-0NRC	5-69
ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT	01-1-1107.01-0NRC	5-85

Table 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines—by element (continued).

ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>SUPPLY SECTION</b>		
PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	01-4-0320.01-0NRC	5-141
<b>CHAPLAIN/MINISTRY TEAM</b>		
IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM	01-5-1110.01-0NRC	5-173
<b>AUTOMOTIVE MAINTENANCE SECTION</b>		
PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	01-4-7723.01-0NRC	5-151
<b>FOOD SERVICE SECTION</b>		
PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT	01-4-7708.01-0NRC	5-148
<b>AVIM SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SPO) SECTION</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SECTION)	01-4-7734	5-154
PLAN AND DIRECT AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES (SPO SECTION)	01-4-7735	5-157
COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO SECTION)	01-4-7737	5-161
COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR), DOWNED AIRCRAFT RECOVERY TEAM (DART), AND AIRCRAFT EVACUATION OPERATIONS	01-4-7740	5-165
MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION (SPO SECTION)	01-4-7741	5-169
MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS (SPO SECTION)	01-4-7742	5-171
<b>TASKS PERFORMED BY ALL COMPANIES</b>		
OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	01-2-0101.01-0NRC	5-23
SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION	01-2-0102.01-0NRC	5-25
CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	01-2-0203.01-0NRC	5-46
PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	01-2-0702.01-0NRC	5-98
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION	01-2-0715.01-0NRC	5-100
IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES	01-2-2035.01-0NRC	5-56
REPORT INFORMATION	01-2-2036.01-0NRC	5-16
CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	01-2-2047.01-0NRC	5-216
CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	01-2-2048.01-0NRC	5-28
EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	01-2-2051.01-0NRC	5-59
EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	01-2-2052.01-0NRC	5-61
COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS	01-2-2054.01-0NRC	5-102
PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	01-2-2064.01-0NRC	5-104
PLAN COMPANY MOVE	01-2-7000	5-106
PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE	01-2-7001	5-108
EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER	01-2-7032.01-00CS	5-122
PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS	01-2-7037.01-00CS	5-124
CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT	01-2-7039.01-00CS	5-218
EVACUATE CASUALTIES	01-2-7707.01-00CS	5-128
SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS	01-2-7714.01-0NRC	5-130
RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK	01-2-0013.01-0NRC	5-39
RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	01-2-0017.01-0NRC	5-42
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	01-2-0201.01-0NRC	5-44
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	01-2-0280.01-0NRC	5-48
CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	01-2-0609.01-0NRC	5-50
PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	01-2-0610.01-0NRC	5-52

Table 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines—by element (concluded).

ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>TASKS PERFORMED BY ALL COMPANIES (CONTINUED)</b>		
CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	01-2-0611.01-0NRC	5-54
CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE	01-2-2160.01-0NRC	5-64
SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST	01-4-7008.01-00CS	5-144
<b>HEADQUARTERS AND HEADQUARTERS DETACHMENT (HHD) &amp; HEADQUARTERS AND HEADQUARTERS COMPANY (HHC)</b>		
PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE	01-2-0001.01-0NRC	5-19
SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	01-2-7102.01-0NRC	5-126
<b>AVIM INTERMEDIATE MAINTENANCE (AVIM) COMPANY</b>		
PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7011.01-00CS	5-111
MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7012.01-00CS	5-114
PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7013.01-00CS	5-116
PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7014.01-00CS	5-118
PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-3-7015.01-00CS	5-134
PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-3-7016.01-00CS	5-136
PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIRS (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7017.01-00CS	5-120
PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-3-7020.01-00CS	5-138
MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7730.01-00CS	5-132
PERFORM MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES	01-4-7736	5-159
PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-4-7738	5-163

Table 5-2. List of training and evaluation outlines—by BOS.

BOS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE</b>		
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL	01-1-1060.01-0NRC	5-10
PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	01-1-1203.01-0NRC	5-12
PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	01-1-1206.01-0NRC	5-14
REPORT INFORMATION	01-2-2036.01-0NRC	5-16
<b>DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER</b>		
PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE	01-2-0001.01-0NRC	5-19
OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	01-2-0101.01-0NRC	5-23
SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION	01-2-0102.01-0NRC	5-25
CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	01-2-2048.01-0NRC	5-28
<b>EMPLOY FIREPOWER</b>		
COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT	01-1-1022.01-0NRC	5-30
<b>PROTECT THE FORCE</b>		
COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE	01-1-0034.01-0NRC	5-32
EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	01-1-1016.01-0NRC	5-35
ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	01-1-1202.01-0NRC	5-37
RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK	01-2-0013.01-0NRC	5-39
RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	01-2-0017.01-0NRC	5-42
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	01-2-0201.01-0NRC	5-44
CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	01-2-0203.01-0NRC	5-46
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	01-2-0280.01-0NRC	5-48
CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	01-2-0609.01-0NRC	5-50
PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	01-2-0610.01-0NRC	5-52
CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	01-2-0611.01-0NRC	5-54
IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES	01-2-2035.01-0NRC	5-56
EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	01-2-2051.01-0NRC	5-59
EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	01-2-2052.01-0NRC	5-61
CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE	01-2-2160.01-0NRC	5-64
<b>PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT</b>		
COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	01-1-0062.01-0NRC	5-67
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	01-1-1023.01-0NRC	5-69
MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE	01-1-1031.01-0NRC	5-72
PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	01-1-1102.01-0NRC	5-74
CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	01-1-1103.01-0NRC	5-76
CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	01-1-1104.01-0NRC	5-78
PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	01-1-1105.01-0NRC	5-81
ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT	01-1-1107.01-0NRC	5-85
COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	01-1-1402.01-0NRC	5-87
INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS	01-1-1403.01-0NRC	5-90

Table 5-2. List of training and evaluation outlines—by BOS (continued).

BOS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT (CONTINUED)</b>		
PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	01-1-1405.01-0NRC	5-92
COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	01-1-1406.01-0NRC	5-94
PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS	01-1-7743.01-0NRC	5-96
PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	01-2-0702.01-0NRC	5-98
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION	01-2-0715.01-0NRC	5-100
COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS	01-2-2054.01-0NRC	5-102
PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	01-2-2064.01-0NRC	5-104
PLAN COMPANY MOVE	01-2-7000.01-00CS	5-106
PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE	01-2-7001.01-00CS	5-108
PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7011.01-00CS	5-111
MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7012.01-00CS	5-114
PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7013.01-00CS	5-116
PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7014.01-00CS	5-118
PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7017.01-00CS	5-120
EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER	01-2-7032.01-00CS	5-122
PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS	01-2-7037.01-00CS	5-124
SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	01-2-7102.01-0NRC	5-126
EVACUATE CASUALTIES	01-2-7707.01-00CS	5-128
SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS	01-2-7714.01-0NRC	5-130
MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-2-7730.01-00CS	5-132
PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-3-7015.01-00CS	5-134
PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-3-7016.01-00CS	5-136
PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-3-7020.01-00CS	5-138
PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	01-4-0320.01-0NRC	5-141
SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST	01-4-7008.01-00CS	5-144
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC)	01-4-7042.01-00CS	5-146
PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT	01-4-7708.01-0NRC	5-148
PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	01-4-7723.01-0NRC	5-151

Table 5-2. List of training and evaluation outlines—by BOS (continued).

BOS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT (CONTINUED)</b>		
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SEC)	01-4-7734	5-154
PLANS AND DIRECTS AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES	01-4-7735	5-157
PERFORM MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES	01-4-7736	5-159
COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO)	01-4-7737	5-161
PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	01-4-7738	5-163
COORDINATE AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR), DOWNED AIRCRAFT RECOVERY TEAM (DART), AND AIRCRAFT EVACUATION OPERATIONS	01-4-7740	5-165
MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION	01-4-7741	5-169
MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS	01-4-7742	5-171
IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM	01-5-1110.01-0NRC	5-173
<b>EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>		
COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	01-1-1001.01-0NRC	5-175
DIRECT THE STAFF	01-1-1002.01-0NRC	5-178
PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)	01-1-1017.01-0NRC	5-181
COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM	01-1-1024.01-0NRC	5-184
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	01-1-1028.01-0NRC	5-186
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	01-1-1101.01-0NRC	5-189
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	01-1-1120.01-0NRC	5-192
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	01-1-1201.01-0NRC	5-194
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	01-1-1301.01-0NRC	5-197
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)	01-1-1302.01-0NRC	5-200
PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	01-1-1303.01-0NRC	5-203
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)	01-1-1306.01-0NRC	5-207

Table 5-2. List of training and evaluation outlines—by BOS (concluded).

BOS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL (CONTINUED)</b>		
PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	01-1-1311.01-0NRC	5-209
DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN	01-1-1351.01-00CS	5-211
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	01-1-1401.01-0NRC	5-213
CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	01-2-2047.01-0NRC	5-216
CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT	01-2-7039.01-0NRC	5-218
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	01-4-1352.01-0NRC	5-220
PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	01-4-1414.01-0NRC	5-223
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)	01-4-7508.01-00CS	5-226



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Prepared turn-in documentation for captured routine equipment on DA Form 2765 (Request for Issue or Turn-In)—S4 responsibility. e. Directed the transport of captured routine materiel to the division support area.  * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	Reference
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1206.01-0NRC	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Requested additional information from the G2 and subordinate units to fill gaps in intelligence. l. Updated the situation map. m. Projected future enemy dispositions based on the enemy situation template. n. Made appropriate recommendations to the commander based on sound analytical procedures and judgment. o. Provided an intelligence report to subordinate units.  * 3. Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1206.01-0NRC	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (01-1-1206.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40) (JP 3-50.21)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Enemy soldiers have surrendered or have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Enemy prisoners of war were processed immediately using the 5 Ss—*search, segregate, silence, safeguard, speed* to rear. EPWs were evacuated to holding areas within 12 hours of capture or surrender. All materials of military-intelligence value were forwarded immediately. No prisoners' rights under international law were violated. No prisoners were allowed to escape because of improper handling procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S2 section, with security force augmentation, <i>searches</i> captured personnel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated EPW issues with the detailed judge advocate or servicing staff judge advocate's office.</li> <li>b. Confiscated all weapons, equipment, and documents.</li> <li>c. Returned personal items of no military-intelligence value.</li> <li>d. Issued a written receipt for confiscated personal property.</li> <li>e. Tagged each prisoner and each item confiscated from the prisoner with required information.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel.                                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Specified place, date, and time of capture.</li> <li>(b) Specified capturing unit.</li> <li>(c) Summarized circumstances of capture.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Inventory items.                                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Specified type of document or material.</li> <li>(b) Specified place, date, and time of capture.</li> <li>(c) Specified the capturing unit.</li> <li>(d) Specified circumstances of capture.</li> <li>(e) Specified enemy unit from which items came (if known or can be determined).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The security force <i>segregates</i> EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, nationality, and ideology; also segregated deserters and civilians.</li> <li>b. Located EPWs at temporary collection points in coordination with the S1.</li> <li>c. Turned over wounded EPWs to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The security force maintains <i>silence</i> among EPWs and prevents all communications between EPWs with special emphasis on the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented EPWs from planning escapes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +The security force <i>safeguards</i> captured enemy personnel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Treated EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Provided EPWs with available food, water, and medical attention, as required.  5. The security force <i>speeds</i> evacuation of EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters that enemy personnel had been captured. b. Coordinated transportation and accompanying security for EPWs with the S1 and the S4. c. Exploited intelligence information. d. Processed EPWs as quickly as possible. e. Evacuated EPWs to the rear as quickly as possible. f. Advised the EPW collection point of prisoners en route. g. Kept EPWs from command-and-control or key logistics facilities while en route.  * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1060.01-0NRC	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** REPORT INFORMATION (01-2-2036.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The unit SOP defines SPOTREP formats and procedures. Enemy activity has been observed. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All observations of enemy activity—either from airborne or ground-based unit elements—are reported immediately. All reports contained essential information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. + The element leader submits SPOTREP to next-higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed enemy activity and reported information in the format for reporting enemy (SALUTE—<i>size, activity, location, unit identification, time, and equipment</i>).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Described the size of the enemy unit.</li> <li>(2) Described the enemy activity.</li> <li>(3) Provided grid coordinates of enemy or reference from a known point.</li> <li>(4) Described distinctive uniforms, patches, signs, or symbols. Provided vehicle identification markings or numbers.</li> <li>(5) Provided the time that the activity was observed.</li> <li>(6) Described the observed equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Included available maps, photos, overlays, sketches, captured documents, enemy material, and other supporting material with oral or written SPOTREP.</li> <li>c. Dispatched SPOTREPs by the most expeditious means available.</li> <li>d. Submitted reports even if the information was incomplete or “negative activity.”</li> <li>e. Information was relayed to the S2/S3 expeditiously.</li> </ul> <p>2. + The element leader reports bombing, shelling, and mortar, rocket, and aircraft fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sent a SPOTREP that included—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Unit of origin.</li> <li>(2) Position of the observer.</li> <li>(3) Direction.</li> <li>(4) Duration of the attack.</li> <li>(5) Area receiving fire.</li> <li>(6) Number, type, and caliber of fires (if known).</li> <li>(7) Flash-to-bang time.</li> <li>(8) Damage.</li> <li>(9) Angle of fall (if known).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Submitted the reports by the most expeditious means.</li> <li>c. Submitted the report even if information was incomplete.</li> <li>d. Information was relayed to the S2/S3 expeditiously.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1053	Operate Radio Set AN/VRC-43 or AN/VRC-46 With TSEC/KY-57 and KYK-13	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1056	Operate the VRC-97 (MSRT)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1057	Operate an AN/GRC-240 (Have Quick II Radio)	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0101.01-0NRC	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE (01-2-0001.01-0NRC)

FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30)  
FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Tactical operations dictate that a battalion/squadron move is required. The company/troop may or may not move as an integral member of the battalion. (**NOTE:** The tactical situation will dictate whether the battalion/squadron moves as a whole or whether the companies/troops will conduct the move independently.) The S3 has conducted movement planning. The commander has selected a movement OIC—usually the HHC/HHT commander—who has conducted troop-leading procedures. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Movement planning was conducted in a timely manner, which allowed subordinate units adequate time to prepare. The quartering party identified all hazards to the road march. Quartering-party preparation allowed units to occupy the assembly area without delay.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. + The movement OIC reviews the movement plan. The plan should include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the movement (and new assembly-area location, if applicable) with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Conducted a map reconnaissance to select routes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected routes that provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(2) Selected routes that provide trafficable terrain.</li> <li>(3) Conducted risk assessment</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Selected the road-march technique.</li> <li>d. Selected the movement order.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Open-column formation during daylight hours.</li> <li>(2) Closed-column formation during limited-visibility conditions or movement through urban areas.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Determined distance factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Space between vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Column gap.</li> <li>(3) Traffic density.</li> <li>(4) Length of column.</li> <li>(5) Road gap.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Determined movement-rate factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicles' column speed and catch-up speed.</li> <li>(2) Rate of march.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Determined time factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Pass time.</li> <li>(2) Start-point time.</li> <li>(3) Time distance.</li> <li>(4) Arrival time.</li> <li>(5) Completion time.</li> <li>(6) Extra time needed for slower vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Determined order of unit movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positioned command vehicles where they could best control movement.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Organized vehicles by mobility capability.</li> <li>(3) Divided the unit into mixed columns to maintain unit integrity.</li> <li>i. Finalized and issued the march order.</li> <li>j. Designated a convoy commander and quartering party according to unit SOP.</li> <li>k. Conducted back-brief to the battalion/squadron commander on the movement plan.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. + Quartering party OIC organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Assembled representatives from each subelement.</li> <li>c. Briefed personnel and designated an assembly area, SP location, and time.</li> </ul> <p>3. + Quartering party moves to the assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered route and reported condition and trafficability.</li> <li>b. Maintained security and air guards.</li> <li>c. Conducted a tactical road march to the assembly-area site.</li> </ul> <p>4. + Quartering party occupies the tentative assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established security.</li> <li>b. Conducted hasty reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the TOC/TAC.</li> <li>d. Cleared and secured the assembly area.</li> <li>e. Monitored the area for nuclear, biological, and chemical contamination.</li> <li>f. Identified— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Entrances.</li> <li>(2) Exits.</li> <li>(3) Internal routes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Reconnoitered for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Drainage.</li> <li>(2) Slope.</li> <li>(3) Cover and concealment.</li> <li>(4) Terrain.</li> <li>(5) Dispersion.</li> <li>(6) Trafficability.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Reconnoitered FARP location.</li> <li>i. Reconnoitered landing zones.</li> <li>j. Identified and marked obstacles and contaminated areas.</li> <li>k. Reported to headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>5. + Quartering party prepares the site for occupation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked locations according to SOP for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Company CP/TOC.</li> <li>(2) Aircraft.</li> <li>(3) Vehicles and equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Maintained security.</li> <li>c. Marked— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Entrances.</li> <li>(2) Exits.</li> <li>(3) Internal routes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Removed obstacles (if feasible).</li> <li>e. Began site preparation.</li> <li>f. Established a dismount point.</li> <li>g. Prepared a site map.</li> <li>h. Posted road guards (if applicable).</li> <li>i. Posted unit guides at the release point.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 6. + Company/troop commander plans for the movement of aircraft.</p> <p>a. Completed troop-leading procedures and conducted aircrew briefings, which includes as a minimum—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Order of movement.</li> <li>(2) Departure time.</li> <li>(3) Route of flight.</li> <li>(4) Movement technique.</li> <li>(5) Initial point, air control point, and release point.</li> <li>(6) FARP location.</li> <li>(7) Assembly-area occupation plan.</li> </ol> <p>b. Ensured that platoon leaders had loaded equipment and aircraft were prepared for flight.</p> <p>* 7. + Company/troop commander plans for the movement of vehicles and personnel.</p> <p>a. Completed troop-leading procedures and issued an OPORD/FRAGO that identified—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) SP location, SP departure time, and order of march.</li> <li>(2) Vehicle blackout procedures.</li> <li>(3) March procedures (closed or open)</li> <li>(4) Rate of march.</li> <li>(5) Security during halts and air guards.</li> <li>(6) Vehicle-recovery procedures.</li> <li>(7) Primary and alternate routes.</li> </ol> <p>b. The commander designates serial commanders who—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that vehicles were inspected and marked.</li> <li>(2) Issued strip maps to drivers.</li> <li>(3) Briefed drivers according to the OPORD/FRAGO and the unit SOP.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (01-2-0101.01-0NRC)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)  
 FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)  
 FM 3-34.103(FM 5-103)

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)  
 FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)  
 FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion/squadron has completed the move to the assembly area. The quartering party is established in the AA. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The AA was occupied no later than the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Elements occupied their positions without halting. The unit location was not compromised because of poor movement or flight techniques.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The company/troop moves vehicles into the AA.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met vehicles at the release point with quartering-party guides (not allowing vehicles to stop).</li> <li>b. Moved vehicles to individual vehicle locations.</li> <li>c. Conducted vehicle after-operations checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The company/troop occupies the AA.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established security.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed guards at entrances to the AA.</li> <li>(2) Placed observation posts to cover key terrain features and likely avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Prepared fire plans and emplaced crew-served weapons.</li> <li>(4) Emplaced chemical-agent alarms.</li> <li>(5) Assigned platoon/section areas of responsibility.</li> <li>(6) Ensured 360-degree security of AA.</li> <li>(7) Organized the AA to detect and defeat a ground attack.                                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Oriented aircraft and vehicle weapons to support perimeter defense.</li> <li>(b) Organized a reaction force to respond to enemy threat.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and tents.</li> <li>c. Commenced mission-support operations.</li> <li>d. Reported occupation of the AA to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +Unit moves aircraft into the AA.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Refueled aircraft before landing in the AA.</li> <li>b. Landed aircraft in designated landing zones using appropriate flight mode according to standing operating procedures.</li> <li>c. Moved aircraft into final positions with ground guides.</li> <li>d. Parked aircraft according to SOP for emergency departure.</li> <li>e. Conducted aircraft after-operations inspections.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +Unit prepares for future operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required vehicle, equipment, and aircraft maintenance.</li> <li>b. Conducted resupply operations.</li> <li>c. Performed precombat checks (if combat operations were imminent).</li> <li>d. Implemented plan for continuous operations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
e. Continued to improve perimeter defensive positions.		
* 5. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2052.01-0NRC	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION (01-2-0102.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-09(FM 6-20) FM 3-21.7(FM 7-7) FM 3-21.10(FM 7-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has occupied a forward AA, and each company has been assigned a sector to defend. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion/squadron established immediate 360-degree security. The AA was not breached as a result of poor security. The battalion/squadron prepared and implemented a security plan within one hour of occupation of the AA.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The companies/troops implement the battalion/squadron assembly-area security plan.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Occasionally the tactical situation will require the establishment of a separate company/troop assembly area. The same planning considerations will apply to the development of a company/troop security plan.</p> <p>2. +The companies/troops organize security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned sectors of responsibility to platoons.</li> <li>b. Searched the area for mines, booby traps, or enemy presence.</li> <li>c. Established observation posts/listening posts.</li> <li>d. Prepared defensive fighting positions.</li> <li>e. Positioned chemical alarms for nuclear, biological, and chemical defense.</li> <li>f. Positioned crew-served weapons on likely avenues of approach.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that interlocking fires were established, if possible.</li> <li>(3) Prepared range cards.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Continued to improve fighting positions.</li> <li>h. Established communication between OPs, companies/troops, and the main CP headquarters.</li> <li>h. Established communication between OPs, companies/troops, and the main CP.</li> <li>j. Prepared dismount points where necessary.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The companies/troops prepare defensive fire plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the locations of all defensive positions and OPs/LPs.</li> <li>b. Determined the principal direction of fire and final protective line for all machine guns.</li> <li>c. Ensured overlapping sectors of fire or coverage of dead space with grenade launchers and artillery fire.</li> <li>d. Submitted recommendations for target reference points.</li> <li>f. Forwarded fire plans to battalion/squadron.</li> </ul> <p>4. +HHC/HHT organizes a reaction force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted periodic patrols to locate and neutralize reported OPFOR.</li> <li>a. Established communications with company/troop headquarters.</li> <li>b. Counterattacked intruding OPFOR.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
5. +The companies/troops reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the main CP of OPFOR activity.</li> <li>b. Occupied fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Alerted aircraft to activate scatter plan according to the unit standing operating procedures.</li> <li>c. Engaged OPFOR according to rules of engagement, weapons control status, and the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Formed the reaction force at the designated rally point.</li> <li>e. Reported actions to the main CP.</li> </ul> * 6. Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2052.01-0NRC	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT (01-2-2048.01-0NRC)  
 FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30) FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112) FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)  
 FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. Troop-leading procedures have been completed. All preparations and coordination for the move have been made. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company/troop met all time schedules. All aircraft, vehicles, and personnel moved to the new location without damage to or loss of equipment or injury to or loss of personnel. The unit was not observed by enemy forces because of poor road-march or tactical-flight discipline. Downed aircraft and disabled vehicles were recovered without incident.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +Company/troop conducts movement by nontactical road march.  <b>NOTE:</b> A nontactical road march is conducted when the company/troop is moving laterally within the division area of operations or enemy contact is not imminent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Departed the SP.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) First vehicle departed the SP at the time specified in the order.</li> <li>(2) Convoy commander reported the last vehicle departing the SP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Maintained march discipline.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicles moved at designated speed.</li> <li>(2) Vehicles moved with designated interval between vehicles.</li> <li>(3) Air guards were posted.</li> <li>(4) Personnel maintained 360-degree surveillance.</li> <li>(5) Convoy commander reported passing critical points or checkpoints.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Conducted halts.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Column stopped at prescribed time and location.</li> <li>(2) Convoy commander reported halts.</li> <li>(3) Vehicles moved off the road and parked under cover/concealment exists (if terrain permits).</li> <li>(4) Maintained vehicle interval.</li> <li>(5) Drivers performed operator’s checks during halts.</li> <li>(6) Maintained security.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Conducted vehicle recovery.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Maintenance section—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Posted guards while operation was ongoing.</li> <li>(b) Inspected disabled vehicle.</li> <li>(c) Repaired vehicle, if possible.</li> <li>(d) Towed disabled vehicle, if necessary.</li> <li>(e) Reported status to convoy commander.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Conducted convoy through urban area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Confirmed weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>(2) Employed close-column formation.</li> <li>(3) Obeyed traffic-control directions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Crossed the RP.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Passed through RP without halting and reported.</li> <li>(2) Convoy commander forwarded closing report to S3.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
2. +The company/troop conducts aircraft air movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Departed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Followed designated air routes using appropriate terrain-flight techniques.</li> <li>c. Reported passing the RP and proceeded to the forward area rearm/refuel point according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Repositioned to assigned location (assembly area or holding area, depending on the mission).</li> </ul> * 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7039.01-0NRC	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT (01-1-1022.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-09(FM 6-20) FM 3-09.31(FM 6-71)

FM 3-91.1(FM 71-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Both OPFOR and friendly forces have indirect-fire and close-air support available. The FSO/fire support element, if assigned, is collocated with the TOC. Initial coordination has taken place with supported units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S3 coordinated fire support that neutralized targets or suppressed or destroyed OPFOR weapons. There were no casualties from friendly fires caused by improper coordination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO (if assigned) coordinate for fire support throughout the area of operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned and integrated defensive fire at the CP, TOC, administrative and logistics operation center, and trains locations.</li> <li>b. Developed a fire-support plan that reflected the commander's guidance, plans, and intent.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that fires were planned in depth from the line of departure/line of contact to the objectives and beyond.</li> <li>(2) Identified targets affecting flight routes.</li> <li>(3) Established control measures for lifting and shifting fires.</li> <li>(4) Identified potential forward arming and refueling point locations.</li> <li>(5) Coordinated a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher headquarters) that addressed targets in depth and timing and control of fires.</li> <li>(6) Identified the locations of friendly firing batteries.</li> <li>(7) Coordinated fires with the scheme of maneuver plan that included—                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Targets of concern.</li> <li>(b) Effects required.</li> <li>(c) Priority of fires.</li> <li>(d) Priority of targets.</li> <li>(e) Graphical fire-support measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO (if assigned) cover the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Discussed priority of target effect (suppression, neutralization, and destruction).</li> <li>b. Discussed priority of fires.</li> <li>c. Discussed responsibility of priority targets.</li> <li>d. Discussed number of preplanned sorties available.</li> <li>e. Discussed use of smoke or dual-purpose improved conventional munitions and control measures.</li> <li>f. Discussed target observers and triggers.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO (if assigned) coordinate requirements for electronic-warfare operations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO (if assigned) conduct reconnaissance and finalize the coordinated fires plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located enemy known or possible positions.</li> <li>b. Identified dominant terrain.</li> <li>c. Targeted enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>d. Identified possible enemy counterattack routes.</li> <li>e. Established targets of concern.</li> <li>f. Approved fire-support execution matrix.</li> </ul>		
* 5. + The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, FSO, and observers conduct fire-support rehearsal.		
* 6. +The S3 coordinates for artillery or tactical air support to suppress enemy air defense artillery sites (J-SEAD).		
* 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1311.01-0NRC	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE

(01-1-0034.01-0NRC)

FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)

FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)

FM 3-97.50(FM 3-50)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The OPFOR has simulated NBC capability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** NBC planning minimized the vulnerability to NBC attack. The recommended MOPP level was correct and timely and afforded maximum protection to soldiers. Identification of affected strike areas and implementation of the monitoring/reporting plan minimized exposure of personnel to the effects of a simulated NBC strike. Coordination for unit decontamination resulted in minimal simulated casualties and enhanced unit effectiveness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The NBC section coordinates NBC defense.</p> <p>a. Planned NBC defensive operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Received, prepared, correlated, and disseminated information on enemy NBC activity and capability.</li> <li>(2) Assisted the S2 with the integration of the NBC threat analysis into the intelligence preparation of the battlefield.</li> <li>(3) Assisted the S2 with coordination of any attached NBC elements.</li> <li>(4) Provided mission analysis for NBC.</li> <li>(5) Briefed the S3 on the effects of NBC on tactical operations.</li> <li>(6) Assisted the S3 with the development of an aircraft scatter plan in case of an NBC attack.</li> <li>(7) Prepared the NBC defense annex to the OPORD/FRAGO and prepared the NBC overlay.</li> <li>(8) Briefed key personnel on the NBC defense plan.</li> <li>(9) Performed MOPP analysis.</li> </ul> <p>b. Addressed specific aspects of NBC operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated with the S1/S4/medical section, as appropriate, for disposition of NBC casualties.</li> <li>(2) Coordinated with battalion/squadron medical personnel for treatment of NBC casualties.</li> <li>(3) Determined the disposition of contaminated unit equipment (decontaminate or abandon) with the S4.</li> <li>(4) Forecasted the procurement of NBC defense equipment (such as dosimeters, MOPP gear, and monitors) with the S4.</li> <li>(5) Coordinated through the S3 for external decontamination support.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The NBC section plans for decontamination operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified possible decontamination sites (personnel, aircraft, and ground support assets).</li> <li>b. Coordinated with brigade/regiment for decontamination support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the integration of host-nation assets into the decontamination operation, if applicable.</li> <li>d. Recommended priority of decontamination.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Assisted companies/troops with operational decontamination requirements.</p> <p>3. +The S3 establishes a battalion/squadron NBC center.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the activities of the company/troop NBC teams.</li> <li>b. Reported NBC equipment and readiness status to the S3.</li> <li>c. Consolidated company/troop operational exposure guidance and radiation status information.</li> <li>d. Developed radiological survey and chemical-detection plans.</li> <li>e. Collated, evaluated, and distributed NBC contamination data.</li> <li>f. Processed NBC reports.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) NBC-1 (Initial Observer’s Report)—Received from observers and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</li> <li>(2) NBC-2 (Evaluated Data)—Received from divisions (generated at battalion/squadron if operating independently).</li> <li>(3) NBC-3 (Warning of Predicted Contamination Report)—Received from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(4) NBC-4 (Reconnaissance &amp; Monitoring &amp; Survey Report)—Received from company/troop NBC teams and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</li> <li>(5) NBC-5 (Actual Contaminated Area Report)—Received from divisions for review of effect on operations.</li> <li>(6) NBC-6 (Detailed Information on Chemical/Biological Attack Report)—Received from companies/troops and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Received and analyzed the chemical downwind report.</li> <li>h. Updated the tactical situation map.</li> <li>i. Briefed the command group, as required.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0201.01-0NRC	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES (01-1-1016.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30) (AR 380-5) (AR 380-19)  
 FM 6-02(FM 24-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit was not compromised by electronic, visual, or audio means. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate OPSEC measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 implements OPSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the S2 physical security plan.</li> <li>b. Formulated information security measures.</li> <li>c. Formulated signal security measures.</li> <li>d. Determined countersurveillance and counter-counter surveillance measures.</li> <li>e. Determined automated systems security.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S3 section implements information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the distribution of all written OPORDs and annexes.</li> <li>b. Accounted for all SOI.</li> <li>c. Controlled all operational information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>d. Maintained all classified information and material in an authorized security container.</li> <li>e. Maintained emergency destruction instructions according to applicable regulations and the unit SOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The S3 section implements SIGSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted mission-essential information by secure radio only.</li> <li>b. Used authentication and encryption codes specified in the SOI.</li> <li>c. Limited message transmissions to no more than 20 seconds.</li> <li>d. Reported all SIGSEC discrepancies/violations to next-higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>4. +The S3 section implements electronic protection measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tuned equipment to assigned frequencies specified in the current SOI.</li> <li>b. Observed radio-silence periods, as directed.</li> <li>c. Employed antijamming procedures.</li> <li>d. Forwarded reports of electromagnetic interference to communications personnel within 10 minutes of the incident.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S3 section directs employment of countersurveillance measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the employment of litter-prevention measures that kept areas free of trash, litter, or personal items.</li> <li>b. Ensured the employment of measures that prevented the creation of footpaths and vehicle tracks between elements.</li> <li>c. Ensured that radios were operated with volumes and squelches on lowest possible settings.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
d. Camouflaged vehicles, equipment, and tents. e. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate. f. Employed noise and light discipline.  6. The S3 section implements automated systems security. a. Positioned computers within an enclosure that provided controlled access. b. Secured all electrical facilities that supported the system. c. Restricted access to the computer by use of classified passwords. d. Controlled all log-ons and file access by using unique operator passwords. e. Changed passwords according to the unit SOP schedule or more frequently as the situation dictates. f. Destroyed all outdated printouts of reports and lists.  * 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment	STP 1-15II-MQS
805C-PAD-3591	Protect Classified Information and Materials	STP 21-24-SMCT
805C-PAD-3594	Store Classified Information and Materials	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES (01-1-1202.01-0NRC)

FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30)  
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

(AR 381-10)  
FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

(AR 381-12)  
FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The quartering party has completed reconnaissance of the AA and is prepared to guide the unit into the AA. The unit completes movement and is closing in on the AA. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The headquarters established a physical security plan within one hour of occupation of the AA. The OPFOR was not allowed to penetrate the unit or CP perimeter because of an inadequate security plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S2, with the S3, develops and implements a unit physical security plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the battalion/squadron security plan and posted it in the TOC.</li> <li>b. Designated company/troop sectors before occupation.</li> <li>c. Planned for the prevention of vehicle and personnel entry into the CP.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided for continuous sentries.</li> <li>(2) Designated a vehicle dismount point.</li> <li>(3) Directed a primary and an alternate means of communication from the security headquarters to the dismount point and perimeter posts.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Defined procedures for the initial response to ground and air attacks.</li> <li>e. Developed a means to prevent unauthorized civilian access to the unit assembly area.</li> <li>f. Developed a comprehensive fire-support plan to support the assembly-area defense.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. +The HHC/HHT operates a guard force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications between the guard commander (security headquarters) and sentry posts.</li> <li>b. Posted sentries to stop unauthorized entry into restricted areas.</li> <li>c. Conducted random exterior patrols to locate, report, and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter.</li> <li>d. Designated a rally point for reactionary forces.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK (01-2-0013.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3) FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4) FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)  
 FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of chemical/biological weapons is imminent. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Preparations for imminent attack minimized damage to equipment and loss of personnel. Missions were resumed with minimal delay after a simulated chemical/biological strike. Personnel responded immediately to chemical/biological alarms. Personnel donned protective mask within 9 seconds of alarm (without hood) or within 15 seconds of alarm (with hood).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided guidance to platoons to prepare equipment and personnel for chemical/biological attack.</li> <li>b. Alerted NBC teams.</li> <li>c. Directed appropriate MOPP level consistent with guidance received.</li> </ul> <p>2. +Company/troop personnel begin preparation for chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced or checked chemical/biological alarms.</li> <li>b. Evacuated aircraft, if possible.</li> <li>c. Covered equipment, munitions, petroleum products, food, and water.</li> <li>d. Positioned vehicles and remaining aircraft to maximize terrain shielding.</li> <li>e. Improved existing shelters with consideration to chemical/biological agent effects (gaseous and liquid delivery methods).</li> <li>f. Minimized skin exposure by proper use of protective clothing.</li> <li>g. Reviewed unit SOP and indicators of chemical/biological attack.</li> </ul> <p>3. +Company/troop personnel take immediate protective measures upon alert of chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned protective mask and hood (if not already in MOPP4).</li> <li>b. Gave the vocal or nonvocal alarms.</li> <li>c. Took individual protective measures if caught in an unprotected area.</li> <li>d. Monitored personnel for physical signs of exposure to chemical/biological agents.</li> <li>e. Administered immediate and appropriate first aid to casualties.</li> <li>f. Sealed the shelter (if possible) if in a protected area.</li> <li>g. Submitted an NBC 1 report if appropriate (personnel observed the chemical/biological attack).</li> <li>h. Stayed covered until the signal was given to uncover.</li> <li>i. Tested the area with detector kits and reported results.</li> <li>j. Marked contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>4. +Unit NBC teams conduct chemical/biological surveys.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted the survey using the techniques prescribed by the battalion/squadron chemical officer or as deemed appropriate by the NBC team chief when operating independently.</li> <li>b. Reported the survey results to the company/troop commander.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The commander conducts poststrike actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed casualties.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>(2) Reestablished chain of command and cross-leveled personnel.</li> <li>(3) Forwarded casualty feeder report.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Forwarded NBC-4 report (results of survey) to battalion/squadron headquarters.</li> <li>c. Assessed status of aircraft, vehicles, and equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reported aircraft and equipment status.</li> <li>(2) Returned aircraft and equipment to operable status as soon as possible.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>6. +Personnel conduct immediate/operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Decontaminated skin.</li> <li>b. Conducted a wipe down of personal equipment with decontamination kit.</li> <li>c. Conducted a spray down of equipment and vehicles, if possible.</li> <li>d. Marked contaminated runoff areas.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The commander develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received guidance from battalion/squadron.</li> <li>b. Initiated unmasking procedures.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the mission and conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>d. Prepared to move the company/troop (if necessary).</li> <li>e. Requested thorough decontamination support (if necessary).</li> <li>f. Resumed operational missions.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK (01-2-0017.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of tactical nuclear weapons is imminent. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Preparations for imminent attack minimized damage to equipment and loss of personnel. Missions are resumed with minimal delay after a simulated nuclear strike. Personnel immediately acted in response to alarms.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided guidance to platoons to prepare equipment and personnel for nuclear attack.</li> <li>b. Alerted NBC teams.</li> </ul> <p>2. +Company/troop personnel begin preparation for nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned vehicles and aircraft to maximize terrain shielding (evacuated aircraft, if time permitted).</li> <li>b. Covered equipment, munitions, petroleum products, food, and water.</li> <li>c. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>d. Improved existing shelters with consideration to blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> <li>e. Minimized skin exposure by proper use of protective clothing.</li> <li>f. Issued and zeroed dosimeters.</li> </ul> <p>3. +Company/troop personnel take immediate protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Took individual protective measures if caught in an unprotected area.</li> <li>b. Sealed the shelter if in a protected area.</li> <li>c. Donned NBC protective gear.</li> <li>d. Stayed covered until the signal was given to uncover (blast wave passed, debris stopped falling, and radiation exposure from fallout was in acceptable range).</li> <li>e. Monitored dosimeters and reported.</li> <li>f. Conducted radiological survey.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +The commander conducts poststrike actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>b. Forwarded NBC-1 report to battalion/squadron headquarters.</li> <li>c. Assessed casualties.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>(2) Reestablished chain of command and cross-leveled personnel.</li> <li>(3) Forwarded casualty feeder report.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Assessed damages to aircraft, vehicles, and equipment.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reported aircraft and equipment status.</li> <li>(2) Returned aircraft and equipment to operable status as soon as possible.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 5. +Company commander develops a contingency plan.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Received guidance from battalion/squadron. b. Analyzed the mission and conducted troop-leading procedures. c. Compared present radiation exposure state to the operational exposure guidance. d. Prepared to move the company/troop (if necessary). e. Resumed operational missions.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS (01-2-0201.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4) FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of OPFOR NBC weapons is possible. NBC alert status has been issued according to unit SOP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Actions taken by the unit limited the effects of an NBC attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. + The commander ensures accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed that NBC-detection equipment is issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was employed and operational immediately after notification.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. + The company/troop takes action to protect itself against NBC attack.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared protective shelters for personnel with overhead cover.</li> <li>b. Placed all equipment and supplies under cover.</li> <li>c. Secured or tied down all loose equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed soldiers and reviewed the unit SOP.</li> <li>e. Assumed the designated MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The commander adjusts MOPP level based on MOPP analysis/guidance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented MOPP-level directives.</li> <li>b. Analyzed company/troop status and mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</li> </ul>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**  
(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0013.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0017.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT (01-2-0203.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75) FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion/squadron is in an assembly area, or companies/troops are operating autonomously and are in a stationary position. The OPFOR possesses air- and ground-surveillance capability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit location is not compromised because of improper or inadequate camouflage.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +Leaders select concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that vehicle tracks followed terrain features such as edge of wood lines and fields.</li> <li>b. Ensured that vehicle tracks continued past the parking spot to another logical location.</li> <li>c. Ensured that personnel used concealed routes, when possible.</li> <li>d. Ensured that all vehicles followed in the same tracks.</li> <li>e. Ensured that all tracks leading into concealed positions are removed.</li> <li>f. Ensured that vehicles and equipment were positioned under cover or in shadows whenever possible.</li> <li>g. Ensured that vehicle positions used natural surroundings for concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured that vehicle positions avoided terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that the enemy could use as reference points.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. +Personnel conceal vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural material to break up shapes or shadows.</li> <li>b. Ensured that natural materials blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Changed natural material regularly when it wilted or discolored.</li> <li>d. Used camouflage screen systems and other man-made materials to enhance natural camouflage.</li> <li>e. Covered or subdued all shiny surfaces such as windows, mirrors, metal, and headlights.</li> <li>f. Kept heat sources—such as generators, engines, and mess areas—under cover, when possible, to reduce thermal and noise signatures.</li> <li>g. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate.</li> </ul> <p>3. +Personnel enforce noise, light, and litter discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used only vehicle blackout lights from dusk to dawn.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all lighted work areas were completely shielded.</li> <li>c. Muffled or masked noise that could not be eliminated.</li> <li>d. Stored or buried litter.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Assessed casualties. d. Performed immediate/operational decontamination (removed dust or mud from vehicles and equipment). e. Coordinated for thorough decontamination (if necessary). f. Reported present radiation exposure rate of personnel.  5. +The company/troop resumes operational missions.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Forwarded NBC-4 report. c. Assessed casualties. d. Performed immediate/operational decontamination. (1) Removed dust or mud from vehicles and equipment. (2) Performed personal equipment decontamination (if necessary). e. Coordinated for thorough decontamination (if necessary). f. Reported present personnel and equipment readiness status.  5. +The company/troop resumes operational missions.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2160.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION (01-2-0610.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5) FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Nuclear, biological, or chemical contamination has occurred. Time constraints do not allow contamination to decay naturally to a minimally acceptable level. The factors of METT-TC permit decontamination. Higher-level support for decontamination is not available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminated to a negligible risk within the time specified in the commander's guidance. No part of the decontamination process caused personnel casualties or damage to equipment. No contamination was spread to personnel, equipment, or to the environment except that which was deemed as acceptable in the risk assessment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The commander directs unit personnel to perform individual decontamination.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Began decontamination as soon as the situation permitted.</li> <li>b. Ensured that contaminants were removed and controlled.</li> <li>c. Directed MOPP gear exchange using buddy teams (if available).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The commander directs decontamination of aircraft, ground vehicles, and equipment.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised the washing of aircraft, vehicles, and equipment.</li> <li>b. Used field-expedient techniques, such as driving through a stream or using water from a fire hydrant, if available and the contamination runoff was acceptable.</li> <li>c. Ensured that controls were in place to maintain separation between "dirty" and "clean" equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +NBC personnel update the unit radiation status (for radiological contamination only).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined present degree and extent of existing hazard using the AN/PDR-27.</li> <li>b. Read dosimeter.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Averaged the total dose.</li> <li>(2) Rounded off reading to nearest centigray.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Reported results to the commander.</li> <li>d. Zeroed all dosimeters, using PP-1578-A.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The company/troop continues the mission.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covered, marked, and reported contaminated runoff.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the OEG was not exceeded.</li> <li>c. Monitored decontaminated personnel with the AN/PDR-27 for level of contamination.</li> <li>d. Repeated decontamination, as necessary.</li> <li>e. Updated the unit radiation exposure status and continuously compared the RES with the OEG.</li> <li>f. Continued to monitor NBC situation.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Sought and received information from higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Used assigned NBC equipment to monitor current situation and detected changes.		
* 5. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION (01-2-0611.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5) FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Nuclear, biological, or chemical contamination has occurred. Time constraints do not allow contamination to decay naturally to a minimally acceptable level. The factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available, and civilian considerations permit withdrawal of the unit to the decontamination site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminated to a negligible risk within the time specified in the commander's guidance. No part of the decontamination process caused personnel casualties or damage to equipment. No contamination was spread to personnel, equipment, or to the environment except that which was deemed as acceptable in the risk assessment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The company/troop coordinates thorough equipment decontamination through battalion/squadron NBC center.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sent an advance party to rendezvous with decontamination elements at the site.</li> <li>b. Assisted with site setup.</li> <li>c. Controlled traffic and provided security at the site.</li> <li>d. Provided a labor detail for processing and for cleanup.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The company/troop completes immediate/operational decontamination (personal wipe down and operator spray down) before leaving the area of operations.</li> <li>3. +The company/troop arrives at the decontamination staging area and completes the following actions:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized aircraft, vehicles, or equipment for decontamination based on commander's guidance or unit standing operating procedures.</li> <li>b. Prepared aircraft, vehicles, or equipment.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed up items to be decontaminated.</li> <li>(2) Removed items that could not be decontaminated using DS2.</li> <li>(3) Secured or removed loose items.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Dismounted vehicles (except for drivers).</li> <li>d. Moved to the decontamination site.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +The company/troop processes through the site.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received instructions from the chemical unit.</li> <li>b. Provided traffic control and site security.</li> <li>c. Moved decontaminated aircraft, vehicles, and equipment to the reconstitution area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The company/troop clears the site.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assisted the chemical unit with site clearance.</li> <li>b. Provided necessary labor to the chemical unit.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. +The company/troop reorganizes and resumes operations.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with battalion/squadron for necessary support and supplies.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Received new or amended orders or confirmation of original orders. c. Continued the mission.  * 7. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES (01-2-2035.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-11(FM 3-100) FM 2-0(FM 34-1)  
 FM 3-0(FM 100-5) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has issued an OPOD/FRAGO. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no casualties or equipment damage because of inadequate fratricide prevention planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander completes the fratricide risk-assessment matrix.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed situational awareness.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluated fire and maneuver control by assessing density of forces compared to clarity of the situation.</li> <li>(2) Evaluated the fire-distribution plan by comparing available rehearsal time compared to collective proficiency and navigation difficulty.</li> <li>(3) Evaluated potential navigation problems by assessing reconnaissance and intelligence compared to visibility and navigation difficulty.</li> <li>(4) Evaluated fire control and battle tracking.</li> <li>(5) Evaluated battlefield hazards by comparing use of dud-producing munitions to knowledge of existing hazards.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assessed combat identification measures; identified friendly recognition and marking system.</li> <li>c. Assessed fire-control discipline.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluated command-and-control measures.</li> <li>(2) Reviewed the ROE.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Assessed personnel and leadership preparedness.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluated mission-related experience and competence.</li> <li>(2) Considered soldier and leader fatigue and stress factors.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. +The commander takes appropriate measures to reduce the risk of fratricide.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced the fire and maneuver plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Conducted back-briefs and supervised combat preparation.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Used a limited-visibility rehearsal, clarified the intent of operations, and cross-trained soldiers/crews on critical tasks.</li> <li>(3) High—Rehearsed adjacent and converging task forces. Used liaison personnel, if available, to confirm ground-unit maneuver plan and locations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Enforced the fire-distribution plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Ensured that all ground AD missions, passage in and out of areas, and fire controls were briefed/rehearsed.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Ensured that ground and flight weapons status was appropriate. Modified task organization and implemented a limited-visibility plan.</li> <li>(3) High—Modified plans and simplified coordination between air and ground forces.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Rehearsed land navigation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Conducted map reconnaissance and covered the effects of terrain, weather, and enemy.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Used redundant navigation aids, ground guides, and night-vision aids; marked enemy and friendly positions.</li> <li>(3) High—Assigned navigation responsibilities to multiple crews (redundancy); conducted route reconnaissance whenever possible.</li> </ul> <p>d. Emphasized fire control and battle tracking.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Coordinated positive clearance of fires; made communications checks, and back briefed fire support.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Coordinated positive clearance of fires and used SOP, guides, beacons, and vectoring, where available.</li> <li>(3) High—Coordinated positive clearance of fires and established liaison with the ground unit.</li> </ul> <p>e. Combated battlefield hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Instilled safety discipline and ensured that all known hazards were identified and the information disseminated.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Considered all contingency plans, actions at hazards, and equipment limitations.</li> <li>(3) High—Established intermediate objectives or control points, considered special logistic/maintenance actions, and coordinated a detailed deception plan.</li> </ul> <p>f. Briefed combat identification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Rehearsed combat vehicle identification skills.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Used and recognized identification, friend or foe, and expedient measures for exposed elements.</li> <li>(3) High—Used and recognized clear infrared friendly markings and used multiple recognition signals.</li> </ul> <p>g. Rehearsed the fire-control discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Reviewed the ROE and enforced the challenge or password discipline.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Simplified the plan and modified the ROE.</li> <li>(3) High—Rotated high-stress positions and augmented door gunners.</li> </ul> <p>h. Confirmed soldiers' and leaders' preparedness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Followed full troop-leading process and established sleep plan/crew-rest criteria according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Emphasized the troop-leading process, refreshed mission-specific skills, and controlled the pace in execution.</li> <li>(3) High—Prioritized tasks and rehearsals, gave FRAGO only for an emergency, and avoided requirements that exceed training level.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES (01-2-2051.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and reports are being received through normal channels. Reports indicate that OPFOR fixed-wing and helicopter forces have achieved temporary air parity and are operating in the unit's area. Unknown or hostile aircraft have been detected by company/troop personnel. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company/troop successfully avoided detection or attack by hostile aircraft.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The stationary unit takes passive air defense measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed and camouflaged aircraft, personnel, and equipment.</li> <li>b. Dispersed the unit to the maximum extent possible.</li> <li>c. Posted air guards to search assigned sectors.</li> <li>d. Gave the air attack alarm as specified in the SOP.</li> <li>e. Occupied defensive positions and was prepared to engage aircraft in self-defense.</li> <li>f. Visually identified the hostile aircraft.</li> <li>g. Reported any aircraft action to the battalion/squadron tactical CP.</li> <li>h. Continued to track the hostile aircraft.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The moving unit takes passive air defense measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted personnel to potential air threat.</li> <li>b. Posted air guards according to the SOP.</li> <li>c. Gave air attack alarm as specified in the SOP.</li> <li>d. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions; increased dispersion. All personnel prepared to engage aircraft as directed.</li> <li>e. Dismounted personnel and prepared to engage aircraft.</li> <li>f. Visually identified the hostile aircraft.</li> <li>g. Reported any aircraft action to the battalion/squadron tactical CP.</li> <li>h. Continued to track the hostile aircraft.</li> <li>i. Rallied the convoy after departure of the hostile aircraft and continued the unit move.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES (01-2-2052.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and reports are being received through normal channels. Reports indicate that OPFOR fixed-wing and helicopter forces have achieved temporary air parity and are operating in the unit's area. Friendly ADA units are operating in the area. Passive air-defense measures have failed, and the unit has been detected by OPFOR aviation forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company/troop reacted immediately to an enemy air attack. Defensive actions resulted in the disruption of the enemy attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The stationary unit takes active air-defense measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Occupied defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Searched assigned sectors for hostile aircraft.</li> <li>d. Detected the enemy aircraft and immediately alerted the unit.</li> <li>e. Identified the detected aircraft.</li> <li>f. Initiated the aircraft scatter plan according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>g. Reported the aircraft to battalion/squadron headquarters.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When making the decision to fire at nonattacking hostile aircraft with small arms, the assigned mission and tactical situation must be considered. Units have the right to self-defense, if attacked, but to prevent fratricide, positive identification is critical.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. The commander orders the unit to engage the aircraft with all available small arms and crew-served weapons.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established the aiming point using the "football-field" method.</li> <li>(2) Used the "volume-of-fire" technique to mass small-arms fire.</li> <li>(3) Coordinated fires with supporting ADA units, if applicable.</li> <li>(4) Engaged aircraft according to the rules of engagement and weapon control status.</li> </ul> </li> <li>i. Reloaded weapons following engagement of the aircraft.</li> <li>j. Assessed damage and casualties.</li> <li>k. Submitted a situation report (SITREP) to the battalion/squadron CP.</li> <li>l. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position, as directed by headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The moving unit takes active AD measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in depth; vehicle operators continued to move.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions, if possible.</li> <li>d. Dismounted personnel and prepared to engage the hostile aircraft.</li> <li>e. Identified the hostile aircraft.</li> <li>f. Engaged the aircraft with all available small arms.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established the aiming point using the "football-field" method.</li> <li>(2) Used the "volume-of-fire" technique to mass small-arms fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
(3) Coordinated fires with supporting ADA, if applicable. (4) Engaged aircraft according to the rules of engagement and weapon control status. g. Reloaded weapons following engagement of aircraft. h. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. i. Assessed damage and casualties. j. Reformed the convoy and continued to move when the “all-clear” signal was given. 3. +Company/troop aircraft conducting tactical missions take active air-defense measures. a. Performed evasive maneuvers according to the unit SOP. b. Attempted to use terrain masking. c. Fired on attacking aircraft by establishing an aiming point, if possible. d. Rallied aircraft after the departure or destruction of the hostile aircraft. e. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. f. Continued the mission. * 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE  
(01-2-2160.01-0NRC)

FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)

FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of tactical nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons has occurred. Protective clothing is unserviceable because of contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mission-oriented protective posture gear is exchanged without further casualties or contamination of equipment. Operations are not degraded as a result of poor or inadequate MOPP gear exchange.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The company/troop prepares to exchange MOPP gear.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a site large enough to accommodate entire unit.</li> <li>b. Obtained replacement MOPP gear and decontamination kits/equipment.</li> <li>c. Decontaminated individual equipment.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated weapon, helmet, load-bearing equipment, and mask carrier.</li> <li>(2) Placed items on uncontaminated surface.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The unit prepares for decontamination/exchange.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Paired off into buddy teams.</li> <li>b. Unfastened shoulder straps of hood.</li> <li>c. Loosened drawcord on hood and mask.</li> <li>d. Untied trouser leg drawcords, unzipped trouser legs, and rolled cuffs.</li> <li>e. Unfastened or cut laces/fasteners of overboots.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +Buddy teams decontaminate the hood and mask.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Buddy 1 decontaminated buddy 2's hood and exposed parts of mask (decontamination wipes for chemical and biological; hot, soapy water for radiological).</li> <li>b. Buddy 1 decontaminated own gloves.</li> <li>c. Buddy 1 removed buddy 2's hood.</li> <li>d. Buddy 1 continued decontamination of buddy 2's mask.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +Buddy teams remove overgarments and overboots.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Buddy 1 unfastened buddy 2's trouser snaps while covered by jacket.</li> <li>b. Buddy 1 untied buddy 2's jacket drawstring.</li> <li>c. Buddy 1 unfastened buddy 2's Velcro™ at the wrists and front of jacket; unzipped jacket.</li> <li>d. Buddy 1 pulled jacket down and away from buddy 2.</li> <li>e. Buddy 1 laid jacket on the ground, black (uncontaminated) side up.</li> <li>f. Buddy 1 unfastened and unzipped buddy 2's trousers.</li> <li>g. Buddy 1 pulled buddy 2's trousers down to knees.</li> <li>h. Buddy 2 stepped out of trousers and overboots and onto the black side of jacket.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. +Buddy 2 removes gloves.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Slid hands partially out of each glove. b. Held hands away from body and let gloves fall to the ground.  6. +Buddy teams don new overgarments, overboots, and gloves. a. Buddy 1 opened buddy 2's packages without touching contents. b. Buddy 2 removed garment without touching the outside of the package. c. Buddy 2 donned clean overgarments, overboots, and gloves.  7. +Buddy teams replace hood. a. Buddy 1 decontaminated own gloves. b. Buddy 1 replaced and secured buddy 2's hood.  8. +Soldiers reverse roles and repeat steps 2 through 7.  * 9. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step of troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Number**

**Task Title**

**References**

ARTEP 1-245-MTP  
ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES (01-1-0062.01-0NRC)  
 FM 1-0(FM 12-6) (AR 220-10) (AR 25-400-2)  
 FM 3-35(FM 100-17) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron has received deployment orders. It has the movement directive and POM information messages and continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, installation transportation office, deployment support organization, the appropriate headquarters, and subordinate units. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All assigned personnel were administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified by the commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +S1 supervises personnel readiness actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed personnel screening.</li> <li>b. Certified personnel qualified for deployment.</li> <li>c. Recommended the disposition of personnel on temporary duty, attending schools, or in authorized leave status according to commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander.</li> <li>e. Coordinated personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel.</li> <li>f. Identified and reported shortages in critical military occupational specialties.</li> <li>g. Redistributed personnel based on the commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Briefed rear-detachment personnel.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 plans the POM.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the movement directive, movement plan/order, POM information message, and standing operating procedures to identify processing and personnel service requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published the POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed the command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the POM with brigade/regimental S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The S1 coordinates POM requirements/functions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated personnel service company support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated Red Cross support.</li> <li>e. Coordinated religious support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the provost marshal for privately owned vehicle storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The S1 section participates in the POM process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed soldiers on the POM process.</li> <li>b. Issued the POM checklist.</li> <li>c. Reviewed family-care plans.</li> <li>d. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>e. Assisted soldiers in the completion of postal forms.</li> <li>f. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
* 5. The S1 briefs family members. a. Coordinated installation support. b. Established briefing site and schedules. c. Published a family-support packet. d. Provided rear-detachment points of contact.  6. PSNCO provides records management. a. Identified personnel records to accompany units. b. Identified records to be transferred to records holding area. c. Provided the S3 with records-management input to the rear-detachment plan.  * 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0300	Coordinate Staff Duties/Responsibilities in Tactical Units	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC) (01-1-1023.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)  
FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)  
FM 4-0(FM 100-10)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)  
FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron is conducting tactical operations. The tactical situation requires administrative, resupply, maintenance, evacuation, and weapons systems replacement activities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Administrative and logistics operations were maintained on a continuous basis. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate ALOC support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S4, with the S1, establishes the ALOC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed paragraph 4 of the OPORD and supported the unit plan by providing continuous combat service support to accomplish the operation.</li> <li>b. Selected a suitable location for the ALOC.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Located near a helicopter landing site.</li> <li>(2) Ensured adequate communication with subordinate elements.</li> <li>(3) Located near medical and maintenance collection points.</li> <li>(3) Established the ALOC on defensible terrain.</li> <li>(4) Located near routes that lead to subordinate element positions.</li> <li>(5) Ensured minimal restrictions to movement.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Maintained an accurate operations map.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 executes personnel functions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared personnel elements of orders and plans.</li> <li>b. Supervised preparation of reports.</li> <li>c. Collected and processed DA Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) and DA Form 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual).</li> <li>d. Informed subordinate elements of incoming replacements.</li> <li>e. Planned and coordinated personnel and administrative services support.</li> <li>e. Coordinated transportation for the replacements to the receiving unit.</li> <li>f. Provided personnel information to the TOC, as appropriate.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the S4 for disposition of casualties.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The S4 executes logistics functions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed overall supervision of ALOC operations.</li> <li>b. Maintained current logistics and personnel estimates in coordination with the S1.</li> <li>c. Prepared logistics elements of orders and plans.</li> <li>d. Supervised preparation of reports.</li> <li>e. Planned and coordinated supply, services, and maintenance support.</li> <li>f. Provided logistics information to the TOC, as appropriate.</li> <li>g. Maintained status of all vehicles and aircraft.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1303.01-0NRC		ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
		ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
		ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-425-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
		ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE (01-1-1031.01-0NRC)  
(JP 3-50.21) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. ISOPREP databases have been completed by unit personnel and forwarded to the S2. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S2 maintained current ISOPREP data on 100 percent of assigned and attached personnel. The ISOPREP database was authenticated before every mission. ISOPREP data were transmitted, using secure means, to the RCC within the time frame prescribed by the unit standing operating procedure.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S2 reviews the ISOPREP database, DD Form 1833 (Isolated Personnel Report).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a completed DD Form 1833 for each individual.</li> <li>b. Ensured that a current photograph (front and profile view) was included in each file.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S2 section transmits, when appropriate, ISOPREP data using secure voice or fax to the RCC.</p> <p>3. +The S2 coordinates authentication procedures to be used during unit recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured isolated personnel were not asked to provide their full authentication number in the clear.</li> <li>b. Provided only one statement per mission when using survivor authentication statement from the ISOPREP database.</li> </ul> <p>4. +The S2 compiles a list of personnel assigned to each mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the S3 section.</li> <li>b. Ensured the security and confidentiality of all ISOPREP records.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1020.01-0NRC	COORDINATE DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-1-1102.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM101-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is operational and is located at the ALOC. The command-and-control strength reporting system is in effect. Reports are received daily from subordinate units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Reports were forwarded within the prescribed time limits specified in the unit SOP. There were no discrepancies between reported personnel strength and actual numbers of personnel present for duty or accounted for.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S1 section performs unit strength accounting.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received unit strength reports from subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Verified accuracy of reports using tactical reports, battalion/squadron aid-station reports, and other sources of information.</li> <li>c. Determined critical shortages by MOS and grade.</li> <li>d. Determined critical MOS replacement requirements and priorities.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with the S1s of units providing attachments.</li> <li>f. Prepared a consolidated battalion/squadron personnel status report.</li> <li>g. Forwarded the consolidated report to the brigade/regimental S1 strength-management section, as required by the SOP.</li> <li>h. Briefed the commander and staff daily.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 section prepares the PPR.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the timely receipt of accurate personnel report input for all assigned, attached, and reporting units.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PPR.</li> <li>c. Assigned the appropriate security classification to the report.</li> <li>d. Prepared additional annexes to the report, as necessary.</li> <li>e. Submitted the PPR to higher headquarters according to the unit SOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The S1 maintains unit strength.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested, received, and assigned replacement personnel.</li> <li>b. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</li> </ul>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1104.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS (01-1-1103.01-0NRC)

FM 1-0(FM 12-6)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is located at the ALOC. The S1 section is operational. The command-and-control strength reporting system is in effect. The unit is equipped with the TACCS. Replacements arrive with a full issue of equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Replacements are processed and transported to assigned units within six hours of their arrival and according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The PAC conducts administrative processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed assignment orders.</li> <li>b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned soldiers to units according to the commander's priorities.</li> <li>d. Signed soldiers in on DA Forms 647 (Personnel Register).</li> <li>e. Collected medical and dental records.</li> <li>f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion/squadron/supporting aid station.</li> <li>g. Added names to the battle roster.</li> <li>h. Prepared the SIDPERS input.</li> <li>i. Prepared DA Form 3955 (Change of Address and Directory Card).</li> <li>j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to servicing postal activity.</li> </ul>		
2. +The S1 conducts replacement coordination with supporting and supported units. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the S4 for transportation support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the S4 for personnel and weapons systems replacement.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the S4 regarding equipment issue, feeding, and rest areas.</li> </ul>		
* 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1104.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING (01-1-1104.01-0NRC)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)  
(JP 3-50.21)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is operational and located at the ALOC. Subordinate units have incurred simulated casualties and are reporting by-name casualties and SIDPERS line numbers. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S1 section reported (or simulated reporting) casualties with 100 percent accuracy to the supporting personnel service company or equivalent agency within 36 hours after the incident. The S1 reported casualties to the commander and staff according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S1 or PSNCO monitors the by-name casualty reporting system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed subordinate units' by-name casualty reports for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>b. Received data from multiple sources to verify the status of soldiers.</li> <li>c. Ensured that units required soldiers and civilians to carry DA Form 1155.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S1 section reports casualty information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received all casualty supporting documents DA Forms 1155 and 1156 from reporting units.</li> <li>b. Compared actual casualty data with casualty projections.</li> <li>c. Prepared the battalion/squadron consolidated casualty report.</li> <li>d. Forwarded consolidated casualty data to the supporting S1/G1/AG personnel service company.</li> <li>e. Posted information to the master casualty log.</li> <li>f. Briefed the S1 or PSNCO on the status of subordinate unit casualty reports.</li> <li>g. Managed the casualty care file for all missing and evacuated soldiers.</li> <li>h. Briefed the commander and staff on casualty status and return-to-duty personnel.</li> <li>i. Notified the commander immediately of critical losses by MOS and grade and the effect of those losses on the operation.</li> <li>j. Prepared letters of sympathy and forwarded them through brigade/regiment to the personnel service company.</li> <li>k. Managed the casualty card file for all missing and evacuated soldiers.</li> </ul> <p>3. The S1 section maintains interface with other agencies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with medical, law enforcement, intelligence, and graves registration activities.</li> <li>b. Provided update to the post locator.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-1360.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATION (CASEVAC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-2064.01-0NRC	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7743.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7714.01-0NRC	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-5-1110.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES (01-1-1105.01-0NRC)  
 FM 1-0(FM 12-6) (AR 27-10) (DA Pamphlet 600-8)  
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is located at the ALOC. CSS facilities and personnel are available to provide health, religious, recreational, and personal affairs support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Good order, discipline, and morale were not adversely affected by inadequate services. Assigned and attached soldiers were promoted, received awards, and were provided other services within required time frames because of proper administrative services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S1 section processes recommendations for promotion.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the soldier's time-in-grade and service requirements.</li> <li>b. Forwarded a list of eligible soldiers to subordinate units.</li> <li>c. Processed approved promotions according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders (individual, personnel, and finance).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The S1 section administers the awards program.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Solicited recommendations for awards and reviewed recommendations.</li> <li>b. Reviewed and authenticated DA Form 638 (Recommendation for Award).</li> <li>c. Processed approved awards according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Verified proper distribution of orders for awards.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The S1 section processes other personnel and finance actions and SIDPERS transactions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed changes for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>b. Prepared SIDPERS input.</li> <li>c. Obtained required signatures for personnel actions.</li> <li>d. Forwarded actions according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>e. Notified the service member upon approval or disapproval.</li> <li>f. Initiated further command actions when required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The S1 section processes evaluation reports.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested evaluation report shells from the S1/G1.</li> <li>b. Processed officer and enlisted efficiency reports according to the unit SOP.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. +The S1 section provides mail services.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Picked up mail from the direct support postal activity or consolidated mailroom.</li> <li>b. Provided appropriate security for all mail until delivered to soldiers or returned to the supporting postal facility.</li> <li>c. Delivered mail to addressees as soon as the tactical situation permitted; returned undeliverable mail.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The S1 section legal specialist provides legal support.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the SJA for personal legal assistance to unit personnel.</li> <li>b. Prepared judicial and nonjudicial proceedings documents.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Processed all appeals.</p> <p>7. The S1 section performs common administrative functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed DA Form 31 (Request Authority for Leave) and annotated DA Form 4179-R (Leave Control Log).</li> <li>b. Maintained duty rosters.</li> <li>c. Prepared military correspondence.</li> <li>d. Maintained required functional files.</li> <li>e. Prepared and submitted recurring reports outlined in the unit SOP.</li> <li>f. Maintained required regulations and SOPs.</li> <li>g. Maintained blank forms and references required to perform administrative functions.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. +The S1 coordinates with the brigade/regimental S1 for medical and dental support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified specific support requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined the number of personnel to be supported.</li> <li>c. Identified special equipment requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The S1 coordinates with chaplain for support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specified location of unit requesting services.</li> <li>b. Determined the type of services needed.</li> <li>c. Determined the time available to the unit for services and counseling.</li> <li>d. Identified casualties requiring special ministering.</li> <li>e. Identified refugees and detainees requiring ministering.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The S1 provides morale support or coordinates for support from the division G1 or brigade/regimental S1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested satellite phone link in combat zone to facilitate soldiers' communication with home and families.</li> <li>b. Arranged for USO-related attractions that could be attended by unit soldiers.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the division G1 for audiovisual entertainment.</li> <li>d. Obtained recreational equipment.</li> <li>e. Coordinated R&amp;R, leave, and other morale activities when the unit left combat.</li> <li>f. Coordinated for mobile PX support in the unit assembly areas.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The S1 provides morale and welfare report to the commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the SJA and legal clerk for UCMJ status.</li> <li>b. Reviewed AWOL and desertion rates for each subordinate unit.</li> <li>c. Obtained crime and straggler rates from the division G1 or brigade/regimental S1.</li> <li>d. Reviewed sick call and stress casualty rate from battalion/squadron surgeon.</li> <li>e. Reported on awards and promotions.</li> <li>f. Reported on morale-enhancing activities.</li> <li>g. Determined the overall status of unit morale.</li> </ul> <p>*12. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1104.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1354.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MEDIATION AND NEGOTIATION	ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP
01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-7721.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MEDICAL SUPPORT ACTIVITIES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP
01-5-1110.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT (01-1-1107.01-0NRC)

FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. OPFOR EPWs have been captured or have surrendered. The S3 has coordinated with the staff sections and tasked units for a security force. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no violations of prisoners’ rights under international law. No prisoners were allowed to escape because of improper handling procedures. Prisoners were evacuated within the time lines specified by higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S4 section, with security-force augmentation, establishes a temporary EPW collection point.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected an area that—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Protected EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>(2) Was away from likely avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Had adequate fields of observation for security personnel.</li> <li>(4) Was adequately displaced from command-and-control elements and key logistical facilities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Used barrier material, existing structures, and/or terrain obstacles to contain EPWs.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The security force maintains segregation of EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Segregated deserters and civilians.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The security force maintains silence among EPWs and prevents all communications between EPWs with emphasis on the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented EPWs from planning escapes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +The security force safeguards EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected EPWs from unnecessary danger.</li> <li>b. Treated EPWs humanely.</li> <li>c. Provided EPWs with available food, water, and medical attention, as required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. +The S4 section coordinates with higher headquarters for the evacuation of EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated EPW issues with the detailed judge advocate or servicing staff judge advocate’s office.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for transportation assets, as required.</li> <li>c. Coordinated movement and transfer of EPWs.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</li> </ol>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1402.01-0NRC)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Combat service support assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 verified and reported the status of supplies and equipment daily. The unit did not fail to accomplish assigned missions because of improper requisition, acquisition, or distribution of supplies and equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S4 section maintains a current status of supplies.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and maintained status reports from subordinate units of supplies on hand.</li> <li>b. Verified the accuracy of reports and records.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The S4 section determines supply requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated current and future operations with other staff sections.</li> <li>b. Identified and allocated resources on hand.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The S4 section coordinates requisition procedures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed higher headquarters’ OPORD/FRAGO and unit SOPs that describe requisition procedures.</li> <li>b. Identified the disposition and location of combat-service support assets.</li> <li>c. Disseminated and monitored subordinate-unit requisition procedures.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +The S4 section coordinates the acquisition, distribution, and accountability of supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented acquisition and distribution procedures according to unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Maintained property accountability documentation.</li> <li>c. Identified priority of resupply and support.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the logistics estimate to determine if appropriate quantities of critical supplies were available to support the tactical mission.</li> <li>e. Assisted the S3 with logistical site selection in support of the tactical plan.</li> <li>f. Maintained situational awareness of maintenance and field-service operations.</li> <li>g. Coordinated the procurement of supplies from local civilians (host nation).</li> <li>h. Ensured the turn-in of equipment/end items rendered unusable because of battle damage.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</li> </ol>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1023.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1405.01-00CS	COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-425-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS (01-1-1403.01-0NRC)  
 (DA Pamphlet 738-750) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-11(FM 3-100)  
 FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP and the administrative and logistics operations center are operational, and staff sections are functioning. Combat-service support assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 section kept a continuous status of battalion/squadron equipment. The S4 accurately briefed the commander and other staff sections on the status of equipment and its effect on future operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The S4 section determines the equipment readiness status. a. Received and maintained status reports from subordinate units. b. Verified the accuracy of reports and records.  2. +The S4 section maintains a current status of equipment readiness. a. Maintained a consolidated status of battalion/squadron weapons and combat equipment. b. Monitored maintenance operations; analyzed and evaluated equipment status to determine effect on current and future operations. c. Provided the commander and staff with an evaluation of the maintenance situation and its effect on current and future operations.  3. +The S4 section acts to improve the equipment readiness status. a. Coordinated with the S3 and recommended realignment of maintenance priorities. b. Coordinated battalion/squadron maintenance priorities with the support organization commander and staff. c. Coordinated weapon system replacement operations with the battalion/squadron executive officer, the brigade/regimental S4, and the support organization staff.  * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-2-7017.01-0NRC	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1405.01-0NRC)  
 FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has published an OPORD/FRAGO. CSS assets are available. External transportation assets are needed to support missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The proper type and number of transportation assets were available because of accurate staff assessments by the S4. Supporting units were given adequate time to plan and prepare for the missions because of timely coordination by the S4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S4 determines transportation requirements. a. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3 and other staff sections. b. Analyzed the capabilities of available organic transportation assets. c. Determined external transportation requirements.  * 2. +The S4 requests and allocates external transportation assets. a. Coordinated external transportation assets with the support organization. b. Received and allocated external transportation assets. c. Prepared movement plans and orders. d. Recommended to the commander procedures for controlling transportation assets and the priority of movement for subordinate units.  * 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES (01-1-1406.01-0NRC)  
 FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has published an OPORD/FRAGO. CSS assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Mission accomplishment was enhanced by adequate coordination of logistical services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S4 section plans and coordinates the construction and maintenance of facilities (except fortifications and signal facilities).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the situation and the commander’s intent.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with engineers for assets to perform construction.</li> <li>c. Evaluated and coordinated the use of local civilians, if available and required.</li> <li>d. Provided real-property control.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with and provided priorities to engineer assets/local civilian agencies.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The S4 section coordinates and provides personnel services, to include—                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Bath and laundry services.</li> <li>b. Clothing exchange.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. +The S4 coordinates and augments grave registration functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received information and intelligence on area of search and analyzed the factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available, and civilian considerations.</li> <li>b. Issued instructions to subordinate units to include—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Nuclear, biological, and chemical reconnaissance and security area.</li> <li>(2) Chaplain support.</li> <li>(3) GRREG unit augmentation.                                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Search.</li> <li>(b) Recovery.</li> <li>(c) Burial/transport of remains.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Prepared DD Form 565 and DD Form 567 (Record of Search and Recovery).</li> <li>d. Secured personal effects to remains.</li> <li>e. Completed emergency burial data.</li> <li>f. Prepared a DD Form 551 (Record of Interment).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</li> </ol>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENTS:** S2 SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK:** PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS (01-1-7743.01-00CS)  
FM 3-57(FM 41-10) FM 3-07.5(FM 90-29)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to conduct dislocated civilian processing. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S2/S3 and a civil-operations team have been attached to assist. Higher headquarters and the host nation are operating a DC camp in the area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The DC processing plan was well-defined and addressed all planning considerations. The DC population did not interfere with military operations. Screening and control of the population resulted in no outbreaks of disease. Human suffering was minimized.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S2/3 develops the DC processing plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained pertinent information and guidance from the S3.</li> <li>b. Assessed the overall needs of the DC population.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with support elements and agencies tasked to assist in screening, controlling, housing, and caring for the DC population.</li> <li>d. Assessed the effect of DC population control on other/future missions.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with other staff elements to ensure proper planning in terms of personnel, administrative, intelligence, logistics, legal, and civil affairs.</li> <li>f. Briefed the commander and staff on the DC processing plan.</li> <li>g. Issued an OPORD/FRAGO to subordinate units.</li> </ul> <p>2. The battalion/squadron conducts noncombatant processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a CCP.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated assistance from local authorities to identify and categorize the DC population.</li> <li>(2) Performed the initial screen of DCs.</li> <li>(3) Identified and processed EPWs and allied soldiers.</li> <li>(4) Processed and segregated the DC population by groupings such as gender, family structure, and health.</li> <li>(5) Obtained MP support to assist in crowd and traffic control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Established the DC assembly area.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Constructed or obtained shelter for DCs.</li> <li>(2) Provided food and water.</li> <li>(3) Provided medical care.</li> <li>(4) Isolated sick and wounded DCs.</li> <li>(5) Constructed sanitary facilities.</li> <li>(6) Continued the screening and administrative processes.</li> <li>(7) Coordinated host-nation support of the assembly area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Controlled DC movement.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated MP support for traffic control and convoy security during the movement of DCs.</li> <li>(2) Coordinated logistical support for the movement.</li> <li>(3) Coordinated host-nation support.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Accounted for all DCs upon arrival at the new assembly area.		
3. +The battalion/squadron maintains command and control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted periodic inspections of all facilities/assembly areas.</li> <li>b. Monitored assembly-area operations.</li> <li>c. Directed the activities of subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Develop contingency plans.</li> <li>e. Provided regular status briefings to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>		
* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1346.01-0NRC	PROVIDE HUMANITARIAN SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT (01-2-0702.01-0NRC)

FM 3-35(FM 100-17)  
 FM 3-11(FM 3-100)  
 FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

(AR 220-10)  
 (DOD 4500.9-R, Part III)  
 FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)  
 FM 4-01.12(FM 55-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron has received deployment notification and initiated the deployment plan according to the unit SOP. The unit may be in garrison or tactically deployed at the time of notification. The staff has received the deployment plan and commander's guidance and is prepared to commence deployment processing. The battalion/squadron has an approved early-deployment readiness exercise SOP. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company/troop will recall all personnel with CTA-50 equipment within the time frame specified in the battalion/squadron SOP. Equipment will be inventoried and configured for movement according to the SOP within the time constraints specified in deployment plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. + The company/troop assembles personnel for deployment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received deployment notification.</li> <li>b. Recalled all personnel according to the SOP.</li> <li>c. Followed N-hour sequence of the deployment plan.</li> <li>d. Reported personnel strength to the S1.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with the S1 section for administrative processing for deployment according to the unit SOP and developed plan for filling personnel shortages.</li> <li>f. Briefed personnel to the maximum extent possible.</li> <li>g. Conducted personal equipment inventories and issued shortages of equipment.</li> <li>h. Coordinated with the rear-detachment commander for the security of facilities and nondeploying equipment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The company/troop prepares vehicles and equipment for movement.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected all vehicles and equipment for serviceability.</li> <li>b. Prepared all vehicles and equipment for movement.</li> <li>c. Inventoried and loaded equipment according to approved load plans.</li> <li>d. Submitted equipment shortages to the S4.</li> <li>e. Coordinated for secure transportation of weapons, ammunition, and pyrotechnics.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. + The company/troop prepares aircraft for deployment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted preflight inspections according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the emergency repair of ground transportation or replacement of nonflyable aircraft.</li> <li>c. Loaded equipment into aircraft according to approved load plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. + The company/troop stages equipment and personnel for deployment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved vehicles, personnel, and equipment to the staging area.</li> <li>b. Conducted premission planning and repositioned aircraft to staging area, if applicable.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. + The company/troop deploys aircraft, personnel and equipment.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Units will deploy by rail, ground, ship, or USAF aircraft or will self-deploy. Actual deployment procedures will be coordinated based on mission and mode of deployment.</p> <p>* 6. + Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7011.01-0NRC	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM FIELD SANITATION (01-2-0715.01-0NRC)  
 FM 4-25.12(FM 21-10-1) (AR 40-5)

FM 4-25.10(FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated combat environment. The unit does not have access to permanent sanitation, mess, or water facilities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Any degradation of unit operation tempo is not due to poor health or illness resulting from inadequate field sanitation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander appoints an FST. 2. + FST monitors field sanitation. a. Inspected water for potability. b. Inspected prescribed load of water purification materials. c. Inspected use of protective measures against disease-carrying organisms (such as rodents and insects). d. Enforced personal-hygiene measures. e. Inspected latrines and urinals. f. Inspected hand-washing facilities. g. Inspected waste-disposal procedures. h. Inspected food transport, maintenance, preparation, and service. i. Enforced heat, cold, and noise-prevention measures. 3. + FST provides information on field-sanitation status. a. Determined deficiencies. b. Reported deficiencies. c. Provided recommendations and training. * 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-2-2064.01-0NRC)  
FM 1-0(FM 12-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The company/troop has sustained simulated casualties and received replacements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel SITREP is forwarded without errors. Replacement personnel are processed within six hours of arrival at the company/troop CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The first sergeant collects strength information from platoons.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified strength data.</li> <li>b. Corrected and completed data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The 1SG processes strength information.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated strength data.</li> <li>b. Logged SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>c. Determined critical shortages and cross-levels requirements.</li> <li>d. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>e. Prepared strength reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The 1SG disseminates strength information.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded personnel SITREP, witness statements (DA Forms 1155), and casualty feeder reports (DA Forms 1156) to the S1.</li> <li>b. Briefed platoons on projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The 1SG processes replacements.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted unit welcome and orientation briefings.</li> <li>b. Inspected critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Coordinated for the issue of needed items.</li> <li>d. Arranged for billeting and messing.</li> <li>e. Conducted personnel briefings on—                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Unit mission and tactical situation.</li> <li>(2) Policies and procedures.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. + The commander performs strength management.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified critical personnel.</li> <li>b. Cross-leveled critical personnel.</li> <li>c. Reviewed and approved strength reports.</li> <li>d. Briefed higher headquarters on unit strength status.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</li> </ol>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1104.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PLAN COMPANY MOVE (01-2-7000.01-00CS)  
 FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has received a warning order and will receive an OPORD with the movement annex before completion of this task. External support requirements are provided by the battalion S2/3. Tentative new areas forward have been provided by the battalion S2/3 in contingency plans. Movement can occur in a field or MOUT environment. After movement analysis, the company commander assembles key leaders. Platoon and section leaders provide current status reports of personnel and equipment. The company tactical SOP with movement readiness levels and the current loading plans are available. The situation may cause the company to echelon its displacement. Support is required at the old site until the new site is operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The displacement plan and additional support requirements are completed and are based on movement procedures of the company and battalion tactical SOP/OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +Commander conducts analysis of the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified specific and implied tasks in warning order.</li> <li>b. Identified established movement procedures in the tactical SOP.</li> <li>c. Listed all essential tasks required to relocate company.</li> <li>d. Performed map reconnaissance to identify movement constraints.</li> <li>e. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>f. Issued warning order to subordinate company elements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Commander, platoon, and section leaders prepare a displacement plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected vehicles, equipment, and personnel status reports to evaluate unit's operational readiness.</li> <li>b. Coordinated inoperable vehicle and equipment repair with service platoon.</li> <li>c. Listed sequentially all tasks required to relocate.</li> <li>d. Listed required equipment to relocate.</li> <li>e. Listed required number of soldiers to relocate.</li> <li>f. Established required time to complete each relocation task.</li> <li>g. Revised load plans to accommodate current operational readiness status.</li> <li>h. Assigned personnel and equipment for reconnaissance party.</li> <li>i. Assigned personnel and equipment for advance party.</li> <li>j. Assigned specific task to platoons and sections.</li> <li>k. Identified personnel uniform and equipment requirements.</li> <li>l. Designated company march commander.</li> <li>m. Briefed plan to platoons and sections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +Company headquarters coordinates for additional support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated convoy-marking equipment and additional vehicle and equipment requirements with battalion S4.</li> <li>b. Coordinated tactical information and security requirements with battalion S2/3.</li> <li>c. Coordinated medical support requirements with battalion S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +Company headquarters prepares rear-party plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated rear-party requirements with battalion S2/3.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Identified rear-party leader, personnel, and equipment. c. Identified operational limitations and security requirements. d. Developed rear-party scenario by analyzing movement order or annex. * 5. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE (01-2-7001.01-00CS)  
 FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

(STP 21-1-SMCT)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company commander has briefed the displacement plan to platoon and section leaders. Platoon and section leaders brief soldiers on the displacement plan. Movement can occur in a field or MOUT environment. The battalion headquarters has selected the route of march and has tasked the company for a reconnaissance party. Site reconnaissance has been accomplished by the battalion S2/3. The battalion and company tactical SOPs are available. The OPORD with movement annex is available. The reconnaissance team is briefed by the battalion S2/3 and the company commander. The company march commander has been designated. The company displacement plan has been disseminated. The battalion S2/3 provides strip maps. The advance party will be dispatched before completion of this task. MOPP level has been designated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All tactical and administrative preparation tasks are accomplished according to the tactical SOP and no later than the time prescribed in the movement annex/order. The company is ready to cross the start point.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +Reconnaissance party conducts route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wore or carried designated uniform and equipment.</li> <li>b. Activated automatic chemical alarms.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified map information along routes.</li> <li>e. Listed capacities of all bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Listed locations of culverts, ferries, fords, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared map overlay that clearly depicts route, obstructions, and key natural and man-made features.</li> <li>h. Computed travel time and distance from proposed SP to RP.</li> <li>i. Briefed battalion S2/3 and company commander upon return.</li> </ul> <p>2. +Company prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS on all vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Corrected all minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies to platoon leader or NCOIC.</li> <li>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized material.</li> <li>e. Masked or removed unit identification markings on vehicles.</li> <li>f. Covered all reflective surfaces on vehicles or cargo.</li> <li>g. Placed antennas at lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volume and squelch to lowest setting consistent with operational requirements.</li> <li>i. Set squelch setting on and call light off when operating at night.</li> </ul> <p>3. +Company dismantles current operating site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismantle tentage and camouflage nets within time specified in the displacement plan.</li> <li>b. Loaded designated equipment according to load plans.</li> <li>c. Disguised all critical equipment and supplies with tarpaulins or any other authorized covering.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Dismantled wire communications, antennas, generators, and power cables within time specified in displacement plan.</li> <li>e. Policed area by removing all signs of occupation.</li> <li>f. Parked rear-party vehicles concealed under cover and located where they do not impede movement of main-body vehicles.</li> <li>g. Dispatched advance party within time specified in movement annex or OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +March commander organizes convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned vehicle positions so that heavier, slower vehicles are placed first.</li> <li>b. Assigned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned recovery vehicles positions so that they can move to disabled vehicles without disrupting convoy movement.</li> <li>d. Assigned hardened vehicles near head of convoy.</li> <li>e. Assigned passenger locations so that all unit personnel have a position and individual and crew-served weapons are alternated throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks.</li> <li>f. Assigned soldiers to air-guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</li> <li>g. Organized trail party so that it provides emergency repairs and recovery support for entire march element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle position listing to trail-party leader.</li> <li>i. Opened radio net as specified in movement annex.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. +March commander and platoon and section leaders conduct premovement inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected personnel and their equipment for compliance with commander's guidance and tactical SOP.</li> <li>b. Inspected organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability.</li> <li>c. Inspected vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security.</li> <li>d. Reported personnel and equipment status to company and battalion S2/3.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. +March commander briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Briefed convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Briefed convoy route.</li> <li>d. Prescribed rate of march and catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Briefed vehicle intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed safety, accident, and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Identified location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Identified location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Provided location and identification of destination.</li> <li>m. Briefed arm-and-hand signals.</li> <li>n. Briefed radio frequencies and call signs for control personnel, security force commander, fire-support elements, reserve security elements, and medical evacuation support.</li> </ul> <p>7. +Company prepares to cross SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned vehicles for departure under cover.</li> <li>b. Cleared all individual and crew-served weapons.</li> <li>c. Posted air guards with safety goggles in positions designated by march commander.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
d. Posted security guards so that 360-degree surveillance is maintained. e. Forwarded movement readiness report to battalion S2/3.  * 8. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-2-7011.01-00CS)

FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

(TM 1-1500-204-23-1)

(DA Pamphlet 738-750)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are being received on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no errors in the documentation of maintenance taskings. The current maintenance status was correct and forwarded to the commander, operations section, and higher headquarters according to the SOP. Required operational rate was maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The production control officer supervises operations of the production control section.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established maintenance repair priorities.</li> <li>b. Monitored repair-parts supply for availability.</li> <li>c. Enforced safety program.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with battalion/squadron concerning current job status and unit workload.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with quality-control section concerning maintenance status.</li> <li>f. Directed production-control system operations.</li> <li>g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to element headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The production control section maintains centralized control over work flow.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained maintenance request register.</li> <li>b. Maintained a balanced workload in maintenance sections.</li> <li>c. Monitored aircraft configuration control program to ensure compliance with unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Advised supported units on flying-hour program to maintain the required bank time.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with supported elements concerning the maintenance status of their equipment.</li> <li>f. Forwarded maintenance status reports to the AVIM commander.</li> <li>g. Forwarded work flow to quality control and appropriate repair sections.</li> <li>h. Maintains shop-stock and bench-stock accountability.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The AVIM commander updates the TOC/TAC CP on current maintenance status.</li> <li>* 4. +The AVIM commander makes recommendations to the commander based on unit maintenance status.</li> <li>5. Shop/tech supply section provides repair parts to company element.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested repair parts/components using automation or manual procedures.</li> <li>b. Stored repair parts/components.</li> <li>c. Stored high-demand and expendable items for company elements.</li> <li>d. Issued repair parts/components to company elements.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
e. Received, processed, and turned in unserviceable repair parts/components.  6. Fuel/petroleum service section provides POL to company/elements. a. Scheduled POL delivery and pickup. b. Performed aircraft refueling operations. c. Performed aircraft defueling operations. d. Performed vehicle refueling operations. e. Sampled POL products. f. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures. g. Enforced safety procedures. h. Maintained tool kits and test equipment. i. Maintained POL products for supported company elements. j. Issued oil and lubrication products to company elements. k. Inventoried POL products for correct quantities on hand.  7. Section soldiers set up administrative area. a. Secured area. b. Established telephone communications with company headquarters. c. Set up equipment. d. Positioned vehicles. e. Camouflaged area.  8. Section soldiers set up customer-service area. a. Secured area. b. Set up equipment. c. Camouflaged area.  * 9. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7013.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7014.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-2-7012.01-00CS)  
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (AR 750-1) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the production control section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All inspections are conducted to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and internal operating procedures. Oil analysis and calibration programs are enforced according to applicable publications.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +Quality-control supervisor supervises operations of the quality-control section.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed quality-control inspections.</li> <li>b. Enforced shop safety standards.</li> <li>c. Monitored oil analysis program.</li> <li>d. Monitored calibration program.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with production-control section concerning final approval of performed maintenance.</li> <li>f. Provided technical assistance to supported units.</li> <li>g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to production control/company headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Quality-control section inspects aircraft maintenance and shop procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required inspections of aircraft, aircraft components, and related systems.</li> <li>b. Performed shop and flight-line safety inspections.</li> <li>c. Monitored modification work orders to ensure proper application.</li> <li>d. Maintained aircraft time-change component schedules for unit aircraft.</li> <li>e. Provided production-control section with component-change requirements for aircraft.</li> <li>f. Provided technical assistance during maintenance test flights and maintenance operational checks.</li> <li>g. Inspected equipment records, either electronically or manually, for accuracy.</li> <li>h. Inspected reference library for current and applicable publications.</li> <li>i. Updated standard inspection procedures for new techniques and equipment for each shop.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +Quality-control section maintains technical publications.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a publication library for all applicable technical publications.</li> <li>b. Posted changes to publications.</li> <li>c. Prepared recommended changes to publications.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Quality-control section manages the Army oil analysis program within the unit.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established an oil analysis log.</li> <li>b. Monitored oil-sample procedures.</li> <li>c. Submitted oil samples to oil-analysis laboratory.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Acted on oil-analysis laboratory recommendations. e. Advised the chain of command of any adverse consequences in the oil-analysis program.  * 5. +Quality-control section manages calibration program within the unit. a. Established procedures for calibration support. b. Monitored all TMDE for calibration requirements. c. Monitored the maintenance request register for TMDE current status.  6. Section soldiers set up administrative area. a. Secured area. b. Established telephone communications with company headquarters. c. Set up equipment. d. Positioned vehicles. e. Camouflaged area.  7. Section soldiers set up customer-service area. a. Secured area. b. Set up equipment. c. Camouflaged area.  * 8. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7013.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7014.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY  
(01-2-7013.01-00CS)

FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)  
(TM 1-1500-204-23-9)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

(TM 1-1500-204-23-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the production-control section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All maintenance is completed and inspections are performed to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The platoon/leader supervises maintenance operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>b. Monitored internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>c. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures.</li> <li>d. Monitored maintenance of reference-library publications.</li> <li>e. Conducted maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with production-control and quality-control sections on status and quality of maintenance being performed.</li> <li>g. Monitored bench stock.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Company/platoon headquarters controls work flow.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a maintenance request register.</li> <li>b. Maintained a balanced work flow.</li> <li>c. Maintained reference library.</li> <li>d. Maintained organic aircraft.</li> <li>e. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment.</li> <li>f. Forwarded maintenance status reports to the production-control section.</li> <li>g. Maintained bench stock.</li> <li>h. Monitored request for repair parts/components.</li> <li>i. Forwarded personnel and equipment status.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +Helicopter-repair sections perform aircraft maintenance and inspections.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required inspections.</li> <li>b. Repaired or replaced aircraft components and related systems.</li> <li>c. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment.</li> <li>d. Maintained tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> <li>e. Provided feedback on internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Tool crib section provides special tools and equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued special tools and equipment.</li> <li>b. Accounted for special tools and equipment.</li> <li>c. Maintains special tools and equipment.</li> <li>d. Maintained usage, location, and inventory records for tools.</li> <li>e. Maintained special tools, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.  5. Section soldiers set up administrative area. a. Secured area. b. Established telephone communications with company headquarters. c. Set up equipment. d. Positioned vehicles. e. Camouflaged area.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Section soldiers set up customer-service area. a. Secured area. b. Set up equipment. c. Camouflaged area.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-2-7017.01-00CS)  
 FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the production-control section on a 24-hour maintenance-available status in a field or MOUT environment conditions. Maintenance personnel with BDAR kits and aerial recovery kit are available. All necessary forms and records are available. The company external and internal operating procedures have been developed and distributed to repair elements and supported units. The company may encounter a Level-I threat attack. The company may receive an NBC attack or be subjected to radiological fallout. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Aircraft was recovered and evacuated, without further damage, within timelines specified by the commander or unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The aviation AVIM contact team coordinates with the owning unit.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined unit identification and location.</li> <li>b. Determined type of aircraft.</li> <li>c. Determined nature of damage.</li> <li>d. Received update on the OPFOR situation, security, and nuclear, biological, and chemical considerations.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with commanders if recovery mission might interfere with tactical operations or compromise security.</li> <li>f. Designated pickup point if different from unit site.</li> <li>g. Designated route of approach.</li> <li>h. Coordinated for guides, if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The maintenance officer directs recovery operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined repair parts, tools, equipment, and mode of transport if applicable.</li> <li>b. Determined BDAR team.</li> <li>c. Determined BDAR/recovery method.</li> <li>d. Briefed the BDAR/recovery team.</li> <li>e. Established security at the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Repaired on site if possible and permitted by the tactical situation.</li> <li>g. Used BDAR or field-expedient methods, if required.</li> <li>h. Recommended course of action to the commander if the aircraft was nonrepairable or could not be recovered.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +The BDAR team performs aircraft recovery.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that unit equipment was removed and secured.</li> <li>b. Rigged/loaded the aircraft for evacuation.</li> <li>c. Provided technical guidance and assisted recovering aircrew, if applicable.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</li> </ul>		

\*\* indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1020.01-0NRC	COORDINATE DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** EXECUTE BATTLE HANDOVER (01-2-7032.01-00CS)  
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion TOC has directed the company to prepare to hand over current engagement to the TCF or military police. TCF/MP is located in an assembly area awaiting deployment. Contact has been broken. Indirect fire and smoke will be used to cover the operations. The company is required to assist elements in their assigned area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit provided adequate assistance to the TCF/MP so that handover occurred without excessive confusion and undue delays.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +Company commander or leaders supervise battle handover assistance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with battalion TOC on location of battle handover line and contact points in the company's assigned area.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion TOC for information on indirect fire and smoke support.</li> <li>c. Disseminated battle handover information to subordinate elements.</li> <li>d. Redeployed troops to assist handover.</li> <li>e. Maintained communication with TCF/MP elements.</li> <li>f. Exchanged tactical information with TCF/MP element counterpart.</li> <li>g. Forwarded handover completion report to battalion TOC.</li> </ul> * 2. +Company provides battle handover assistance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established contact points.</li> <li>b. Established overwatch positions.</li> <li>c. Marked TCF/MP unit routes.</li> <li>d. Guided TCF/MP units along specified routes.</li> <li>e. Provided overwatch for TCF/MP.</li> <li>f. Forwarded handover completion report to company CP.</li> </ul> * 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**  
(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0001.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR UNIT MOVE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM AREA DAMAGE CONTROL (ADC) FUNCTIONS (01-2-7037.01-00CS)  
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is relieved of threat encounter by the TCF/military police. The battle handover has been accomplished. The attack has caused extensive damage in the CP area. Unit defensive reorganization tasks have been completed. The battalion control and assessment command post has been established. ADC resources will not be expended for removing rubble and debris that have no bearing on mission accomplishment. Assistance is provided to supporting elements, as required. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mission-hindering debris and safety hazards are cleared or marked. ADC support is provided as prescribed in the tactical SOP or OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +Company commander or platoon leaders supervise ADC activities.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed damage to company area.</li> <li>b. Forwarded ADC SITREP to battalion control and assessment CP.</li> <li>c. Identified established procedures in the ADC portion of company SOP and battalion rear-operation annex for static procedures.</li> <li>d. Identified all danger areas.</li> <li>e. Supervised company restoration activities.</li> <li>f. Coordinated additional support requirements with control and assessment CP.</li> <li>g. Coordinated dispatch of ADC teams with control and assessment CP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Company commander or leader organizes company ADC teams.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified members and equipment required by the battalion command and assessment team.</li> <li>b. Dispatched CAT personnel and equipment to the control and assessment CP.</li> <li>c. Organized decontamination squads.</li> <li>d. Organized light rescue squads.</li> <li>e. Briefed decontamination and rescue squads.</li> <li>f. Dispatched decontamination and rescue squads as directed by the control and assessment CP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Company performs restoration activities.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established barriers and checkpoints to deny access to danger areas (flammable and explosive).</li> <li>b. Transported casualties to designated areas.</li> <li>c. Treated casualties.</li> <li>d. Relocated major items of equipment to safe areas.</li> <li>e. Conducted fire-fighting operations until all threatening fires are distinguished.</li> <li>f. Employed NBC defense measures.</li> <li>g. Removed rubble, debris, and inoperative vehicles and equipment (mission essential only).</li> <li>h. Reported locations of fire and unexploded ordnance to the control and assessment CP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7017.01-00CS	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENTS:** HHC  
HHD

**TASK:** SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS (01-2-7102.01-0NRC)  
FM 3-22.6(FM 22-6) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has issued an OPORD/FRAGO to displace the assembly area. Advanced party operations have been accomplished and the battalion/squadron has closed on the new assembly area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Administrative and logistical support to the TOC enabled uninterrupted command and control. Security of the TOC was not compromised as a result of inadequate support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +HHC/HHT commander facilitates establishment of the TOC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided ground guides to direct the TOC to its location.</li> <li>b. Established local security as the TOC was established.</li> <li>c. Provided personnel to assist in setting up the TOC.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. +HHC/HHT provides logistical support to the TOC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established resupply and a ration cycle according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Established a water point.</li> <li>c. Established a back-haul schedule for refuse.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +HHC/HHT provides maintenance support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that daily PMCS on all wheeled vehicles was conducted.</li> <li>b. Conducted wheeled-vehicle maintenance procedures.</li> <li>c. Ensured that daily PMCS on all ground-support equipment was conducted.</li> <li>d. Provided maintenance support for all ground-support equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +HHC/HHT coordinates initial medical assistance to TOC personnel.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted routine sick call.</li> <li>b. Evaluated and treated more serious problems.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. +HHC/HHT assists the battalion S2 with TOC security according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>* 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</li> </ul>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** EVACUATE CASUALTIES (01-2-7707.01-00CS)  
FM 4-02.6(FM 8-10-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has incurred casualties. The assembly area is secure, and the main CP and the battalion/company aid station are operational. The medical team is available to provide emergency medical aid and evacuation of casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems as appropriate. Casualties receive immediate first aid when brought to the casualty collection point. Casualties are evacuated by the most expeditious manner available. All classified/sensitive documents are removed from casualties and secured.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Steps and performance measures referring to medics or medical personnel apply only to units with organic medics.</p> <p>* 1. +The commander/first sergeant develops the casualty evacuation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the medical-treatment team of impending casualties.</li> <li>b. Determined assets needed to evacuate casualties.</li> <li>c. Confirmed primary and alternate evacuation routes (if by vehicle).</li> <li>d. Coordinated air evacuation (if tactical situation permits).</li> <li>e. Designated separate holding areas for contaminated and uncontaminated killed-in-action personnel.</li> <li>f. Designated a holding area and security plan for enemy prisoner of war casualties.</li> <li>g. Provided vehicles/aircraft to battalion/squadron, as required.</li> <li>h. Coordinated with higher headquarters for support in case of civilian casualties.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The medics process casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the condition of casualties and prioritized injuries.</li> <li>b. Separated NBC-contaminated casualties from uncontaminated casualties.</li> <li>c. Treated the most seriously wounded patients first.</li> <li>d. Stabilized patients to prevent further injury.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Stopped the bleeding.</li> <li>(2) Prevented/treated shock.</li> <li>(3) Splinted broken bones.</li> <li>(4) Administered painkillers.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3. +The unit personnel search casualties for sensitive or confidential information or equipment and secure it.</p> <p>4. +Company personnel prepare for air evacuation (if the tactical situation permits).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the number and status of casualties.</li> <li>b. Secured landing zones.</li> <li>c. Guided inbound aircraft to the pickup zone.</li> <li>d. Assisted in loading casualties.</li> <li>e. Evacuated casualties with appropriate personal NBC equipment.</li> </ul> <p>5. The unit forwards witness statements (DA Forms 1155) and casualty feeder reports (DA Forms 1156) to battalion S1.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. Commander or leader supervises evacuation of casualties and remains. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified evacuation requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated additional support requirements with battalion S1.</li> <li>c. Requested evacuation of casualties and remains from battalion S1.</li> <li>d. Provided pickup site location and area security status.</li> <li>e. Forwarded spot casualty and casualty feeder reports and witness statements to battalion S1.</li> </ul> * 7. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7714.01-0NRC	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS

(01-2-7714.01-0NRC)

FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11)

(DA Pamphlet 738-751)

FM 4-02.6(FM 8-10-6)

FM 1-0(FM 12-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP and administrative and logistics operations center are operational, and staff sections are functioning. The company has simulated sustained casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Witness statements (DA Forms 1155) and casualty feeder reports (DA Forms 1156) are prepared without error. DA Forms 1155 and 1156 are submitted to the S1 as soon as possible.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +Unit personnel report soldiers killed, wounded, or missing in action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed DA Form 1155.</li> <li>b. Completed DA Form 1156.</li> <li>c. Verified report (commander or first sergeant).</li> <li>d. Attached a roster of names to DA Form 1156 in case of multiple casualties.</li> <li>e. Attached DA Form 1155 to DA Form 1156 and forwarded to the S1.</li> </ul> 2. +Unit personnel coordinate for support with the battalion/squadron administrative and logistics operations center, as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Battalion/squadron aid station.</li> <li>b. Graves registration.</li> <li>c. Personnel status and personnel reports.</li> </ul> * 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2064.01-0NRC	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7743.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES	ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-2-7730.01-00CS)  
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (TM 1-1500-204-23-1) (TM 1-1500-204-23-2)  
 (TM 1-1500-204-23-5) (TM 1-1500-204-23-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP and the aviation unit maintenance company/troop/platoon are operational, and staff sections are functioning. Maintenance personnel are available, and repair parts, tools, and equipment are on hand. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Any degradation of unit operation tempo was not a result of poor or inadequate maintenance. All maintenance was completed, and inspections were performed according to applicable technical publications. Safety procedures were followed throughout all maintenance activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander directs the unit helicopter maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Managed aircraft flying-hour program to maintain required operational readiness rate and optimal bank time.</li> <li>b. Ensured that operational levels were maintained by reviewing aircraft status reports.</li> <li>c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance requirements.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the AVUM commander for—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Scheduled maintenance to support flight hours and mission schedule.</li> <li>(2) Constant phases or periodic maintenance service.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Requested control substitution approval from higher headquarters, as required.</li> <li>f. Directed emergency field repairs in coordination with the AVUM commander.</li> <li>g. Verified materiel condition status reports.</li> <li>h. Requested maintenance contact teams to support forward-deployed elements, as necessary.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. +Leaders supervise operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored the performance of the preventive maintenance checks and services.</li> <li>b. Monitored equipment repair-parts status.</li> <li>c. Inspected aircraft and associated subsystems.</li> <li>d. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the AVUM commander.</li> <li>e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs.</li> <li>f. Maintained maintenance status of aircraft and subsystems.</li> <li>g. Provided input for the material condition status report.</li> </ul> <p>3. +Platoon maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified a fault diagnosis and the category of maintenance.</li> <li>b. Acquired required repair parts.</li> <li>c. Repaired aircraft and subsystems.</li> <li>d. Assisted in the evacuation of aircraft and subsystems to higher echelon maintenance facilities.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Corrected all unit-level maintenance deficiencies.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the required documentation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Completed technical inspection of required repairs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Completed appropriate documentation to record completed work.  4. +Maintenance personnel perform maintenance administrative and support functions (as applicable). a. Maintained the prescribed load list, if applicable. b. Requested repair parts for unit aircraft and subsystems. c. Maintained the document registers. d. Maintained maintenance control records. e. Maintained publications, tools, and equipment.  * 5. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM AVIONIC AND ELECTRICAL REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-3-7015.01-00CS)  
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (TM 1-1500-204-23-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Maintenance requests are received from the production-control section. This task will be performed on a 24-hour maintenance-available status in a field or MOU environment under all environmental conditions. Maintenance personnel, special tools, and necessary equipment are available. All necessary forms and records are available. The type and number of supported units have been identified. The company external and internal operating procedures have been developed and distributed to repair elements and supported units. An automated or manual system may be used. The company may encounter a Level-I threat attack. The company may receive an NBC attack or be subjected to radiological fallout. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All maintenance and inspections are performed to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and internal procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader supervises operations of the repair platoon.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>b. Monitored internal maintenance control system for compliance with regulations.</li> <li>c. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures.</li> <li>d. Monitored maintenance of reference library for errors.</li> <li>e. Conducted maintenance operational checks.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with production-control section on status and quality of maintenance being performed.</li> <li>g. Maintained platoon annex to company's operating procedures.</li> <li>h. Assembled maintenance teams and repair parts.</li> <li>i. Assisted in maintenance test flights.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Platoon headquarters controls work flow.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a maintenance request register.</li> <li>b. Maintained a balanced work flow.</li> <li>c. Maintained reference library within the platoon.</li> <li>d. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>e. Forwarded maintenance status reports to production-control section.</li> <li>f. Monitored requests for repair parts/components.</li> <li>g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to production control and company headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Electrical-avionic system repair sections perform maintenance and inspections.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required inspections.</li> <li>b. Performed repair to or replacement of avionic components and related systems. Perform BDAR on equipment at the breakdown site, if possible.</li> <li>c. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained tool kits, tool sets, and TMDE.</li> <li>e. Provided feedback to internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Section soldiers set up administrative area. a. Secured area. b. Established telephone communications with company headquarters. c. Set up equipment. d. Positioned vehicles. e. Camouflaged area.  5. Section soldiers set up customer service area. a. Secured area. b. Set up equipment. c. Camouflaged area.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM HELICOPTER ARMAMENT REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY  
(01-3-7016.01-00CS)

FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Maintenance requests are received from the production-control section. This task will be performed on a 24-hour maintenance-available status in a field or MOU environment under all environmental conditions. Maintenance personnel, special tools, and necessary equipment are available. All necessary forms and records are available. The type and number of supported units have been identified. The company external and internal operating procedures have been developed and distributed to repair elements and supported units. An automated or manual system may be used. The company may encounter a Level-I threat attack. The company may receive an NBC attack or be subjected to radiological fallout. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All maintenance and inspections are performed to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and internal procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Commander/leader supervises operations of the repair platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>b. Monitored internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>c. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures.</li> <li>d. Monitored maintenance of reference library for errors.</li> <li>e. Conducted maintenance operational checks.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with production-control section on status and quality of maintenance being performed.</li> <li>g. Maintained platoon annex to company's operating procedures.</li> <li>h. Assembled maintenance teams and repair parts.</li> <li>i. Assisted in maintenance test flights.</li> </ul> <p>2. Headquarters maintains control over work flow within the platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a maintenance request register.</li> <li>b. Maintained a balanced work flow within the platoon maintenance sections.</li> <li>c. Maintained reference library within the platoon.</li> <li>d. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment.</li> <li>e. Forwarded maintenance status reports to production-control section.</li> <li>f. Monitored request for repair parts/components.</li> <li>g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to company headquarters and production control.</li> <li>h. Performed BDAR on equipment/vehicles at the breakdown site.</li> </ul> <p>3. Helicopter fire-control repair section performs armament maintenance and inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required inspections according to applicable publications.</li> <li>b. Performed repair to or replacement of aircraft weapon system components and related systems.</li> <li>c. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment.</li> <li>d. Maintained tool kits, tool sets, and TMDE.</li> <li>e. Provided feedback to internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Helicopter weapons system repair section performs armament maintenance and inspections. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required inspections.</li> <li>b. Performed repairs to or replacement of aircraft weapon system components and related systems.</li> <li>c. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained tool kits, tool sets, and TMDE.</li> <li>e. Provided feedback to internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> </ul> 5. Section soldiers set up administrative area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured area.</li> <li>b. Established telephone communications with company headquarters.</li> <li>c. Set up equipment.</li> <li>d. Positioned vehicles.</li> <li>e. Camouflaged area.</li> </ul> 6. Section soldiers set up customer-service area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured area.</li> <li>b. Set up equipment.</li> <li>c. Camouflaged area.</li> </ul> * 7. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PROVIDE REPAIR PARTS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-3-7020.01-00CS)  
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Repair parts are requested. Parts are received from shipping section, and materiel release orders from the materiel management center are verified for accuracy. This task may be performed in a field or MOU environment under all environmental conditions. Supplies are available for issue. The company's external and internal operating procedures have been developed and distributed to supported elements. An automated or manual system may be used. The company may encounter a Level-I threat attack. The company may receive an NBC attack or be subjected to radiological fallout. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Repair parts are received, stored, and issued according to the tactical SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +Platoon leader supervises operations of the supply platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established supply and storage procedures within the platoon.</li> <li>b. Established authorized stockage list of related repair parts.</li> <li>c. Supervised physical inventories.</li> <li>d. Supervised location surveys.</li> <li>e. Monitored supply and storage procedures within the platoon.</li> <li>f. Monitored ASL of related repair parts for accuracy and required quantities.</li> <li>g. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures.</li> <li>h. Coordinated with production control on status or availability of repair parts.</li> <li>i. Maintained platoon annex to company's operating procedures.</li> <li>j. Inspected supply operations within the platoon.</li> </ul> <p>2. Platoon headquarters performs the administrative functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained document register.</li> <li>b. Maintained reference library within the platoon.</li> <li>c. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to company headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwarded repair parts status reports to production-control section.</li> <li>e. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>f. Verified accuracy of reports and supply records, using either electronic or manual method.</li> <li>g. Provided technical guidance and assistance.</li> </ul> <p>3. Technical supply operation section directs processing of supply requests and requisitions of ASL and NSL repair parts, components, and other materiel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained authorized stockage list of related repair parts.</li> <li>b. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>c. Ensured that customers are authorized to request parts.</li> <li>d. Processed supply requests and requisitions of repair parts.</li> <li>e. Edited request for accuracy.</li> <li>f. Inspected items turned in for exchange.</li> <li>g. Enforced section safety procedures.</li> <li>h. Forwarded transaction data to the DMMC or CMMC.</li> <li>i. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. Shipping/receiving section ships and receives repair parts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified accuracy of reports and records.</li> <li>b. Verified quantities with appropriate materiel release orders.</li> <li>c. Processed receipts documents.</li> <li>d. Maintained documentation.</li> <li>e. Forwarded transaction data to the MMC.</li> <li>f. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>g. Submitted work order for unserviceable repairable items to production control for repair.</li> <li>h. Verified preservation and packaging of materiel for shipment.</li> <li>i. Enforced section safety standards.</li> <li>j. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> </ol> <p>5. Storage and issue section stores and issues repair parts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the customers are authorized to receive parts from this facility.</li> <li>b. Verified quantities of items received from shipping section.</li> <li>c. Checked items received against due-outs to supported units for issue.</li> <li>d. Placed items in correct storage location or customer-pickup bin.</li> <li>e. Protected items from deterioration or pilferage.</li> <li>f. Performed location surveys and inventories as directed by the MMC materiel section.</li> <li>g. Verified accuracy of materiel release order from the MMC.</li> <li>h. Identified location of requested items from storage location.</li> <li>i. Selected correct items and quantities of items from storage location.</li> <li>j. Employed correct procedures according to tactical SOP when requested items are not available.</li> <li>k. Maintained issue documentation.</li> <li>l. Forwarded transaction data to the MMC.</li> <li>m. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> <li>n. Enforced section safety standards.</li> <li>o. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> </ol> <p>6. RX and QSS section maintains and issues repair parts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified quantity and condition of items stored.</li> <li>b. Maintained storage documentation.</li> <li>c. Separated items designated for stock replacement from those needed to fill customer due-outs.</li> <li>d. Placed items in correct storage location.</li> <li>e. Performed inventories and location surveys when directed by the MMC.</li> <li>f. Forwarded transaction data to the MMC.</li> <li>g. Edited customer requests for accuracy.</li> <li>h. Issued items to customers with valid due-outs according to age and priority of request.</li> <li>i. Issued due-outs when items are not available for issue.</li> <li>j. Conducted acceptance inspections on all items submitted.</li> <li>k. Ensured proper documentation before acceptance.</li> <li>l. Submitted maintenance work requests to production-control section for repair of unserviceable RX items.</li> <li>m. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> <li>n. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters.</li> </ol>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
* 7. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7013.01-00CS	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** SUPPLY SECTION

**TASK:** PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT (01-4-0320.01-0NRC)  
(AR 710-2)

(DA Pamphlet 710-2-1)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the administrative and logistics operations center are operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate supply support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The commander directs supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored operations by reviewing supply records and status.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected storage of unit equipment, weapons, ammunition, and rations.</li> <li>d. Directed issue of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>e. Calculated field service requirements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The supply sergeant supervises unit supply.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed a supply storage plan.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply procedures by reviewing supply transactions.</li> <li>e. Directed control of weapons, ammunition, and rations.</li> <li>f. Provided input to the materiel condition status report regarding equipment on hand.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The supply section requests supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated requirements with platoons and elements.</li> <li>c. Recorded the requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Submitted requests for resupply.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The supply section receives supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stored supplies according to storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notified the requesting platoon or element that supplies were available for issue.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The supply section issues supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed supply requests.</li> <li>b. Prepared transaction documents.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed copies of transactions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. The supply section maintains small arms and ammunition.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>b. Requested ammunition resupply.</li> <li>c. Performed organizational maintenance on small arms and crew-served weapons.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
d. Forwarded weapons beyond unit repair capabilities to the supporting maintenance unit.		
* 7. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HQ

**TASK:** SET UP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS/COMMAND POST (01-4-7008.01-00CS)  
FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The advance party guides have escorted the company main-body elements to their locations at the new field or MOU operating site. The operating areas for company administration, company-level supply, and company-level maintenance have been identified in the commander's layout plan. Selected personnel from the main body have been assigned to hasty fighting positions to reinforce area security already established by the advance party. The advance party has already established the command post. The company tactical SOP is available. This task will be performed under all environmental conditions. The company may be subject to attack by threat Level-I forces. The company may be subject to NBC attack or radiological fallout. Although the company area of operations is established simultaneously with company defense, company defense has priority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All company headquarters elements are set up according to the company tactical SOP or commander's layout plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +Company commander or first sergeant directs setup operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced OPSEC procedures.</li> <li>b. Enforced safety procedures.</li> <li>c. Directed dispersion of company equipment.</li> <li>d. Directed company defense.</li> <li>e. Directed field-sanitation operations.</li> <li>f. Maintained radio contact with battalion headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>2. Company headquarters sets up company administration area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned equipment.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged area.</li> <li>c. Established CP security.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company headquarters sets up company supply area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned equipment.</li> <li>b. Established communications with company switchboard.</li> <li>c. Positioned supply vehicles.</li> <li>d. Secured unissued weapons.</li> <li>e. Secured unissued supplies.</li> <li>f. Camouflaged area.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7007	SET UP COMPANY AREA OF DEFENSE	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (BCOC) (01-4-7042.01-00CS)  
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A threat Level-II or -III attack is imminent. Intelligence reports indicate that the threat has the capability to infiltrate a company-size element into the battalion area to disrupt communications and aircraft maintenance. The threat has small arms, automatic weapons, and air support capabilities. The S2/3 area is the BCOC. The battalion has the responsibility for defense of its assigned area. Unit defenses have been established. The OPORD rear-operations annex and TSOP are available. The BCOC is required to coordinate battalion defense. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All defensive reactions are coordinated and controlled by battalion BCOC according to the rear-operations annex and TSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +S2/3 coordinates the BCOC operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned specific areas of interest and work shifts to personnel.</li> <li>b. Enforced sleep plans to ensure that all personnel receive adequate sleep.</li> <li>c. Enforced camouflage and concealment procedures.</li> <li>d. Inspected subordinate units' defenses to ensure compliance with rear-operations annex and commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated internal BCOC operations to ensure that all staff input is integrated into the decision-making process.</li> </ul> <p>2. The communication section establishes rear-area communications networks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified wire communications.</li> <li>b. Verified radio communications.</li> <li>c. Operated BCOC noncooperative target recognition.</li> <li>d. Prepared alternate communications.</li> </ul> <p>3. S2/3 coordinates base-cluster operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated base-cluster defense plans.</li> <li>b. Integrated ADC plan to ensure that it supports the battalion base-cluster defense plan.</li> <li>c. Coordinated base-cluster defense plan with the COSCOM/TSC S2/3.</li> <li>d. Identified likely threat targets and intentions.</li> <li>e. Corrected base-defense weaknesses in coordination with base commander.</li> <li>f. Directed repositions of unit and bases, based on tactical situation.</li> <li>g. Coordinated MP support with COSCOM/TSC S2/3.</li> <li>h. Coordinated NBC defense operations with corps NBC officer.</li> <li>i. Performed intelligence functions in coordination with COSCOM/TSC S2/3.</li> <li>j. Maintained situation map with enemy and friendly locations.</li> <li>k. Coordinated indirect fire support, attack helicopter, and CAS with COSCOM/TSC S2/3.</li> <li>l. Coordinated security operations with all subordinate elements.</li> <li>m. Coordinated inspection of camouflage and concealment with base commanders.</li> <li>n. Coordinated movement/repositioning of subordinate units as information becomes available and battalion defense is threatened.</li> <li>o. Coordinated defensive improvements with subordinate elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
p. Coordinated additional support requirements with COSCOM/TSC S2/3.		
* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1348.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH BASE OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** FOOD SERVICE SECTION

**TASK:** PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT (01-4-7708.01-0NRC)  
 FM 4-20.2(FM 10-23) FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The unit is occupying an assembly area. The field-kitchen area has been set up, and rations and water have been drawn. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no health problems associated with poor food preparation or sanitation procedures. Unit morale and health were enhanced because of proper food service support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The food service sergeant plans food service support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified strength of supported units.</li> <li>b. Requested subsistence.</li> <li>c. Prepared personnel work schedules.</li> <li>d. Assigned duties to food service personnel.</li> <li>e. Prepared food production schedule.</li> <li>f. Coordinated distribution of food with supported units.</li> <li>g. Developed NBC decontamination procedures for equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>h. Coordinated defensive duties with company/troop headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The food service sergeant supervises field-kitchen operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored area security.</li> <li>b. Established operational hours.</li> <li>c. Assigned work schedules.</li> <li>d. Monitored equipment operations, maintenance, and safety.</li> <li>e. Coordinated supply requests with the supply section.</li> <li>f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status reports.</li> <li>g. Performed periodic inspections of personnel and equipment.</li> <li>h. Monitored employment of preventive medicine countermeasures.</li> <li>i. Supervised decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>j. Provided field-kitchen status update to the company/troop commander.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +The food service personnel pick up subsistence items.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected vehicle for cleanliness and proper dunnage.</li> <li>b. Inspected subsistence items for condition and quantity.</li> <li>c. Prepared shortages, overages, and unserviceable listing.</li> <li>d. Prepared required documentation.</li> <li>e. Transported subsistence items from Class-I point to the assembly area.</li> <li>f. Reported shortages and overages to supervisor.</li> <li>g. Stored subsistence items.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The food service personnel prepare meals.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected field-kitchen equipment.</li> <li>b. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>c. Prepared menu items according to the production schedule.</li> <li>d. Performed preliminary food-preparation procedures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Employed preventive-medicine countermeasures. f. Prepared food for transport.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Use the following task step when the commander's guidance calls for the use of logistics package.</p> <p>5. +The food service personnel issue Class I to company representative (1SG/supply sergeant). a. Verified head count provided by 1SG/supply sergeant (in case of recent attachments/detachments). b. Issued sanitized serving utensils.</p> <p>6. The food service personnel/unit personnel (depending on method of feeding) serve meals. a. Employed personal-hygiene measures. b. Placed all items on the serving line. c. Ensured that mess gear was sanitized before serving. d. Employed portion control. e. Maintained food at proper temperature. f. Replenished food items. g. Washed packaged or canned food after nuclear, biological, or chemical attack. h. Destroyed opened food after nuclear, biological, or chemical attack. i. Tested water sources after NBC attack.</p> <p>7. The food service personnel maintain equipment. a. Performed before-operations PMCS on assigned equipment. b. Maintained proper temperature of wash and rinse water on wash line. c. Cleaned cooking equipment. d. Sanitized cooking equipment. e. Stored clean equipment to allow air drying. f. Performed during- and after-operations PMCS on assigned equipment.</p> <p>8. The field kitchen personnel perform waste disposal. a. Disposed of liquid waste. b. Transported solid waste to Class-I point. c. Cleaned vehicle before loading rations. d. Sanitized vehicle before loading rations. e. Employed preventive medicine countermeasures.</p> <p>* 9. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** AUTO MAINTENANCE SECTION

**TASK:** PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE (01-4-7723.01-0NRC)  
 (DA Pamphlet 738-750) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP and the administrative and logistics operations center are operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit vehicle and equipment maintenance status met or exceeded DA standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The motor officer directs unit maintenance program.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored implementation of unit maintenance program.</li> <li>b. Monitored unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems.</li> <li>d. Coordinated resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Requested control substitution approval from higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Approved emergency field repairs.</li> <li>g. Prepared material condition status reports.</li> <li>h. Monitored the AOAP.</li> <li>i. Monitored the maintenance quality-control program.</li> <li>j. Monitored the safety program.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Platoon/section leaders supervise operator maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised performance of PMCS.</li> <li>b. Monitored the status of equipment repair parts.</li> <li>c. Inspected vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>d. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the unit maintenance section.</li> <li>e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs from the company commander.</li> <li>f. Monitored the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provided input to the materiel condition status report.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +Unit personnel perform operator maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>b. Performed operator's adjustments according to the appropriate technical manual.</li> <li>c. Notified the supervisor of maintenance problems beyond the operator's capabilities.</li> <li>d. Performed emergency field repairs.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Motor sergeant supervises unit-level maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized unit maintenance personnel.</li> <li>b. Assigned equipment to appropriate maintenance area.</li> <li>c. Ensured tools, personnel, and repair parts are available.</li> <li>d. Supervised battle-damage assessment and repair procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised Class IX requisition procedures.</li> <li>f. Supervised recovery operations.</li> <li>g. Coordinated maintenance status with platoon/section leaders.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
h. Requested controlled substitution approval from the commander. i. Provided unit maintenance status update to the commander.  5. +Maintenance personnel repair organic equipment. a. Inspected equipment. b. Determined level of maintenance. c. Performed corrective actions. d. Performed final inspection of completed work. e. Completed maintenance forms. f. Notified platoon/section upon completion of repairs.  6. Maintenance personnel conduct transactions with maintenance support activity. a. Identified the category of maintenance. b. Corrected all unit-level maintenance deficiencies. c. Prepared required documentation. d. Prepared vehicles for evacuation. e. Evacuated equipment to support maintenance. f. Picked up equipment upon notification. g. Verified completion of repairs.  7. +Maintenance personnel perform maintenance, administrative, and support functions. a. Maintained prescribed load list. b. Requested repair parts for unit equipment. c. Maintained document registers. d. Maintained maintenance control records. e. Maintained publications, tools, and equipment. f. Maintained power generators.  * 8. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-4-1029.01-0NRC	PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION**

**TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (SPO SEC) (01-4-7734)**  
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and ALOC are operational. Combat service support assets are in place and operational. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its staff estimate and recommendations, plans, and orders. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The aviation logistics estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed timeframe. Mission accomplishment was not degraded because of inadequate logistical planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The SPO section conducts mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the aviation maintenance and supply support specified, implied, and essential tasks.</li> <li>b. Identified proposed aviation intermediate maintenance and supply commander's CCIRs.</li> <li>c. Provided input to the commander's proposed restated mission statement.</li> <li>d. Provides the AVIM operations estimate.</li> <li>e. Identified probable aircraft maintenance requirements from restated mission.</li> <li>f. Identified established policies by reviewing the TSOP.</li> <li>g. Identified current information by reviewing maintenance operations workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals.</li> <li>h. Identified maintenance priorities from COSCOM/TSC OPORD.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The SPO section assembles required information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with subordinate units on correct status and capabilities.</li> <li>b. Coordinated priority and projected availability of supply and maintenance with COSCOM/TSC.</li> <li>c. Listed projected maintenance requirements.</li> <li>d. Coordinated personnel strength status with S1.</li> <li>e. Coordinated equipment status with S4.</li> <li>f. Coordinated tactical situation, terrain considerations, and intelligence information with the S2/3.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The SPO section prepares AVIM operations estimate.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Listed the effect of tactical situation, terrain, and intelligence information on aircraft maintenance operations.</li> <li>b. Listed all aircraft maintenance shortcomings and possible solutions.</li> <li>c. Prepared overall aircraft maintenance statement.</li> <li>d. Conducted comparative analysis of each possible course of action.</li> <li>e. Recommended the course of action that best supports the battalion commander's guidance from the aircraft maintenance viewpoint.</li> <li>f. Coordinated tactical aspect of recommended course of action with the S2/3.</li> <li>g. Requested the commander's approval.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The SPO disseminates AVIM operation estimates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided appropriate content of AVIM operations estimate to battalion staff.</li> <li>b. Provided oral/written presentation to commander/XO and staff.</li> <li>c. Immediately updated commander on all critical aircraft maintenance problems.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. +The SPO section develops the COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the aviation maintenance COA and statements by logistic functions and class of supply that will support the corps aviation brigade commander's and CSG commander's concepts for the operation.</li> <li>b. Developed aviation logistic sketches required for each COA.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. +The SPO section develops the COA analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Modified the CSS planning (war-game results).</li> <li>b. Task organized subordinate AMCOs.</li> <li>c. Developed missions for subordinate AMCOs.</li> <li>d. Refined commander's CCIRs.</li> <li>e. Developed RFI.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. +The SPO section approves the COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed COA/concept of support with other battalion staff.</li> <li>b. Provided input to commander's intent and CCIR.</li> <li>c. Provided high-payoff logistic focus by phase of the operation.</li> <li>d. Provided input to warning orders to subordinate AMCOs.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. +The SPO section prepares plans and orders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wrote OPLAN/OPORD paragraph 4—Service Support (AVIM support concept) with help from the S1 and S4.</li> <li>b. Provided input for OPLAN/OPORD paragraph 3d, Tasks To Subordinate Units, and paragraph 3f, Coordinating Instructions.</li> <li>c. Assisted the S1/4 in writing Annex I, Service Support.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. +Performs risk management for the aviation logistics functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C (that is, identify and control hazards associated with night refueling operations at the FARP).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1201.01-ONRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**  
(None)

**ELEMENT:** SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** PLANS AND DIRECTS AVIM BATTALION PRIORITIES (01-4-7735)  
 FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and ALOC are operational. Combat service support assets are in place and operational. The XO has issued preparation guidance and a time limit. The COSCOM/TSC operations orders, status reports, and required documents are available. A maintenance operations estimate is required. This estimate is simultaneously prepared with other estimates and continuously updated. Portions of the intelligence estimate are needed to compute this estimate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander establishes the priorities within the set guidelines.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The SPO section oversees the battalion maintenance priorities.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Responsible for planning, coordinating, and prioritizing operations in the corps area of operations.</li> <li>b. Responsible for advising the battalion commander of AVIM and Class-IX SSA operations.</li> <li>c. Interfaced with companies' PC officer to monitor work-order status using automated (SAMS) and manual reports.</li> <li>d. Evaluated manpower utilization.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The SPO section monitors the AVIM company maintenance, shop, and supply backlog levels.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that support stays at a constant level that supports the operational tempo of the aviation brigade.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with subordinate AVIM unit production-control sections to evaluate work-order backlog and supply-parts status.</li> <li>c. Monitored subordinate units ASL levels.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The SPO section allocates subordinate AVIM company resources: tools, TMDE, maintenance and supply personnel, Class-IX parts (ASL, PLL, and shop and bench stock), and GSE resources based on AVIM company-level workloads and customer-support needs.</li> <li>* 4. +The SPO section interfaces with the CMMC, DMMC, ASBs, aviation corps, and division customers for identification and resolution of aviation maintenance, equipment, and supply parts problems.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications with all supported units.</li> <li>b. Established communications with all higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Established communications with all subordinate AVIM units.</li> <li>d. Established reporting requirements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (See Appendix C).</li> </ul>		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-4-7741	MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (01-4-7736)  
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (TM 1-1500-204-23-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Tactical operations dictate that a company/battalion move is required. The company may or may not move as an integral member of the battalion. (**NOTE:** The tactical situation will dictate whether the battalion moves as a whole or whether the company or companies will conduct the move independently.) AVIM support must be coordinated and planned to continue support to AVUM units, ensuring not to degrade AVUM mission capabilities while the AVIM company/battalion moves. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Coordination and planning of AVIM support to supported AVUM units were conducted in a timely manner. Continued AVIM support to supported AVUM units, during the AVIM company/battalion move, was conducted.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +PC OIC receives the OPORD/FRAGO to move (task number 01-2-0001.01-0NRC, Plan/Organize the Move). PC OIC reviews the movement plan from the S3.</p> <p>2. PC OIC conducts mission analysis (general considerations).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined any AVIM mission changes.</li> <li>b. Determined any customer-support changes.</li> <li>c. Determined supporting division support battalion (aviation support battalion) changes.</li> <li>d. Determined supporting corps support battalion (aviation maintenance battalion) changes.</li> <li>e. Determined theater support command (AVIM company) changes.</li> </ul> <p>3. PC OIC conducts mission analysis (logistical function).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined customer-support changes.</li> <li>b. Determined what workload will require evacuation to sister AVIM unit (if the battalion is not moving as a whole).</li> <li>c. Determined what workload will require evacuation to or between theater/corps/division AVIMs when theater/corps/division AVIM company/battalion moves.</li> <li>d. Determined Class-IX resupply plan for customer AVUMs during the movement of a supporting AMCO.</li> <li>e. Determined Class-III packaged and bulk resupply plan for customer AVUMs during the movement of a supporting AMCO.</li> <li>f. Determined and coordinated attachment AVIM support to AVUMs during an AMCO move.</li> <li>g. Determined Class-II plans for customer AVUMs during the movement of a supporting AMCO.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FOR SUPPORTED AVUM UNITS WHILE AVIM COMPANY/BATTALION MOVES (SPO) (01-4-7737)  
 FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (DA Pamphlet 738-750)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Tactical operations dictate that a company/battalion move is required. The company may or may not move as an integral member of the battalion. (**NOTE:** The tactical situation will dictate whether the battalion moves as a whole or whether the company or companies will conduct the move independently.) AVIM support must be coordinated and planned to continue support to AVUM units, ensuring not to degrade AVUM mission capabilities, while the AVIM company/battalion moves. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Coordination and planning of AVIM support to supported AVUM units were conducted in a timely manner. Continued AVIM support to supported AVUM units, during the AVIM company/battalion move, was conducted.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +SPO officer receives the OPORD/FRAGO to move (task number 01-2-0001.01-0NRC). SPO reviews the movement plan from the S3.</p> <p>2. SPO section conducts mission analysis (general considerations).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined any AVIM mission changes.</li> <li>b. Determined any customer-support changes.</li> <li>c. Determined supporting division support battalion (aviation support battalion) changes.</li> <li>d. Determined supporting corps support battalion (aviation maintenance battalion) changes.</li> <li>e. Determined theater support command (AVIM company) changes.</li> <li>f. Determined automation changes (ULLS-A, SAMS-1, and SARSS-O).</li> </ul> <p>3. SPO section conducts mission analysis (logistical function).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined customer-support changes.</li> <li>b. Determined what workload will require evacuation to sister AVIM unit (if battalion is not moving as a whole).</li> <li>c. Determined what workload will require evacuation to or between theater/corps/division AVIMs when theater/corps/division AVIM company/battalion moves.</li> <li>d. Determined Class-IX resupply plan for customer AVUMs during the movement of a supporting AMCO.</li> <li>e. Determined Class-III bulk resupply plan for customer AVUMs during the movement of a supporting AMCO (DASB SPO only). AMB and separate AMCOs do not work with Class III(B) for customer AVUMs.</li> <li>f. Determined and coordinated attachment of AVIM support to AVUMs during an AMCO move.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7001.01-00CS	PREPARE COMPANY TO MOVE	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** AVIM COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM AVIATION LIFE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT (ALSE) REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY (01-4-7738)  
FM 3-04.508(FM 1-508) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the production-control section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All maintenance is completed, and inspections are performed to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The commander/leader supervises ALSE maintenance operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>b. Monitored internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>c. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures.</li> <li>d. Monitored maintenance of reference-library publications.</li> <li>e. Conducted maintenance operational checks.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with production-control and quality-control sections on status and quality of maintenance being performed.</li> <li>g. Monitored bench stock.</li> <li>h. Monitored request for repair parts/components.</li> <li>i. Forwarded personnel and equipment status.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 2. +ALSE repair section performs life-support equipment maintenance and inspections.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a maintenance request register.</li> <li>b. Maintained a balanced work flow.</li> <li>c. Maintained reference library.</li> <li>d. Maintained organic ALSE equipment.</li> <li>e. Forwarded maintenance status reports to the production-control section.</li> <li>f. Maintained bench stock.</li> <li>g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status.</li> <li>h. Performed required inspections.</li> <li>i. Repaired or replaced equipment components and related systems.</li> <li>j. Provided feedback on internal maintenance control system.</li> <li>k. Requested repair parts or components using automation or manual procedures.</li> <li>l. Stored repair parts or components.</li> <li>m. Stored high-demand and expendable items for company elements.</li> <li>n. Maintained usage, location, and inventory records for repair and tools.</li> <li>o. Maintained special tools, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> <li>p. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment according to applicable publications and safety procedures.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>3. Section soldiers set up an administrative area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured area.</li> <li>b. Established telephone communications with company headquarters.</li> <li>c. Set up equipment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
d. Camouflaged area.		
* 4. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7011.01-00CS	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Provided the AVIM PC section with disposition order for destruction of aircraft (according to TM 750-244-1-5), if required.</li> <li>e. Provided the AVIM PC section with general condition of aircraft (crashed, precautionary landing, partially destroyed, or intact).</li> <li>f. Provided the AVIM PC section with information on the OPFOR situation, security, and nuclear, biological, and chemical considerations.</li> <li>g. Provided the AVIM PC section with designated pickup point if different from unit site.</li> <li>h. Provided the AVIM PC section with designated route of approach.</li> <li>i. Provided the AVIM PC section with radio call sign and frequencies.</li> <li>j. Provided the AVIM PC section with airspace restrictions.</li> <li>k. Provided the AVIM PC section with evacuation and recovery assets.</li> <li>l. Provided the AVIM PC section with ATO missions.</li> <li>m. Provided the AVIM PC section with requirement for fire support, engineer support, ground security, intelligence/aerial and ground surveillance, A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>S, and battlefield coordination through the S3/G3 to minimize possibility of fratricide.</li> <li>n. Provided the AVIM PC section with OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +The AVIM PC section coordinates and assists evacuation and recovery operations with requesting unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Owning unit informed AVIM PC section of designated site recovery officer.</li> <li>b. Receives and confirms unit identification and location of aircraft (eight-digit grid).</li> <li>c. Received and confirmed type of aircraft.</li> <li>d. Received and confirmed general condition of aircraft (crashed, precautionary landing, partially destroyed, or intact).</li> <li>e. Received and confirmed evacuation, recovery, or BDAR for one-time fly-out method.</li> <li>f. Received disposition order for destruction of aircraft (according to TM 750-244-1-5), if required.</li> <li>g. Received and confirmed information on the OPFOR situation, security, and nuclear, biological, and chemical considerations.</li> <li>h. Received and confirmed designated pickup point if different from unit site.</li> <li>i. Received and confirmed designated route of approach.</li> <li>j. Received required work request from owning unit.</li> <li>k. Received supporting documents (that is, completed aircraft evacuation/recovery mission sheet from FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513) and copy of weight-and-balance records).</li> <li>l. Received and confirmed radio call sign and frequencies.</li> </ul> <p>4. The maintenance officer directs evacuation or recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined repair parts, tools, and equipment.</li> <li>b. Determined DART.</li> <li>c. Determined BDAR personnel.</li> <li>d. Determined BDAR measures.</li> <li>e. Determined evacuation, recovery, or BDAR for one-time fly-out method.</li> <li>f. Briefed the BDAR personnel and DART.</li> <li>g. Established security at the recovery site.</li> <li>h. Repaired on site, if tactical situation permits, for one-time fly-out.</li> <li>i. Used BDAR or field-expedient methods if required.</li> <li>j. Recommended course of action to the commander if the aircraft was nonrepairable or could not be recovered.</li> <li>k. Performed destruction of aircraft (according to TM 750-244-1-5), if required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The DART performs BDAR, if METT-TC dictates, for one-time fly-out mission to secure AO.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined DART/BDAR composition and materials.</li> <li>b. Determined appropriate aircraft BDAR technical manual.</li> <li>c. Performed combat damage inspection and assessment techniques.</li> <li>d. Determined BDAR kits.</li> <li>e. Determined AVUM and AVIM allied shop support.</li> <li>f. Assessed aircraft and performed minimum repairs.</li> </ol> <p>6. The DART performs aircraft-recovery missions because an aircraft has experienced a component-failure-induced or combat-damage-induced forced landing on the battlefield, or it is disabled because of an accident.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined DART composition and materials.</li> <li>b. Determined type of recovery kit required and downed aircraft recovery method and assets for transportation.</li> <li>c. Performed combat-damage inspection and assessment techniques.</li> <li>d. Determined aircraft rigging team.</li> <li>e. Performed aircraft rigging with appropriate rigging kit.</li> <li>f. Performed recovery of aircraft by aerial or ground means.</li> </ol> <p>7. Performs aircraft evacuation missions to effect repair, cross-level maintenance workloads, or relieve units of disabled aircraft during tactical moves.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined composition and materials required for aircraft evacuation.</li> <li>b. Determined type of recovery kit required and assets for transportation.</li> <li>c. Determined aircraft rigging team.</li> <li>d. Performed aircraft rigging with appropriate rigging kit.</li> <li>e. Performed evacuation of aircraft by flight or ground means.</li> </ol> <p>8. The maintenance officer supervises BDAR, using specialized aircraft damage-assessment criteria, repair kits, and trained personnel to modify peacetime aircraft maintenance standards to return damaged aircraft to battle as soon as possible.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined BDAR composition and materials.</li> <li>b. Determined appropriate aircraft BDAR technical manual.</li> <li>c. Performed combat-damage inspection and assessment techniques.</li> <li>d. Performed combat-area maintenance serviceability and deferability criteria.</li> <li>e. Performed cannibalization techniques that permit quick, efficient removal of critical components and structures from unrepairable and nonrecoverable aircraft.</li> <li>f. Determined BDAR kits.</li> <li>g. Determined AVUM and AVIM allied shop support.</li> <li>h. Assessed aircraft and performed minimum repairs.</li> </ol> <p>9. Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1020.01-0NRC	COORDINATE DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF AVIM COMPANY MAINTENANCE PRODUCTION (01-4-7741)  
 FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the production control section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All inspections are conducted to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and internal operating procedures. Oil analysis and calibration programs are enforced according to applicable publications.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The AVIM support operations mission concerning quality control is to oversee the total AVIM maintenance effort. This includes direct AVIM maintenance support for corps aviation units and back AVIM support for division units. The SPO OIC and SPO staff have the lead in the military decision-making process and briefings for matters pertaining to AVIM maintenance operations.</p> <p>* 2. +The monitoring responsibilities of the support operations section may include the following maintenance functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored subordinate AVIM company-level shop maintenance production operations.</li> <li>b. Provided maintenance policy guidance to subordinate AVIM companies.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with theater AVIM-level (including depot-level) maintenance or supporting theater agency (theater department of logistics, DOL) for backup theater AVIM and depot support for the corps.</li> <li>d. Ensured the correct application of aircraft quality-control and technical-inspection policies.</li> <li>e. Coordinated for and allocated additional contractor support for aviation maintenance operations in the corps.</li> <li>f. Allocated subordinate AVIM company resources: tool, TMDE, maintenance personnel, Class IX parts, (ASL, PLL, and shop and bench stock) and GSE resources based on AVIM company-level workloads and customer-support needs.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the AVIM battalion S1 on critical maintenance personnel issues that affect the AVIM maintenance operations.</li> <li>h. Advised the AVIM battalion company and S1 on the allocation and distribution of aviation maintenance personnel.</li> <li>i. Advised and provided expertise to subordinate AMCOs' commanders on AVIM-level maintenance training.</li> <li>j. Interfaced with supporting the corps support group SPO and higher HQ CSG SPO, as required, on issues that affect AVIM maintenance operations in the corps AO or area of responsibility.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** MONITOR QUALITY CONTROL OF SUPPLY SUPPORT ACTIVITIES AND DIRECT SUPPORT UNITS (SSA/DSU) OPERATIONS (01-4-7742)  
 FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the production-control section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All inspections are conducted to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and internal operating procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The AVIM aviation support operations' quality-control mission is to oversee the total AVIM logistics effort. The SPO OIC and SPO staff have the lead in the military decision-making process and briefings for matters pertaining to AVIM supply operations.  * 2. +The monitoring responsibilities of the support operations section may include the following by logistic function: a. Monitored subordinate AVIM supply support activity and direct support unit operations. b. Provided supply policy guidance to subordinate AVIM companies. c. Assisted subordinate AVIM companies with establishing Class-IX air accounts (Department of Defense activity address codes) with supporting DS QM supply companies and the corps GS repair parts company. d. Coordinated with supporting corps support battalion SPO to get all subordinate AMCO's DODAACs loaded in the supporting DSUs (DS QM supply company) Class-IX SARSS-O box. e. Interfaced with supporting common sensor boundary SPO and higher HQ CSG SPO, as required, on issues that affect AVIM supply operations in the corps AO or area of responsibility.  * 3. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7012.01-00CS	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS IN AN AVIM COMPANY	ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** MINISTRY TEAM

**TASK:** IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (01-5-1110.01-0NRC)  
 FM 1-05(FM 16-1) FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Religious support programs enhanced unit morale, welfare, and combat effectiveness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The chaplain implements the unit’s religious support program.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the needs of the command.</li> <li>b. Coordinated unit, area, and denominational coverage throughout the battalion/squadron.</li> <li>c. Established ministry objectives for the battalion/squadron and measured the results.</li> <li>d. Prepared a religious support plan for inclusion in the OPORD/FRAGO and supervised its execution.</li> <li>e. Reviewed casualty data.</li> <li>f. Maintained authorized equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The chaplain provides pastoral ministry.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided pastoral care to all members of the battalion/squadron and to collocated elements having no assigned chaplain.</li> <li>b. Ministered to casualties and hospitalized or confined personnel.</li> <li>c. Provided pastoral counseling to members of the command.</li> <li>d. Conducted appropriate memorial ceremonies and worship services to honor the dead and wounded.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The chaplain advises the commander and staff on religious matters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised on religious, moral, morale, ethical, and humanitarian aspects of policies and leadership affected by religion to ensure high standards.</li> <li>b. Advised on specific religious requirements of soldiers.</li> <li>c. Assessed the training that soldiers receive in moral and ethical decision making.</li> <li>d. Established liaison with chaplains of higher and adjacent units and with chaplains of other services and allied nations.</li> <li>e. Advised the commander and staff on the effect of host-country religion on U.S. interests and operations.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided ecclesiastical supplies to subordinate unit-ministry teams.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +The chaplain provides ministerial support in the treatment of battle fatigue.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue.</li> <li>b. Provided care and counseling.</li> <li>c. Provided additional skill training on the initial treatment of battle fatigue.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</li> </ul>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	STP 1-15II-MQS
154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMMAND SECTION

**TASK:** DIRECT THE STAFF (01-1-1002.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)  
FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)  
FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The staff is planning and coordinating combat, CS, and CSS operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All assigned missions were successfully completed according to the commander's intent as a result of complete staff planning and coordination. Subordinate units were allowed adequate time to plan operations because of timely information and coordination by the staff.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The XO directs and supervises the primary and special staffs.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that established staff operating procedures were adhered to and enforced.</li> <li>b. Determined staff priorities and set standards.</li> <li>c. Established time lines.</li> <li>d. Informed the commander and staff of all matters that affected the battalion/squadron.</li> <li>e. Ensured a constant flow of information.</li> <li>f. Coordinated staff estimates and recommendations.</li> <li>g. Developed presentations for the commander.</li> <li>h. Coordinated the development and issuance of plans, orders, and procedures.</li> <li>i. Ensured that required liaison was established and maintained.</li> <li>j. Supervised execution of the military decision-making process.</li> <li>k. Supervised implementation of the commander's guidance and directives.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The XO coordinates the administrative and logistics support of the battalion/squadron.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated personnel management with the S1.</li> <li>b. Coordinated logistics management with the S4.</li> <li>c. Supervised the establishment of the ALOC.</li> <li>d. Supervised the special staff.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The XO supervises risk-management integration across the entire staff according to the responsibilities and standards in Appendix C.</li> </ul>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)

(01-1-1017.01-0NRC)

FM 3-57(FM 41-10)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-07(FM 100-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) stability operations or support operations environment. The staff has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The staff has been briefed on METT-TC considerations, weather, command-and-control relationships, and ROE. Operations may require offensive/defensive operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion/squadron established immediate physical security for personnel and equipment. All personnel received comprehensive briefings on the mission, command relationships, situation/threat, and ROE. Battalion/squadron operations minimized adverse effects on civilian populations and resources.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3, with assistance from the S2, plans for force protection. Prepared and implemented physical security and operational security plans that included measures to minimize vulnerability to terrorism and nonhostile factions.</p> <p>2. +The staff recommends policies and procedures to guide operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the legal mandate, geographic boundaries, and other limitations on both the support/peacekeeping/peace-enforcing force and the belligerent forces, as required.</li> <li>b. Identified pertinent demographic and economic issues.</li> <li>c. Reviewed local customs and laws.</li> <li>d. Observed and analyzed trends in public opinion.</li> <li>e. Sought input from local leaders.</li> <li>f. Planned positive community-relations programs.</li> <li>g. Defined the commander's obligation to civil and military authority.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The staff maximizes interagency, joint, multinational, and local civil coordination and cooperation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified applicable agencies and their missions and areas of responsibility.</li> <li>b. Established contact/liaison with all appropriate agencies.</li> <li>c. S3 coordinated to determine local flight rules and procedures.</li> <li>d. S3 coordinated to obtain interpreters, as necessary, for mission planning and in-flight operations.</li> <li>e. Reviewed and supervised the implementation of ROE.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +The S3 determines and plans the unit mission:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented on the area and its culture and the nature of the situation.</li> <li>b. Planned operations to complement those of government and private agencies.</li> <li>c. Planned operations within the framework of the overall mission, with primary focus on SASO.</li> <li>d. Planned for transition to civilian agencies as soon as feasible.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. +The commander emphasizes civil affairs and information operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that soldiers at all levels understood the consequences of releasing inaccurate, unsubstantiated, or poorly timed information.</li> <li>b. Information released was authoritative and reflected the degree of accuracy known at the time.</li> </ul> <p>6. +The unit conducts support, antiterrorism, counterterrorism, and force-on-force operations, as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accommodated the culture, values, and methods of operations of the other participants.</li> <li>b. Accommodated the political, economic, and social situations, including demographics, of the population.</li> <li>c. Prioritized efforts and allocated resources to achieve the greatest essential support to the largest number of people possible.</li> <li>d. Displayed preparedness (capability to apply force without threatening), consistent with mission constraints, by conducting demanding combined-arms training routinely in the area of operations, as appropriate.</li> <li>e. Used warfighting doctrine, with suitable modification, to accommodate the situation.</li> <li>f. Made quick transition between support, peacekeeping/peace-enforcing operations, and offensive/defensive operations, as required.</li> <li>g. Applied force that was consistent with and adequate for assigned objectives, employing combat power selectively according to assigned missions and prescribed ROE.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM (01-1-1024.01-0NRC)  
 (AR 385-95) (AR 385-10) FM 3-11(FM 3-100)  
 FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no personnel injuries or damage to equipment resulting from poor safety procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The safety officer/noncommissioned officer, in coordination with the S3, monitors and assists in executing the safety program. The program includes the areas of safety and occupational health, risk management, and accident prevention for aviation and ground operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Served as the principal safety and risk-management advisor, trainer, planner, and evaluator for the commander.</li> <li>b. Investigated, reported, and analyzed unit accidents. Identified cause-factor trends and recommended corrective action.</li> <li>c. Monitored execution of safety and risk-management procedures in the readiness and tactical SOP, including the aircraft preaccident crash-rescue plan.</li> <li>d. Evaluated and reported on unit success in meeting the commander's safety goals, objectives, and priority actions.</li> </ul> 2. Provides safety and risk-management training for unit personnel to correct observed shortcomings.		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-1700	Implement the Army Safety Program	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO) (01-1-1028.01-0NRC)  
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) (AR 385-10) (AR 385-95)  
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-11(FM 3-100) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** For the mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available and civilian consideration factors of the pending mission/operation, all hazards not adequately controlled were identified and correctly risk managed according to responsibilities and procedures specified in Appendix C. For the selected course of action, the commander made an informed risk decision that was consistent with the brigade commander’s risk guidance. Mission/operation accomplishment was not degraded by losses from accidents that resulted from inadequate risk management.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The S3 exercises staff coordinating responsibilities for the safety functional area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The ASO performs risk-management tasks.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collected METT-TC information from each staff member about hazards and control measures for each functional area.</li> <li>b. Used collected information to prepare a risk assessment and a controls product (see Figure C-12).</li> <li>c. Coordinated the risk-management product with the staff.</li> <li>d. Provided the risk-management product, with recommendations, to the S3.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The ASO conducts risk-management tasks during and after mission execution.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collected information from each staff member about the effectiveness of the control measures used and any changes needed.</li> <li>b. Recommended to the S3 any changes needed to existing controls or new/additional controls for future missions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. +The ASO performs risk-management tasks after mission execution.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed unit’s risk-management performance during mission planning and execution.</li> <li>b. Prepared a risk-management performance assessment product, with recommendations for improvement, and presented it to the S3 for use during the after-action review (see Figure C-13).</li> <li>c.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1) (01-1-1101.01-0NRC)  
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) (DA Pamphlet 600-67) (DA Pamphlet 600-8-20)  
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-11(FM 3-100) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational, and all staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Personnel service support systems are in effect. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders for the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S1 conducts mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Identified essential tasks to be done.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3.</li> <li>d. Evaluated planning guidance.</li> <li>e. Identified the status of personnel.</li> <li>f. Identified personnel support tasks required for operations, to include strength management, replacement and casualty operations, and services.</li> <li>g. Forecasted personnel requirements.</li> <li>h. Supervised S1 section activities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 prepares the personnel estimate.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the unit strength maintenance posture.</li> <li>b. Identified critical replacement requirements.</li> <li>c. Indicated the number of enemy prisoners of war, non-U. S. augmentation, and civilians possibly available for labor requirements .</li> <li>d. Reported the status of unit health, welfare, and morale; included factors that affected the climate, commitment, and cohesion of the unit.</li> <li>e. Identified deficiencies in personnel services that may have affected operations.</li> <li>f. Analyzed courses of action considering personnel factors.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Compared courses of action to evaluate deficiencies from a personnel aspect.</li> <li>(2) Determined advantages and disadvantages of each course of action.</li> <li>(3) Recommended the best course of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Submitted the personnel estimate to the XO.</li> <li>h. Conducted personnel status briefings, as required.</li> <li>i. Maintained a current personnel estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff elements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +The S1 section prepares plans and orders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the preparation of the service support annex with the S4 and the support organization.</li> <li>b. Developed the personnel portion of the OPORD, to include as a minimum—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Replacement and casualty operations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
(2) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (3) Personnel service support. (4) Health, welfare, and morale activities. * 4. +Performs risk management for the personnel functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C—for example, the identification of critical shortages of specialized personnel that would constitute a hazard to a particular mission.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMMAND SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM) (01-1-1120.01-0NRC)  
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Battalion/squadron planning, coordination, and operations are enhanced as a result of timely assistance and advice from the CSM.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The CSM performs duties and responsibilities that vary according to the commander's specific desires and the unit's type, size, and mission. * 2. +The CSM conducts mission analysis. a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Identified essential tasks to be done and reviewed the concept of operation with the S3. c. Identified support tasks required for the operation. d. Evaluated planning guidance. e. Supervised local security operations, as directed. * 3. +The CSM provides advice and recommendations to the commander and staff in matters pertaining to enlisted personnel preparedness. * 4. +The CSM provides input in the detailed planning of operations that are directly under his control; for example, convoy operations and quartering-party operations. * 5. The CSM monitors and reports on unit performance and progress in support of the mission. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

(None)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2) (01-1-1201.01-0NRC)  
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-11(FM 3-100)  
 FM 2-00.21(FM 34-2-1) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Intelligence support systems are operational. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The intelligence estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared, with no errors, within the prescribed time frame. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate intelligence planning and analysis.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S2 conducts mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3.</li> <li>c. Identified PIR based on the commander's initial guidance.</li> <li>d. Supervised S2 section activities.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S2 section conducts intelligence preparation of the battlefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the brigade/regimental S2's intelligence estimate and intelligence summary.</li> <li>b. Extracted pertinent METT-TC information.</li> <li>c. Furnished information to the staff to assist in planning.</li> <li>d. Consolidated significant aspects of the AO and current enemy situation.</li> <li>e. Prepared templates showing enemy formations and activity.</li> <li>f. Recommended changes to the CCIR.</li> <li>g. Analyzed enemy courses of action.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Compared current enemy dispositions and composition with estimates of courses of action.</li> <li>(2) Validated/updated estimates of the enemy courses of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Evaluated the area of interest considering width, depth, height, and time.</li> <li>i. Developed a terrain analysis of the AO.</li> <li>j. Conducted a weather analysis to determine the effects of the weather on terrain, trafficability, flight, and friendly and enemy operations.</li> <li>k. Conducted a comparative evaluation of threat forces to facilitate threat integration into the planning.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed and maintained threat data relevant to mission, order of battle, friendly capabilities, and higher headquarters' analysis.</li> <li>(2) Developed a doctrinal template.</li> <li>(3) Developed enemy OB or situational templates.</li> </ul> </li> <li>l. Provided event analysis input (matrix or other form).</li> <li>m. Recorded results, together with the S3, in the form of a decision-support template and matrix.</li> <li>n. Ensured that identified decision points, decision lines, and decision events were included in an updated collection plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. +The S2 section prepares the intelligence staff estimate.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained and analyzed information.</li> <li>b. Described the AOs to include weather, terrain, and other characteristics.</li> <li>c. Described the enemy situation.</li> <li>d. Described probable enemy courses of action.</li> <li>e. Created a situational template.</li> <li>f. Described the effects of the AOs and enemy situation on friendly courses of action.</li> <li>g. Compared courses of action to— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluate deficiencies from an intelligence aspect.</li> <li>(2) Analyze advantages and disadvantages.</li> </ol> </li> <li>h. Indicated whether the mission could be supported and that prescribed the course of action could be supported from an intelligence aspect.</li> <li>i. Submitted the intelligence estimate to the XO and briefed, as required.</li> <li>j. Maintained a current intelligence estimate of the situation, together with other staff elements.</li> </ol> <p>* 4. +The S2 section conducts staff coordination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the staff with an overview of the current enemy situation to assist in the staff planning process.</li> <li>b. Provided input to the staff's mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Determined the capability of friendly intelligence assets to support the mission.</li> <li>d. Assisted the tactical operations officer in identifying aircraft survivability measures.</li> </ol> <p>5. +The S2 section prepares the intelligence annex.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the intelligence annex. Included in the annex are— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Summary of the enemy situation.</li> <li>(2) Essential elements of information.</li> <li>(3) Intelligence acquisition tasks.</li> <li>(4) Measures for handling enemy prisoners-of-war documents and material.</li> <li>(5) Counterintelligence.</li> <li>(6) Reports and distribution.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Issued the intelligence annex and accompanying appendixes with overlays.</li> </ol> <p>6. +The S2 section develops the reconnaissance and surveillance plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed R&amp;S plans from the companies/troops.</li> <li>b. Determined the battalion/squadron R&amp;S requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed R&amp;S plans from brigade/regiment.</li> <li>d. Considered fire support, maneuver, engineer augmentation, and command and control.</li> <li>e. Determined limits of responsibility.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the plan with the S3 and higher headquarters.</li> <li>g. Prepared R&amp;S annex for the OPORD.</li> <li>h. Maintained continuous update of the R&amp;S plan.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. +Performed risk management for the intelligence functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C; for example, identification and control of enemy air defense assets in the area of operations.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0307	Perform IEW Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0704	Plan Intelligence Reconnaissance/Surveillance Missions	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3) (01-1-1301.01-0NRC)  
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) (DA Pamphlet 385-1) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)  
 FM 3-11(FM 3-100) FM 3-0(FM 100-5) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame. Subordinate units were allowed two-thirds of the available planning time because of proper planning techniques. The OPORD/FRAGO met all requirements outlined in FM 5-0(101-5). Adequate planning enhanced mission accomplishment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S3 conducts the mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Identified all specified tasks from the higher headquarters’ OPORD/FRAGO.</li> <li>c. Determined implied tasks.</li> <li>d. Identified essential tasks required for operations.</li> <li>e. Coordinated essential tasks with appropriate staff sections.</li> <li>f. Identified friendly vulnerabilities and limitations.</li> <li>g. Restated the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued a warning order to subordinate units.</li> <li>i. Supervised the S3 section.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S3 prepares the operations staff estimate.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the relative combat power.</li> <li>b. Developed friendly courses of action.</li> <li>c. Provided courses of action to other staff sections.</li> <li>d. Analyzed courses of action with other staff sections.</li> <li>e. Determined advantages and disadvantages of each course of action with other staff sections.</li> <li>f. Recommended the most advantageous course of action.</li> <li>g. Recommended the optimum task organization to accomplish the mission based on unit capabilities and the commander’s intent.</li> <li>h. Submitted the operations estimate to the commander or XO.</li> <li>i. Conducted command briefings, as required.</li> <li>j. Maintained a current operations estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff sections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +The S3 section prepares plans and orders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a planning cell within the CP in coordination with the staff.</li> <li>b. Developed the OPORD/FRAGO with supporting annexes, appendixes, and overlays.</li> <li>c. Distributed the OPORD/FRAGO to all pertinent units.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +The S3 executes staff coordinating responsibilities for the safety functional area.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Performed mission risk-management duties in planning, coordinating, and controlling tactical operations according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C. b. Coordinated the implementation of the command safety and occupational health program (according to DA Pamphlet 385-1) to meet the commander's guidance.		

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)

(01-1-1302.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-11(FM 3-100)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The tactical situation dictates movement of the TOC. Units have been deployed tactically and are conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Communication between the TOC and higher and lower headquarters was not disrupted. The C<sup>2</sup> of tactical operations was not disrupted. Tactical information was received, analyzed, and disseminated effectively and continuously.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 establishes the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the staff elements to be represented, based on the situation and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Established procedures to minimize the time required to process information.</li> <li>c. Established procedures to facilitate immediate information exchange between internal and external staff sections.</li> <li>d. Maintained the status of the current situation.</li> <li>e. Prepared and disseminated orders, requests, and reports necessary for current operations.</li> <li>f. Recommended the employment of organic and attached resources.</li> <li>g. Established an internal TOC security plan.</li> <li>h. Began planning for future operations.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S3 section operates the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained communications with higher and lower headquarters throughout the movement and TOC establishment.</li> <li>b. Received and processed required operational reports promptly.</li> <li>c. Prepared situation maps and updated them immediately upon receipt of tactical information.</li> <li>d. Maintained a staff journal.</li> <li>e. Maintained flight records for aircrew members, as required.</li> <li>f. Provided recommendations to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The communications section operates a net control station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Opened and closed the net.</li> <li>b. Used challenge and authentication.</li> <li>c. Controlled entry and departure from the net.</li> <li>d. Monitored the net and corrected errors in operating procedures.</li> <li>e. Imposed and lifted station and net restrictions.</li> <li>f. Controlled a direct net.</li> <li>g. Passed all MIJI reports to the officer in charge as soon as possible.</li> <li>h. Used blind broadcast procedures, when appropriate.</li> <li>i. Used a cryptographic net control device, as appropriate.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The S3 displaces the TOC to support current or planned operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a forward TOC to control immediate operations according to the unit standing operating procedures.</li> <li>b. Moved the TOC to an area where C<sup>2</sup> of ongoing present or planned operations were easily facilitated.</li> <li>c. Established TOC security.</li> <li>d. Maintained communications with all elements.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the displaced TOC was operational before the main TOC displaced.</li> <li>f. Moved the main TOC to the new site and resumed C<sup>2</sup> responsibilities.</li> </ul> * 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
d. Kept the commander apprised of the situation.		
* 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1017.01-0NRC	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

## SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1308.01-0NRC	INTEGRATE BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS INTO THE ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) PLAN	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1060	Extract Data from Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS (01-1-1311.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)
FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	FM 3-04.113(1-113)	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) environment. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. Reports are being received through normal channels. The S3 is developing or has issued an OPORD and/or a FRAGO. Aviation assets are placed under the operational control or in direct support of another headquarters. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Aviation assets were properly integrated and employed as a result of proper coordination. Supported and parent units were kept informed of current and future operations at all times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The LNO receives necessary support before departure to the supported unit.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed by operations, intelligence, and other staff elements concerning—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Current and future operations.</li> <li>(2) Aircraft status.</li> <li>(3) Impending unit moves.</li> <li>(4) Updated maps and overlays.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Provided transportation, supplies, communications, cryptographic equipment, codes, and signal operating instructions.</li> <li>c. Ensured that proper security clearances were in place for the mission.</li> <li>d. Verified courier orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +Liaison personnel coordinate with the supported unit.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ascertained the supported unit’s scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>b. Informed the supported commander or S3 of the status of aviation assets.</li> <li>c. Advised the commander or S3 on the proper missions for and employment of the supporting aviation assets, including limitations and capabilities.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with appropriate staff sections to obtain pertinent information.</li> <li>e. Assisted the S3 with the integration of aviation assets into the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>f. Coordinated aviation and supported unit communications.</li> <li>g. Disseminated pertinent air-defense information to aviation units to include—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Early warning.</li> <li>(2) Friendly air-defense unit locations.</li> <li>(3) Identification, friend or foe/selective identification feature procedures for Army aircraft, to include the location of the IFF/SIF line.</li> <li>(4) Enemy air-defense locations.</li> <li>(5) Minimum-risk routes.</li> <li>(6) Army airspace command and control rules and procedures.</li> <li>(7) Coordinated altitudes.</li> <li>(8) Advised aviation units of high-to-medium altitude air-defense units and their location and frequencies, if applicable.</li> </ol> </li> <li>h. Coordinated current and future operations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Battalion/squadron staff and liaison personnel conduct after-action reviews.</li> </ol>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Debriefed the supported commander or S3 on mission execution and lessons learned. b. Debriefed the parent unit commander or S3 on mission execution and lessons learned.  * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-3012	Extract Critical Information From Joint Airspace Documents	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1022.01-0NRC	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1308.01-0NRC	INTEGRATE BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS INTO THE ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) PLAN	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENTS:** BATTALION  
S1 SECTION

**TASK:** DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN (01-1-1351.01-00CS)  
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) FM 3-91.1(FM 71-1)  
 FM 3-0(FM 100-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The AVIM battalion/company/squadron is conducting stability and support operations in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. An incident or event has occurred that requires media coverage. The unit has received a directive to host the media event and has received the commander's guidance. Higher headquarters has provided public affairs office augmentation for this event. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S1 and civil-operations team have been attached to assist. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All aspects of the media event were addressed because of accurate planning. The event was completed according to the specified timelines. Key personnel were kept aware of all important details.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The commander issues initial guidance and directs the staff to assess the nature and effect of the media event in the following areas:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the effect of the event/incident on the public.</li> <li>b. Determined the public factions most affected by the event/incident.</li> <li>c. Evaluated the effect on unit operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S1 and PAO conduct mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the methods of media coverage, in coordination with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Determined if media personnel would be isolated or allowed to move through the area under escort.</li> <li>c. Verified higher headquarters' clearances.</li> <li>d. Selected tentative locations for the event considering security, weather, accessibility, communications, and power requirements.</li> <li>e. Verified time lines and tie-ins with local events and calendar for effect on host-country sensitivities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The XO directs staff preparation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed and published the itinerary of events and adjusted milestones, as required.</li> <li>b. Established final coordination with key personnel.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all presentations were rehearsed before the event.</li> <li>d. Ensured that all key people were briefed before the event.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked attendance lists.</li> <li>(2) Developed a troubleshooting contact list.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Obtained advance clearances for media personnel.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided a media list to gate guards and military police.</li> <li>(2) Provided instructions on how to handle media personnel who had not received advance clearances.</li> <li>(3) Developed a plan to place PAO representatives at the arrival area to verify credentials and issue badges.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Planned transportation and support requirements.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
g. Provided the commander with progress reports.  4. +The battalion/squadron conducts the media event. a. Registered all media representatives. b. Provided badges and press kits. c. Introduced escorts, if required. d. Ensured that all facets of the event were monitored and all problems were solved quickly and quietly. e. Monitored all presentations.  * 5. +The commander and staff complete follow-up actions. a. Debriefed key personnel. b. Monitored print media, radio, and television coverage. c. Prepared an after-action report.  * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk-management procedures in Appendix C.		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1342.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4) (01-1-1401.01-0NRC)  
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)  
 FM 3-11(FM 3-100) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander’s guidance. The main CP and ALOC are operational. Combat service support assets are in place and operational. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its staff estimate and recommendation, plans, and orders. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The logistics staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame. Mission accomplishment was not degraded as a result of inadequate logistical planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S4 conducts a mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3.</li> <li>c. Determined the logistic situation, to include—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Maintenance.</li> <li>(2) Supply.</li> <li>(3) Services available.</li> <li>(4) Transportation.</li> <li>(5) Labor.</li> <li>(6) Facilities and construction.</li> <li>(7) Civil support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Evaluated planning guidance.</li> <li>e. Directed and supervised S4 section activities.</li> </ul> <p>2. +S4 section determines logistics requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined subordinate unit logistics requirements.</li> <li>b. Submitted logistics requirements to higher headquarters and appropriate organizations.</li> <li>c. Provided guidance for specific requirements not addressed in the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Determined supportability of FARP locations through a review of the S2 trafficability analysis.</li> </ul> <p>3. +S4 section prepares the logistical staff estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed courses of action, to include—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Sufficiency of area of operations.</li> <li>(2) Materiel and services.</li> <li>(3) Advantages and disadvantages.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Indicated whether the mission could be supported from a logistics aspect.</li> <li>c. Recommended which course of action, from a logistic aspect, could be best supported.</li> <li>d. Submitted the logistics estimate to the XO.</li> <li>e. Conducted briefings, as required.</li> <li>f. Maintained a current logistics estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff sections.</li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>* 4. +The S4 prepares plans and orders.</p> <p>a. Developed administrative movement plans, as required.</p> <p>b. Developed the service support annex in coordination with S1. Addressed, as a minimum—</p> <p>(1) Personnel administration.</p> <p>(2) Materiel and services.</p> <p>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(4) Civil-military cooperation.</p> <p>c. Issued the service support annex and accompanying appendixes to include the overlay.</p> <p>* 5. +Performed risk management for the logistics functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C; for example, identify and control hazards associated with night refueling operations at the FARP.</p>		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C <sup>4</sup> ) SYSTEMS PLANNING	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 9. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C)..		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0504	Prepare a Company-Level Operations Order (OPORD)	STP 1-15II-MQS
011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs	STP 1-15II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT (01-2-7039.01-0NRC)  
 FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20) FM 4-02.6(FM 8-10-6) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The company/troop is directed to conduct a hasty displacement when contact with threat forces has been broken. Indirect fire and smoke support will be provided to cover the move. Initial movement preparations have been made. Simulated destruction of supplies, documents, and equipment has been coordinated with the battalion/squadron CP. The battalion commander has authorized simulated emergency burials. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company/troop relocated within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. No serviceable supplies, equipment, or recognizable documents of military value were left behind.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander or first sergeant supervises hasty displacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled soldiers at designated area.</li> <li>b. Briefed troops on the hasty displacement plan.</li> <li>c. Assigned tasks to sections or platoons.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Burial of casualties.</li> <li>(2) Destruction of supplies, equipment, and documents.</li> <li>(3) Load out.</li> <li>(4) Security of the unit during evacuation of the assembly area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Designated vehicles to transport wounded soldiers.</li> <li>e. Coordinated indirect fire and smoke support.</li> <li>f. Briefed stay-behind security force.</li> <li>g. Forwarded SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The company/troop conducts emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed personal effects in bags.</li> <li>b. Attached identification personal-effects tags to remains.</li> <li>c. Forwarded casualty feeder reports and witness statements to S1.</li> <li>d. Buried remains in unmarked, mass grave.</li> <li>e. Placed casualty identification tags on a wire/chain in the same order that the remains were buried.</li> <li>f. Included an index marker that showed the first or the last interred remains and the direction of succession through the gravesite, if identification tags are placed on a closed loop.</li> <li>g. Prepared strip map with grid coordinates and terrain features of the burial site.</li> </ul> <p>3. + The company/troop destroys supplies, equipment, and documents left behind.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed documents according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Destroyed supplies according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>c. Rendered equipment inoperative according to the unit SOP.</li> </ul> <p>4. The company/troop departs the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded equipment according to the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Exited area without confusion and excessive noise.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Assembled at a predesignated area.  5. +Stay-behind security force covers company displacement. a. Occupied fighting positions. b. Engaged threat with all available weapons to delay or disrupt advance. c. Performed disengagement under fire. d. Exited area by available means.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2035.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMMUNICATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (01-4-1352.01-0NRC)

FM 6-02(FM 24-1)

(TC 24-20)

FM 6-02.22(FM 24-22)

FM 6-02.33(FM 24-33)

FM 6-02.35(FM 24-35)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and is deploying or relocating the main CP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All radio nets were established within the specified time frame. Battalion/squadron operations were not compromised as a result of improper radio procedures. No COMSEC violations occurred. All radio and telephone nets were monitored continuously.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The communications section establishes a secure, single-channel, voice and data, tactical satellite communications station. Installed the satellite communications system.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Performed operational checks on the radio transmitter.</li> <li>(2) Loaded uplink and offset frequencies into the radio transmitter.</li> <li>(3) Entered the net using proper radio procedures.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The communications section establishes a secure, single-channel voice radio net (AM).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed the AM radio into operations.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Entered external nets, as required.</li> <li>(2) Conducted secure radio checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Established an AM radio net.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used proper call signs and radio procedures.</li> <li>(2) Used correct challenge and authentication procedures.</li> <li>(3) Used proper control procedures for entry into and exit from the net.</li> <li>(4) Maintained the net diagram.</li> <li>(5) Conducted net calls and monitored acknowledgements.</li> <li>(6) Maintained DA Form 1594 (Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The communications section establishes a single-channel voice radio net (FM).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed the FM radio into operation.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Entered external nets, as required.</li> <li>(2) Conducted secure radio checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Established an FM radio net.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used proper call signs and radio procedures.</li> <li>(2) Used correct challenge and authentication procedures.</li> <li>(3) Used proper control procedures for entry into and exit from the net.</li> <li>(4) Maintained the net diagram.</li> <li>(5) Conducted net calls and monitored acknowledgements.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +The communications section establishes a radio retransmission station.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a site for equipment placement.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected the site that best met the retransmission requirements.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that a covered and concealed position was selected.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that the site provided egress routes.</li> <li>(4) Provided physical security.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Operated a secure retransmission station.  5. +The communications section establishes and operates a tactical telephone network.  6. +The communications section implements electronic protection techniques as required. a. Recognized jamming and interference. b. Used appropriate countermeasures; for example, continued to operate, increased power, rerouted radio traffic, relocated antenna, or changed frequency. c. Notified the supervisor of suspected jamming/interference. d. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference report.  * 7. +The commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-141-1054	Operate SINCGARS Data Device	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1056	Operate the VRC-97 (MSRT)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment	STP 1-15II-MQS
113-587-1064	Prepare SINCGARS (Manpack) for Operation	STP 1-93C1-SM
		STP 1-93P1-SM
113-587-2001	Operate Radio Set AN/PRC-77 or AN/PRC-25	STP 1-93P1-SM
113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)	STP 1-93C1-SM

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP
		ARTEP 1-245-MTP
		ARTEP 1-425-MTP
		ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-114-MTP

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1302.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)	ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0101.01-0NRC	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-0403.01-0NRC	COMPLY WITH ESTABLISHED ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP
01-2-2036.01-0NRC	REPORT INFORMATION	ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ELEMENT:** COMMUNICATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C<sup>4</sup>) SYSTEMS PLANNING (01-4-1414.01-0NRC)  
 FM 6-02(FM 24-1) FM 6-02.7(FM 24-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A properly configured tactical local area network was continuously operated. TACLAN security was not compromised because of improper management and planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The signal officer develops a command, control, communications, and computer support plan that, as a minimum, addresses the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained operational C<sup>4</sup> systems architecture at all times.</li> <li>b. Provided support to C<sup>4</sup> system users.</li> <li>c. Monitored operation of C<sup>4</sup> systems.</li> <li>d. Planned for maintenance, evacuation, and turn-in of C<sup>4</sup> equipment.</li> <li>e. Integrated all C<sup>4</sup> systems and communications systems used by battlefield elements to support unit C<sup>2</sup>.</li> <li>f. Maintained configuration control of all software by ensuring that the software was current, compatible, and standardized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The signal officer integrates C<sup>4</sup> systems operations into OPORDs and unit standing operating procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established C<sup>4</sup> policies and procedures and briefed unit on mission-specific variations.</li> <li>b. Established policies and procedures for coordination and integration between staff-section C<sup>4</sup> systems.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The signal officer provides a C<sup>4</sup> architecture that allows the unit elements to acquire, distribute, and store timely, accurate, and reliable information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned, installed, operated, and maintained LANs.</li> <li>b. Planned, and coordinated with the next-higher echelon signal unit for, interface with wide-area networks.</li> <li>c. Planned configuration of the TACLAN.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The staff sections perform user functions for their C<sup>4</sup> systems.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the installation, operation, and maintenance of their respective C<sup>4</sup> systems and LANs.</li> <li>b. Coordinated LAN interface with the signal officer.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. +The signal officer implements command-and-control protect-network security management measures to maintain effective C<sup>2</sup> by reducing the enemy's potential to influence, degrade, or destroy friendly C<sup>2</sup> systems.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented protect measures to provide system security.</li> <li>b. Implemented detect measures to detect system intrusion and abuse.</li> <li>c. Implemented react measures to report system intrusion, take appropriate actions, and restore system integrity.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
* 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/”NO-GO”							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-500-MTP ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-112-MTP  ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

**ELEMENT:** COMMUNICATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO STATION (FM)  
(01-4-7508.01-00CS)

FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)

FM 6-02.33(FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD and/or a FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational, and staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The retransmission site is operational, as required. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The communications section correctly established an FM radio station and controlled the net. The net was not compromised by improper radio procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The radio operator correctly puts a FM radio set into operation.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Connected all required components to the transmitter/receiver.</li> <li>b. Conducted preoperational checks.</li> <li>c. Entered external nets as required.</li> <li>d. Connected encryption equipment and loaded current key list.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The radio operator enters an FM net.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used correct call signs to establish FM communications.</li> <li>b. Requested permission to enter the net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated, as required, according to unit SOP and current SOI/SSI extracts.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The radio operator prepares the radio set for "secure" operation.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Connected compatible encryption equipment and loaded current key list.</li> <li>b. Made net calls and received acknowledgement from member stations, as required.</li> <li>c. Conducted secure radio check.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The radio operator exits the net.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged, in chronological order, all messages transmitted and received.</li> <li>b. Opened journals at 0001 and closed at 2400 local, unless otherwise specified.</li> <li>c. Maintained journals in historical file.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. Commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).</li> </ol>		

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1060	Extract Data From Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract	STP 1-93P1-SM
113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single Channel (SC)	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-112-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-114-MTP ARTEP 1-245-MTP ARTEP 1-425-MTP ARTEP 1-500-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

(None)

## CHAPTER 6

### EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS

#### 6-1. GENERAL

a. This chapter is a guide for preparing and conducting external evaluations. Major paragraphs detail how to prepare the evaluation, select and train OCs, conduct the evaluation, and conduct the AAR.

b. External evaluations assess the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. Evaluations are for the battalion commander and higher headquarters. Battalion evaluations are administered at the discretion of the chain of command. These evaluations are usually planned, administered, and evaluated at a headquarters two levels higher than the unit being evaluated. For example, the division headquarters evaluates the battalion with input from the brigade headquarters. The unit should modify the evaluation based on METT-TC, contingency plans, and the battalion's METL. The METL, with the T&EOs in Chapter 5, provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation.

#### 6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION

a. **General Preparation Procedures.** To ensure that the evaluation accurately measures the battalion's/company's capabilities, the headquarters administering the evaluation must develop a plan for preparing, administering, evaluating, and reporting examination results. The following procedures are part of evaluation preparation.

(1) The method used to prepare the evaluation depends on the intent of the commander administering the evaluation. If the intent is to determine the unit's ability to execute its wartime mission, the evaluation should mirror the missions required by its contingency plans. If the evaluation is to be a diagnostic tool to help the commander develop future training plans, the emphasis should be on devising an evaluation that allows him to see his unit perform as many tasks or subtasks as possible in the given time, with as little redundancy as possible.

(2) An evaluation developed to evaluate fighting abilities should use, as a starting point, the battalion's wartime contingency plan and possible missions associated with the execution of that plan. The scenarios will reflect contingency plans; however, the preparer of the evaluation should be aware that the nature of the missions being evaluated results in some task redundancy.

(3) In formulating a diagnostic evaluation to help develop future training plans, the initiating headquarters should look at the type of missions that the battalion might have to execute. It should select those with as little task and subtask redundancy as possible. Minimizing redundancy will give the battalion a more comprehensive evaluation.

(4) The battalion evaluation will often combine evaluation of fighting abilities and development of plans and orders. Some missions are selected because of the battalion's wartime contingency mission. Other missions are selected because of the value of the tasks and their contribution to a well-rounded evaluation. After the mission and tasks are identified, they should be arranged in a logical sequence. The sequence is based on the order in which they will occur in the scenario. The selected missions and tasks are then grouped into events. The end of each event represents a break point where the evaluation scenario can be interrupted, if required, for assessment, AARs, or a change in the scenario. After missions and tasks are grouped into events, they are listed on the unit evaluation worksheet (see Figure 6-1). The worksheet serves as the base document for the AAR.

<b>UNIT EVALUATION WORKSHEET</b>						
Unit: _____					Date: _____	
No.	Mission/Task	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

\*If more space is required for remarks, use the reverse side of this form

Page \_\_\_ of \_\_\_

**Figure 6-1. Sample unit evaluation worksheet.**

(5) Preparation includes development of enemy situations, friendly situations, warning orders, FRAGOs, OPORDs, overlays, milestones, and message input to support the scenario. In addition to being a vital requirement for a well-coordinated evaluation, production of these materials and documents provides excellent staff training.

(6) OC organization and OC information packets must be developed. OC AARs and meeting requirements should be considered with the milestone schedule and key events list.

(7) In preparing the evaluation for a battalion, the higher headquarters should ensure that—

- Ample maneuver space is available.
- Supporting forces (OPFOR and CS and CSS elements normally attached to the unit being evaluated) are identified and made available.
- Sufficient ammunition, POL, and spare parts are on hand.

**b. Mission-Essential Task List.** The battalion METL, with the T&EOs in Chapter 5, provides the foundation and focus for external evaluations. It lists the collective tasks that the unit must perform to accomplish its wartime mission. It also is the starting point for developing the evaluation. All mission-essential tasks should be evaluated to assess the battalion's capability to perform its mission. Additional collective tasks from Chapter 5 can be added to complement the mission-essential tasks. Because it is not possible to evaluate every task in this MTP, selective tailoring is required. The list of evaluated tasks can also be modified when the evaluation is used primarily as a diagnostic tool.

**c. Evaluation Scenario Development.** Once evaluation tasks are identified and listed, the evaluating headquarters develops a broad exercise scenario and supporting materials. The scenario (Figure 6-2) approximates the logical sequence in which tasks would usually be performed on the battlefield. It should depict general events and broad time-planning factors so that it can be revised, refined, and expanded. The materials in Chapter 4 of this MTP are valuable in developing the scenario. Development of the scenario requires manpower devoted to planning and scheduling activities. Many of these actions can be done at the same time. Table 6-1 is a suggested format for an evaluation scenario.

(1) The scenario requires developing a variety of supporting materials. The friendly and enemy situations are developed in detail and prepared as intelligence summaries, OPORDs, map overlays, and related documents. These documents are used later during the evaluation. A master event or incident list is prepared. It depicts the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform the mission-essential tasks. Actual event drivers are developed along with the master event list. These event drivers include FRAGOs, messages, OPFOR missions, controller tasks, role-player assignments, and records and reports. Included in this process are determining evaluation requirements and responsibilities and preparing materials that will help OCs conduct the evaluation.

(2) In preparing the master event list, developers must incorporate the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform all mission-essential tasks. Because mission-essential tasks are directly related to the collective tasks in Chapter 5, cues are already identified in the condition statement of each T&EO. The focus must be on structuring the evaluation so that the battalion can perform its mission-essential tasks to the standards specified in this MTP.

(3) Expanding the general scenario by listing the mission-essential tasks is one method of ensuring that most, if not all, mission-essential tasks are included in the evaluation for each phase of the evaluation. Adding an evaluation column to the unit evaluation worksheet produces a chart that summarizes the evaluation of each critical task.

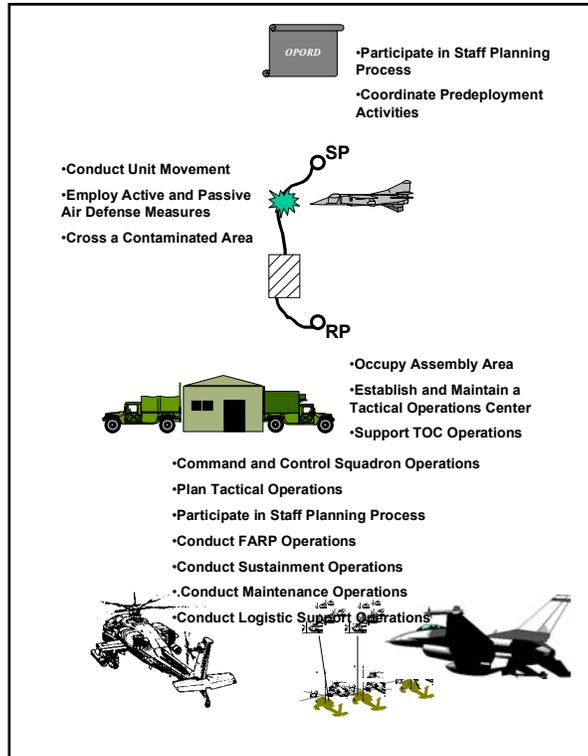


Figure 6-2. Graphic portrayal of scenario.

Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario.

FTX: PERFORM LOGISTICS AND CSS EVALUATION SCENARIO				
SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
1	Administrative preparations are made.	Pre-FTX		
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour	Day 1	
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues warning order to companies.	2 hours		
4*	Battalion prepares for maintenance support movement.	4 hours		
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	2 to 4 hours (Depending on mission complexity)		
6*	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours		
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour		

Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario (continued).

SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
8*	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours		
9*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
10	Main body conducts move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)		
11*	Advance party secures AA and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour		
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
13	Main body continues move to AA.	NA		
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
15	Main body continues move to AA.	NA		
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)		
17*	Battalion/company establishes force-protection measures.	1 hour		
18*	Aircraft arrive on site and conduct arming and refueling as necessary.	0.7 hour (Depends on distance)		
19	Battalion headquarters establishes maintenance operations center.	1 hour		
20*	Companies establish command posts.	1 hour		
21*	Battalion establishes communications with higher HQ (may be simulated).	0.5 hour		
22*	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour		
23	Conduct AAR: company and battalion.	1.5 hours		
24	Battalion/company conducts maintenance operations.	72 hours		
25*	Battalion/company executes STX-1: <i>Conduct Administrative, Personnel, and Logistic Support.</i>	12 hours	Day 2	

**Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario (concluded).**

26*	Battalion/company executes STX-2: <i>Perform Aviation Supply/Repair Parts AVIM and Backup AVUM Support.</i>	12 hours	Day 3	
27	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station.	1 hour	Day 4	
27a	Battalion issues warning order to companies.	1 hour		
28*	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours		
29	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 to 4 hours (Depends on the mission complexity)		
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by battalion.	1 hour		
31*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
32	Main body conducts move.	1.5 hours		
33	Main body closes on and occupies AA Home Station.	3.0 hours.(May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)		
34	Conduct final AAR: companies and battalion.	1.5 hours		
		Total Time: 96 hours		
<p>* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The proposed timing factors in this figure illustrate the process for evaluation development only, and therefore, they do not establish ARTEP standards for execution.</li> <li>• Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</li> <li>• Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event varies based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</li> <li>• AARs are not time-constrained.</li> <li>• Sustainment operations consist of performing personnel and administrative support, unit-level maintenance, unit-level supply, and preventive medicine (field sanitation). These tasks will occur simultaneously and will be observed at different times throughout the exercise. Observations made in these areas should be used as a basis of discussion during the final AAR.</li> </ul>				

**6-3. RESOURCE REQUIREMENTS AND PLANNING CONSIDERATIONS**

Resource requirements and other planning considerations become evident as the evaluation expands and develops. Even in the planning stages, when everything is subject to change, developers must begin scheduling, coordinating, and other planning. Table 6-2 is an example of consolidated support requirements. Requirements and considerations for the evaluation team or other staff agencies that have been designated specific responsibilities include the following:

- Scheduling training areas.
- Preparing a calendar of events and key milestones for the evaluation, including the final AAR and preparation of the AAR.

- Identifying individual and battalion support requirements and tasking applicable agencies, personnel, and units required to perform OC, safety, support, OPFOR, and other functions.
- Requisitioning training ammunition, training aids, other training materials and fuel, rations, and other required supplies.
- Coordinating unit movement and transportation support requirements.
- Identifying equipment requirements and coordinating support.
- Notifying supporting and supported units of the planned evaluation dates and coordinating adjustments, to include personnel and unit support required to perform the unit’s mission during evaluation.
- Scheduling and conducting safety training.
- Scheduling OC training and orientation sessions.
- Identifying and scheduling OPFOR training.

**Table 6-2. Example of consolidated support requirements.**

<b>AMMUNITION</b>	<b>QUANTITY</b>
5.56-mm (blank)	134 rounds/rifleman
7.62-mm (blank)	400/M60 machine guns
Caliber .50 (blank)	200 rounds per M2 machine gun
Hand grenade (practice)	2 per soldier
Hand grenade fuse (practice)	2 per soldier
Simulator, artillery	8 per company/10 per OPFOR
Simulator, booby trap	6 per company/3 per OPFOR
<b>OTHER ITEMS</b>	<b>QUANTITY</b>
Diesel and MOGAS	500 gallons
JP8	10,000 gallons
Batteries—BA 200 (6-volt)	48 each
Batteries—BA 3090 (9-volt)	560 each
Chemlights	4 boxes per company
War Wound Mouflage Kit	1 each
MILES equipment for all weapons and personnel	
MILES controller guns per OC	

**6-4. SELECTING AND TRAINING OBSERVERS-CONTROLLERS**

An accurate evaluation depends heavily on selecting OCs with the proper experience. They must be trained to fulfill their responsibilities and supervised throughout the evaluation. Standard procedures are essential. Such procedures ensure that the evaluation is administered fairly and correctly for all units commanded by the evaluating headquarters.

a. At the battalion level, the number of OCs required varies, depending on the evaluation techniques. If the intent is to conduct a multiechelon, simultaneous evaluation, the number of OCs can be high. The two-echelons-above rule (that is, divisions evaluate battalions; battalions evaluate platoons; companies evaluate sections) allows the number of OCs to be reduced; that is, an OC team composed of the following personnel is the minimum recommended for an external evaluation of a battalion:

- Senior OC: aviation lieutenant colonel.
- Staff OC: aviation major or captain.
- Operations OC: aviation major.
- Administrative OC: MOS 75Z sergeant first class.
- Logistics OC: MOS 76Y sergeant first class.
- NBC OC: MOS 54B sergeant first class.

**b.** OCs must be thoroughly familiar with maintenance support missions, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They need to understand the overall operation of the battalion and how it is integrated into and supports Army operations. Team members must have a comprehensive working knowledge of common individual and collective tasks. These tasks cover such areas as maintenance/supply operations, security operations, force protection, communications, and NBC. At least one member of the evaluation team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local-defense common-task areas. For a primary evaluation, OCs should be of the same or higher grade as the person in charge of the evaluated element. If possible, OCs should have had previous experience in the position being evaluated. All members of the team must assess objectively, function effectively as team members, and articulate their findings orally and in writing.

**c.** OC training focuses on providing OCs a general understanding of the overall evaluation. This training gives each OC a detailed understanding of his specific duties and responsibilities and builds a spirit of teamwork. OC training should include the following areas:

**(1)** The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master event list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives. Each event is designed to evaluate specific critical missions or tasks within the overall scenario. The OCs must know the evaluation thoroughly to ensure that it is implemented correctly.

**(2)** The battalion/company METL and its relationship to T&EOs and other materials in this MTP. The OC must understand the task, the doctrine required to execute the task, the standards, and the methods of measuring mission and task accomplishment. Each OC should receive the battalion TACSOP. The evaluation validates this document.

**(3)** OC team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

**(4)** Detailed duties and responsibilities of individual team members, emphasizing the master event list items for which they will be responsible. Information is included on the evaluation control system. This information ensures that the evaluation is consistent and standardized and that the correct data are collected for the final evaluation.

**(5)** A review of the written instructions and materials contained in the OC folders.

**(6)** A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

**(7)** The OC and C<sup>2</sup> systems, to include a review of the OC organization apparatus. The organization is usually depicted on a flow chart showing evaluation coverage in depth. The C<sup>2</sup> system normally includes a separate radio net and SOI for OCs. The SOI should include call signs and frequencies for the evaluated unit, controllers, and OPFOR as well as for all OCs. OCs should never rely on the organic tactical radio nets of the unit being evaluated.

**(8)** Safety procedures.

**(9)** The evaluation data-collection plan and procedures. The plan states how data are to be reported, collected, consolidated, and briefed. It covers times and locations of OC meetings and when OCs should debrief their counterparts.

**d.** A talk-through of the entire evaluation in which the evaluation team war-games all items of the master event list in chronological order. The team reviews the objective of each event, individual team-member responsibilities, and anticipated problems. OCs should be prepared to ride on aircraft and have necessary flight gear. FARP locations and LZ and PZ locations must be observed. In some cases, OCs may have to ride in designated chase aircraft. This must not interfere with the evaluated battalion.

**e.** The senior OC supervises the operation of the team. He provides team leadership, assuring that evaluation personnel fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan. The senior OC—

- Answers questions concerning the evaluation plan.
- Resolves problems.
- Synchronizes the efforts of team members.
- Ensures close coordination among team members.
- Holds periodic team coordination meetings.
- Plans and orchestrates the battalion AAR.
- Conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

## 6-5. SELECTING AND TRAINING OPPOSING FORCES

Selection and training of the OPFOR are crucial to a standardized evaluation. OPFOR support may be used in only a few tasks; however, proper training and employment of this force assure proper assessment of unit capabilities. OPFOR is one control measure that influences evaluation conditions. While it is impossible to have the same OPFOR unit each time, the better trained that the OPFOR is to a stated standard, the more standard the evaluation. During an external evaluation, OPFOR support should depict the most likely threat force that the battalion will encounter. The force must be augmented with sufficient CS and CSS to accurately portray the expected threat.

**a.** The OPFOR commander should be well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. His grade—from senior NCO to field grade officer—is determined by the size of the OPFOR element that he commands. In addition to leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander is a part-time member of the OC team. Thus, the OPFOR commander must participate in OC planning and training activities. He must also be present during AARs.

**b.** OPFOR elements must be trained, organized, equipped, and maneuvered to depict threat forces as realistically as possible. They must be distinguishable on the battlefield from friendly forces through use of visual modifications. The characteristics of OPFOR weapons—range of weapons, rounds on board, protection, and penetration—should be the same as those of the enemy force being depicted. Aircraft survivability equipment trainers should be employed to the maximum extent possible to simulate the threat's AD capability. Some characteristics can be portrayed using the MILES, while others must be represented by OC interaction. OPFOR training must include—

- Threat tactics.
- OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- Rules of engagement.
- OPFOR tasks and standards for each mission.
- Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- Command and control.
- Safety.
- The evaluation scenario—who does what and when it is done.
- Effect of personnel and equipment shortages in the evaluated unit.

**c. Offensive strength.** The OPFOR should be armed with weapons organic to the force that it is depicting. OPFOR must be able to move rapidly around the battlefield and should be strong enough to offer the evaluated unit a realistic challenge.

**d. Defensive strength.** As in the offense, the OPFOR must have weapons organic to the force being depicted. Attack/defense ratios can be greatly reduced directly proportional to the amount of time available for the OPFOR to prepare the defense. The defense should be challenging; like the offense, the defense also depends on METT-TC.

## 6-6. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION

**a. General.** The senior OC conducts the evaluation. He also oversees support provided by the individuals and elements selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

(1) OCs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit. This chapter covers their selection, training, and duties.

(2) The battalion's/company's next-higher headquarters or a specialized cell drawn from that headquarters should be selected and trained to serve as the control element for the evaluation. This element issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This cell is commonly referred to as the *White Cell*.

(3) All exercise participants and supporting personnel should ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted safely. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must act promptly to correct them and advise superiors of the situation.

**b. Phases of the Evaluation.** The evaluation is divided into three phases: preevaluation, evaluation, and postevaluation.

**(1) Preevaluation phase.**

**(a) Reconnaissance of the evaluation area.** The senior OC and all other OCs must conduct a reconnaissance of the evaluation area. This reconnaissance ensures that all OCs understand the boundaries of the area and the locations of key terrain and objectives.

**(b) Review of OC folders.** Under control of the senior OC, OCs should review their evaluation packets to ensure that they contain all needed administrative and tactical directives. The senior OC must ensure that all OCs understand the directives. He should review the milestone schedule. He answers any questions about the evaluation plan, control plan, or tactical scenario for the evaluated unit.

**(2) Evaluation phase.**

**(a) Controlling the exercise.** Normally, the next-higher headquarters acts as the controlling unit in a battalion evaluation. The *White Cell* issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. Thus, OCs are freed to perform their principal duties of observing, reporting, and recording the actions of the evaluated unit. The higher headquarters may designate a separate control element to accompany the evaluated unit; thus, the OC has maximum flexibility because he does not have to function as both a controller and evaluator.

**(b) OC control.** In the absence of a separate control element or if a problem in the control plan proves detrimental to scenario continuity, the OC must be able to implement the controls required to salvage the operation. If the OC is forced to act, he must guard against overreacting and, thus, disrupting the initiative and momentum of the exercise.

**(c) Ending the event.** The senior OC should end an event when the evaluated unit has completed all tasks and missions in a particular event or when the unit has suffered such extensive casualties or damage that assigned missions or tasks cannot be executed. Coordination with the senior OC ensures that events are stopped and started in a timely fashion. The senior OC may decide that he wants to run several events in sequence before halting the scenario to conduct a critique or gather evaluation data. While this decision is normally made before the exercise begins, adjustments can be made during the operation if coordinated with the control headquarters.

**(d) Guidelines for OCs.** The following are guidelines for observer-controllers:

- Observe critical events based on the milestone schedule, and record any action that might affect performance or mission outcome; be specific; using T&EOs, evaluate events according to the unit evaluation worksheet, current doctrine, and unit SOPs.

- Ensure that the control headquarters is kept abreast of the unit's location and intent; this information enables the headquarters to control OPFOR action according to the desired sequence of events.
- Enforce rules of engagement.
- Enforce safety.

### **(3) Postevaluation phase.**

**(a)** When the exercise ends, the senior OC should assemble his OCs to prepare the final AAR. He should then begin work on the final after-action report. The after-action report is a formal document that the commander uses to develop future training plans. It addresses all combined arms functional tasks performed in the missions executed during the evaluation. The format and content of the after-action report may vary among commands. All after-action reports should have, as a foundation, however, the unit evaluation worksheet (Figure 6-1), annotated with the proper rating criteria as demonstrated during the evaluation. In addition, the AAR conducted at the end of the exercise aids in preparing the written after-action report. This report gives the commander a precise evaluation of his unit's training status and serves as the bridge between evaluation and training. It also eliminates ambiguity resulting from use of generalized strength/weakness statements.

**(b)** Unit evaluation worksheets provide a consolidated roll up of the unit's performance and of the battalion's overall mission rating—"Go" or "No-Go"—for the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The worksheet may vary, depending on the unit's location, contingency plans, and intent of the evaluation. For example, if the evaluation was designed to give an overall diagnostic assessment, the worksheet concentrates on underlying tasks. For an evaluation to test contingency plans, the worksheet focuses on specific missions.

**(c)** To aid in planning future training, the battalion's training status is recorded on the unit proficiency worksheet. The worksheet contains assessments of strong and weak areas noted during training and external evaluations. The battalion commander and S3 use this record of training status to develop and modify long- and short-range training plans to prepare the unit for combat.

## **6-7. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION**

**a.** The senior OC prepares and implements the evaluation scoring system. While the commander makes the final evaluation assessment, the full team participates in the process. The team's report reflects the overall proficiency of the unit in accomplishing its wartime missions.

**b.** The evaluation system is based on assessment of the unit's performance on each mission-essential task and all other collective tasks in the overall evaluation plan. Evaluations use the following steps:

- Step 1: Identify each mission in the evaluation scenario, and prepare a task summary worksheet for each mission (Figure 6-3).
- Step 2: Identify the T&EOs in Chapter 5 that correspond to each mission of the evaluation scenario.
- Step 3: Use T&EO standards to evaluate the battalion's performance of the tasks for each evaluation task.
- Step 4: On the T&EO, record a "Go" for each task step performed to standard and a "No-Go" for each task step not performed to standard.
- Step 5: Record T&EO evaluation information on the task summary worksheet.
- Step 6: Determine the battalion's/company's overall capability to perform the task using the information recorded on each task summary worksheet and the task standard information from the T&EOs: Go—the battalion/company successfully accomplished all critical task and task-step standards; No-Go—the battalion/company did not accomplish the task to task-step standards.

- Step 7: Record T-P-U rating for each mission task on the unit evaluation worksheet (Figure 6-1).

<b>TASK SUMMARY WORKSHEET</b>			
<b>MISSION: Perform Logistics and CSS</b>			
		<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>		
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	Command and Control (C <sup>2</sup> ) Battalion/Squadron Operations		
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	Direct the Staff		
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)		
01-1-1024.01-0NRC	Coordinate the Commander's Safety Program		
01-1-1028.01-0NRC	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)		
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	Perform Strength Management		
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	Conduct Replacement Operations		
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services		
01-1-0062.01-0NRC	Coordinate Predeployment Activities		
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)		
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	Establish Security Measures		
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	Process Information Into Intelligence		
01-1-1014.01-0NRC	Process Noncombatants		
01-1-1031.01-0NRC	Maintain Isolated Personnel Report (ISOPREP) Database		
01-1-1060.01-0NRC	Process Captured Documents and Materiel		
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)		
01-1-1302.01-0NRC	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Operations Center		
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations		
01-1-1306.01-0NRC	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)		
01-1-1311.01-0NRC	Perform Liaison Operations		
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures		
01-1-1017.01-0NRC	Plan and Conduct Stability and Support Operations (SASO)		
01-1-1022.01-0NRC	Coordinate Fire Support		
01-4-7042.01-00CS	Operate Base Cluster Operations Center (BCOC)		

Figure 6-3. Suggested format for a task summary worksheet.

		GO	NO-GO
Task Number	Task Title		
01-1-1351.01-00CS	Develop a Media Plan		
01-1-0034.01-NRC	Coordinate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Defense		
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	Establish Communications		
01-4-1414.01-0NRC	Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computer (C <sup>4</sup> ) Systems Planning		
01-4-7508.01-00CS	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (FM)		
01-1-1401.01-0NRC	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)		
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment		
01-1-1403.01-0NRC	Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status		
01-1-1405.01-0NRC	Plan and Coordinate External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment		
01-1-1406.01-0NRC	Coordinate/Provide Other Logistical Services		
01-1-1023.01-0NRC	Establish and Maintain Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)		
01-1-1107.01-0NRC	Establish and Coordinate Security of Temporary Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW)		
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	Provide Unit Supply Support		
01-5-1110.01-0NRC	Implement the Command Religious Support Program		
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	Perform Unit-Level Maintenance		
01-4-7708.01-0NRC	Provide Food Service Support		
01-4-7734.01-00CS	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (SPO Section)		
01-4-7735.01-00CS	Plan and Direct AVIM Battalion Priorities (SPO Section)		
01-4-7737.01-00CS	Coordinate Maintenance Support for Supported AVUM While AVIM Company/Battalion Moves (SPO Section)		
01-4-7740.01-00CS	Coordinate Aircraft Battlefield Damage Assessment Repair (BDAR)/Recovery Operations (SPO Section)		
01-4-7741.01-00CS	Monitor Efficiency of AVIM Company Maintenance Production (SPO Section)		
01-4-7742.01-00CS	Monitor Quality Control of Supply Support Activities and Direct Support Units (SSA/DSU) Operations (SPO Section)		
01-2-0101.01-0NRC	Occupy an Assembly Area		
01-2-0102.01-0NRC	Secure and Defend Unit Position		
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		
01-2-0702.01-0NRC	Prepare Unit for Deployment		
01-2-0715.01-0NRC	Perform Field Sanitation		
01-2-2035.01-0NRC	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures		

Figure 6-3. Suggested format for a task summary worksheet (continued).

		<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>		
01-2-0715.01-0NRC	Perform Field Sanitation		
01-2-2035.01-0NRC	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures		
01-2-2036.01-0NRC	Report Information		
01-2047.01-0NRC	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures		
01-2-2048.01-0NRC	Conduct Unit Movement		
01-2-2051.01-0NRC	Employ Passive Air Defense Measures		
01-2-2052.01-0NRC	Employ Active Air Defense Measures		
01-2-2054.01-0NRC	Coordinate Unit-Level Supply Operations		
01-2-2064.01-0NRC	Perform Company/Troop Strength Management		
01-2-7000.01-00CS	Plan Company Move		
01-2-7001.01-00CS	Prepare Company to Move		
01-2-7032.01-00CS	Execute Battle Handover		
01-2-7037.01-00CS	Perform Area Damage Control (ADC) Functions		
01-2-7039.01-0NRC	Conduct Hasty Assembly Area Displacement		
01-2-7707.01-00CS	Evacuate Casualties		
01-2-7714.01-0NRC	Submit Casualty Feeder Reports and Witness Statements		
01-2-0013.01-0NRC	Respond to a Chemical/Biological Attack		
01-2-0017.01-0NRC	Respond to a Nuclear Attack		
01-2-0201.01-0NRC	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions		
01-2-0280.01-0NRC	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area		
01-2-0609.01-0NRC	Cross a Chemically/Biologically Contaminated Area		
01-2-0610.01-0NRC	Perform Operational Decontamination		
01-2-0611.01-0NRC	Conduct Thorough Decontamination		
01-2-2160.01-0NRC	Conduct Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear Exchange		
01-4-7008.01-00CS	Set Up Company Headquarters/Command Post		
01-2-0001.01-0NRC	Plan/Organize the Move		
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	Support Tactical Operations Center (TOC) Operations		

**Figure 6-3. Suggested format for a task summary worksheet (continued).**

		GO	NO-GO
Task Number	Task Title		
01-2-7011.01-00CS	Perform Production Control in the Maintenance and Shop Sections in an AVIM Company		
01-2-7012.01-00CS	Maintain Quality Control of Programs and Work Completed by Maintenance and Shop Sections in an AVIM Company		
01-2-7013.01-00CS	Perform Helicopter System Repairs and Inspections in an AVIM Company		
01-2-7014.01-00CS	Perform Helicopter Subsystem Repairs and Inspections in an AVIM Company		
01-3-7015.01-00CS	Perform Avionic and Electrical Repairs and Inspections in an AVIM Company		
01-3-7016.01-00CS	Perform Helicopter Armament Repairs and Inspections in an AVIM Company		
01-2-7017.01-00CS	Perform Aircraft Battle Damage Assessment and Repairs (BDAR)/Recovery Operations in an AVIM Company		
01-3-7020.01-00CS	Provide Repair Parts in an AVIM Company		
01-2-7730.01-00CS	Maintain Helicopters in an AVIM Company		
01-4-7736.01-00CS	Coordinate Maintenance Support for Supported AVUM Units While AVIM Company/Battalion Moves		
01-4-7738.01-00CS	Perform Aviation Life Support Equipment (ALSE) Repairs and Inspections in an AVIM Company		

**Figure 6-3. Suggested format for a task summary worksheet (concluded).**

c. Other locally designed reports, approved by the senior OC and prescribed in the evaluation plan, may be used to collect evaluation information. These reports should assist the team in recording the information about the battalion’s/company’s capability to perform its wartime mission according to established standards. This information also helps the senior OC to determine the unit’s overall final rating. The following reports may be used.

(1) **Unit Data Sheet.** This report records personnel and equipment status information as well as narrative strength and weakness data (Figure 6-4).

(2) **Environmental Data Sheet.** This report records information about weather and terrain conditions during task performance (Figure 6-5).

(3) **Personnel and Equipment Loss Report.** This report records information about battalion personnel and equipment losses in OPFOR engagements (Figure 6-6).

(4) **Other reports.** These cover battlefield operating systems, losses, equipment status, supply status, and weapons effects, as locally prescribed (Figures 6-7 through 6-11).

**6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER-ACTION REVIEW**

a. AARs expand the value of an evaluation. They provide direct feedback to battalion members. AARs involve them in the training diagnosis process as they discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation and why it happened. Participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning. The senior OC is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through after-action phases.

b. The following are key steps in the AAR process.

**(1) After-action review planning.** Planning for AARs is initiated during preparation activities long before the actual evaluation begins. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed later. Qualified OCs are selected and trained. This phase also includes identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

**(2) After-action review preparation.** Preparation for the AAR begins when the actual evaluation starts. In addition to the OCs watching the battalion perform its combat critical tasks, this phase includes a review of training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed, and time lines and attendance requirements are established. AAR information is gathered from OCs and applicable battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

**(3) After-action review conduct.** AARs continue throughout the evaluation. They are conducted at logical break points in the exercise—at the end of each event or mission, at intervals directed by the senior OC, and when the evaluation ends. In a multilevel evaluation, an oral AAR of the action to date occurs at every level between the OC and his counterpart in the evaluated unit. After AAR participants assemble, the senior OC opens the AAR with a statement of purpose. He also establishes the AAR ground rules and procedures and restates the training and evaluation objectives. The following are some guidelines for a successful AAR.

- (a)** AARs are not critiques. They are professional discussions of training events.
- (b)** The senior OC guides the discussion to ensure that participants openly discuss important lessons.
- (c)** Dialogue is encouraged among OCs and unit personnel. Discussion covers not only strengths and weaknesses but also the rationale behind the decisions and actions that resulted in the demonstrated strengths or weaknesses.
- (d)** All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. Every unit or element that participated in the exercise should be represented.
- (e)** Participants discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.
- (f)** Events that were not directly related to the major training objectives are not examined.
- (g)** Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.
- (h)** A unit succeeds or fails because of its performance of a task. Summations by the OC should focus on the demonstrated proficiency of the unit in executing T&EOs.
- (i)** Sequentially, the discussion normally covers what was planned and what happened relative to the doctrine that applies to the action. This discussion will be followed by critiques from the OC and from the OPFOR view.
- (j)** Discussion should focus on training objectives as they relate to the battlefield operating systems.
- (k)** The result should be that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, better understand their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their combat critical tasks.

<b>UNIT DATA SHEET</b>						
1. BATTALION/COMPANY DESIGNATION:					DATE:	
2. UNIT LEADERS (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
BN CDR	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN XO	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN S3	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN MAINT OFFICER	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
HHC CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
A CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
B CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
C CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
D CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
3. BATTALION STRENGTH (excluding leaders):						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (major items):						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
5. COMMENTS:						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
OBSERVER-CONTROLLER'S SIGNATURE _____						

Figure 6-4. Suggested format for a unit data sheet.

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:						
DATE-TIME EXERCISE STARTED:						
DATE-TIME EXERCISE ENDED:						
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Day		Night				
Moon Phase:	None	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	Full	
Average Range of Visibility due to Light:						
4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)						
Flat	Rolling	Mountainous	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Arctic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility due to Terrain:						
5. REMARKS:						

Figure 6-5. Suggested format for an environmental data sheet.



COMMAND AND CONTROL					
OBSERVABLE RESULTS:	BN	HHC	A CO	B CO	C CO
Mission OPORD received at					
Warning order issued at					
OPORD and graphics disseminated (one-third–two-thirds rule)					
Reconnaissance conducted					
Precombat checks					
Rehearsal conducted					
Coordination with adjacent/rearward supporting elements					
Plan refined					
Fire plans made—direct and indirect					
Combat status—number and percentage of operationally ready aircraft/vehicles					
KEY EVENTS:					

Figure 6-7. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: command and control system.

NBC			
OBSERVABLE RESULTS:			
	LOSSES	ELEMENT	REMARKS
Friendly losses to chemical tasks			
	LOSSES	ELEMENT	REMARKS
Friendly losses persistent contamination (after attack)			
	MINUTES	ELEMENT/TYPE	REMARKS
Time after chemical strike mission continues			
KEY EVENTS			

Figure 6-8. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: NBC.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT				
OBSERVABLE RESULTS:				
	HHC	A CO	B CO	C CO
Number/percentage of battalion/company vehicles/elements that ran out of Class III or Class V items				
Number/percentage of damaged vehicles recovered versus not recovered				
KEY EVENTS:				

Figure 6-9. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: combat service support.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (VEHICLE STATUS)						
TYPE OF VEHICLE	BUMPER/TAIL NUMBER	DAMAGED/ DESTROYED/ MAINTENANCE	LOCATION	DATE NON-AVAILABLE	REMARKS	TOTAL DAYS
Combat Vehicles Listed						
Recovery Vehicles Listed						
Supply Vehicles Listed						
Command and Control Vehicles Listed						
KEY EVENTS:						

Figure 6-10. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: CSS—vehicle status.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (REQUISITION STATUS SUPPLY ITEMS)			
UNIT PRIORITIES	03	06	13
HHC			
A CO			
B CO			
C CO			
TOTAL			
REMARKS:			

Figure 6-11. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: CSS—requisition status supply items.

## APPENDIX A

### COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

#### A-1. GENERAL

a. CATS is the Army's overarching training architecture. It contains approved training and doctrinal strategy. The CATS is the framework for total Army structured training for both units and institutions. It functionally groups tasks so that these can be integrated into combined-arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies. These strategies include events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer. The CATS integrates training horizontally among levels of a type of unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team. Aviation CATS includes a crosswalk of individual, crew, and collective METL tasks that requires flying hours. The CATS provides a basis for the preparation of a unit's flying-hour program.

b. Commanders should become familiar with CATS as a tool to determine who—units and individuals—will be trained and when, where, and how collective and individual tasks will be trained. The CATS also helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire required training resources. Within the CATS, there are long- and short-range individual and collective strategies.

(1) Commanders are most concerned with short-range strategies. These are the training plans to attain and sustain the desired level of performance proficiency on each critical warfighting task. They are prescriptive, rather than descriptive, for unit commanders and—

- Identify specifically who and what is trained, when and where training occurs, and how each critical task is trained.
- Identify training media/method/site options.
- Identify initial and sustainment training requirements for individual and unit critical tasks.
- Estimate resource requirements.
- Provide a doctrinally based foundation for a unit's training plan.

(2) Long-range strategies look to the future training requirements of the Army. These strategies describe, in broad terms, how the Army will train its units and soldiers. They may not appear to be an immediate tool to support training; however, commanders and staffs should become familiar with ongoing training-development initiatives. Future training processes, tools, and resources—such as training support packages, distance learning products, and TADSS—are often made available piecemeal and may be useful to the commander who is aware of their availability.

(3) Self-development is the individual's responsibility. Self-development CATS, published as Part 2 of the Career Development Model, provides a guide for individuals to posture themselves for promotion, better job performance, or self-motivated improvement in personal performance. It is available to facilitate leader development.

#### A-2. AVIATION COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

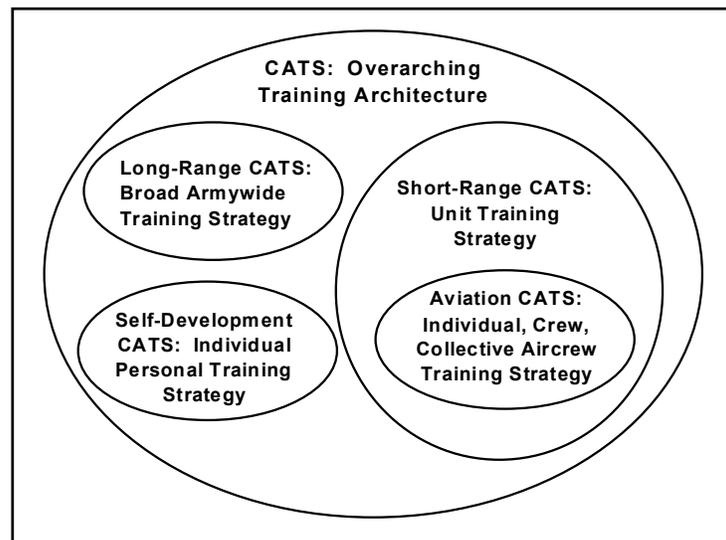
Aviation-training principles do not differ from those of other combat arms' branches; however, developing and maintaining currency and proficiency at the individual, crew, and collective levels require unique considerations. Effective individual and crew training programs form the foundation for an aviation battle-focused training program. These programs produce combat-ready crews. They are the basis for the unit's collective training program.

a. The aviation CATS includes a crosswalk among individual, crew, and collective tasks that require flying hours to determine the OPTEMPO for training and sustaining individual, crew, and collective proficiency.

b. The aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. Thus, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. About 75 percent of individual and crew aviator sustainment training can be done while performing collective tasks. Not all individual and crew training can be done, however, while units are engaged in training a collective task. Some training resources must be allocated to individual and crew training as outlined in the appropriate ATMs.

c. The aviation CATS is crosswalked with the BLTM to ensure adequate OPTEMPO resourcing. The aviation CATS is also crosswalked with the readiness requirements in AR 220-1. TC 1-210 provides guidance on readiness reporting.

d. The aviation CATS is crosswalked with available simulators and simulations to provide guidance on tasks that can be accomplished in these devices. Commanders should set up structured simulation training exercises.



**Figure A-1. Combined Arms Training Strategy.**

e. TC 1-210 and the appropriate ATM contain specific aviation CATS guidance. The aviation CATS is available so that commanders can plan and easily develop a flying-hour program using the associated database.

## APPENDIX B

### EXERCISE OPERATION ORDERS

#### B-1. GENERAL

Exercise scenarios present a general situation. This situation gives participants the background information normally available in a combat situation. Exercise OPORDs issued from a higher headquarters are the primary instruments that provide sufficient detail and guidance. The commander's guidance helps the training unit to prepare OPORDs, annexes, and overlays. Exercise OPORDs also ensure that the training unit takes actions that lead to achieving the training objectives of the exercise. Exercise OPORDs may be identical to standard OPORD formats—see FM 5-0(101-5). Exercise OPORDs may also use peculiarities that facilitate modularity, retraining, administrative conditions, flexibility, and reusability. For example, the dates used in the exercise OPORD may be in terms of training days, rather than actual dates. Figure B-1 shows a suggested format for an aviation brigade exercise OPORD that uses this feature. It portrays the general scenario, including the missions of higher and adjacent units—whether live, virtual, or constructive—and the training that the battalion/company will conduct. The figure also contains an administrative/logistics plan annex.

UNCLASSIFIED	COPY ___ OF 20 COPIES HQ, 7-159 <sup>TH</sup> AVN REGT ILLESHEIM AAF (NV999814) 201200AUG01 OPORD# 01-08-20
<b>OPORD 01-08-20 (VICTORY STRIKE EX II)</b>	
References:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• V Corps, OPORD, VICTORY STRIKE 01 12 SEP – 19 OCT 01, DTG 260900JUN01.</li> <li>• V Corps, Warning Order 1 to VICTORY STRIKE 01.</li> <li>• 7<sup>th</sup> CSG, OPORD #7-35-01, 191800JUL01.</li> <li>• 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment OPORD #00-60 (VICTORY STRIKE 01-00).</li> <li>• 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment, Victory Strike 01-00 Final AAR.</li> <li>• Maps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Scale 1:250,000, Joint Operations Graphic (Air), Series 1501 Air, Sheet NM 33-3 (Wroclaw), Edition 4-GSGS; and Sheet NM 33-2 (Gorlitz), Edition 9-DMG (U).</li> <li>▪ Scale 1:500,000, Tactical Pilotage Chart, Series TPC, Sheet E-2B, Edition 9-GSGS; Sheet E-3A, Edition 6-GSGS; Sheet E-3D, Edition 5-GSGS; and Sheet E-2C, 10-GSGC.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
Task Organization:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HQ, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment.</li> <li>• HHD, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment.</li> <li>• A Co, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment (-).</li> <li>• B Co, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment (-).</li> </ul>	
Time zone used throughout the order: Local (Alpha).	

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order.**

## 1. (U) SITUATION

a. General. V Corps executes VICTORY STRIKE in Drawsko Pomorskie Training Area (DPTA), Nadarzyce Training Area (NTA), and Wederzen Training Area (WTA), Poland from 12 Sep to 19 Oct 01. VS II is the capstone training exercise for the 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and includes participation by the corps deep-operations coordination center, as well as elements from the 12<sup>th</sup> Avn Bde, V Corps Artillery, 205<sup>th</sup> MI Bde, 69<sup>th</sup> ADA Bde, 30<sup>th</sup> Med Bde, 130<sup>th</sup> Eng Bde and 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM. This is the V Corps' capstone force-on-force, live-fire/advanced aviation gunnery exercise, which will set the standard for realistic, challenging, combined-arms, combat-oriented training. This exercise also supports the V Corps' DOCC training. The exercise supports CINCUSEUCOM and CG, USAREUR, strategic objectives for engagement of Poland, a new NATO ally. Through the deployment of the corps to Poland, the exercise affords the opportunity to train in support of the National Military Strategy of shape, prepare, and respond.

b. Area of Operations. Area of operations includes DPTA in north Poland, WTA in the southeast, and NTA in the northwest. The maneuver area located in the center of the training area, as well as the Ziemsko airstrip, will be used for the exercise. The scenario for the exercise is set in Poland with a Northland enemy OPFOR base.

c. Enemy Forces. TBP.

d. (U) Friendly Forces.

(1) (U) Second-level higher.

(a) (U) 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM mission. The 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM ACP, the 7<sup>th</sup> CSG C<sup>2</sup>, and logistical task force, OO, deploys by rail and ground to DPTA, establishes convoy support center operations, and sustains all forces deployed in support of V Corps' Exercise VS II by providing tailored DS supplies, maintenance (aviation intermediate maintenance and ground), ammunition, services, and transportation as well as movement C<sup>2</sup> during the deployment, at the CSC, and throughout execution of training in Poland. OO, safely supports the redeployment of V Corps' units. Maintains seamless customer support in CR.

(b) (U) 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM commander's intent.

**The purpose** of this operation is to support V Corps' annual aviation capstone training by synchronizing and task organizing logistics assets, weighting the main effort, and maintaining the agility to react to unexpected requirements.

**Key Tasks:**

- Deploy selected elements of the 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM to DPTA, Poland, via air, rail, and bus.
- Task organize multifunctional, A/DACG-capable logistics packages under CSBs.
- CSB cdrs will provide the C<sup>2</sup> & synchronize log packages with customers.
- Deploy COSCOM ACP in support of corps rear CP for RSOI.
- Assist ASGs with deployment requirements.
- Provide DART capability.
- Provide CL I, CL III(B), CL V, CL IX, and water support to deployed V Corps units and NATO sustainment requirements for participating Polish forces.
- Establish life-support area in and around the DPTA.
- Provide MHE at deploying locations, to include railheads and APOD.
- Provide movement control, transportation, and C<sup>2</sup> at railheads, APOD, and bus marshalling points.
- Provide drop-zone recovery support to 5<sup>th</sup> QM during Ph II (deployment) of Victory Strike II.
- Provide life support for USAF ground-support personnel supporting Victory Strike II.
- With contracting personnel, identify a certified HN water vendor to provide three DOS of emergency backup water support to the 30<sup>th</sup> Med.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

**End State:** The end state for VS II is the safe deployment and redeployment of all logistical elements while providing seamless logistical support during the exercise. Units have trained to the maximum extent possible without logistical constraints.

(2) (U) Higher.

(a) (U) The 7<sup>th</sup> CSG mission: OA 08 Sep 01, the 7<sup>th</sup> CSG (-) will deploy in support of V Corps Exercise VS II to conduct deployment/redeployment, reception, staging, and onward movement and provide combat service support for all deployed forces.

(b) (U) The 7<sup>th</sup> CSG commander's intent: My intent is to safely deploy and redeploy the 7<sup>th</sup> CSG(-) to provide aggressive, forward and forecasted logistical support to all deployed forces. Success is defined as no serious injuries or death, no loss of sensitive items, and uninterrupted CSS support provided that is a combat multiplier and supports success of the 11<sup>th</sup> AHR. The key tasks of the 7<sup>th</sup> Corps Support Group for VS II are—

- Deploy by ground 7<sup>th</sup> CSG Jump TOC from CR to DPTA to conduct CSC and RSO operations.
- Exercise 181<sup>st</sup> Trans Battalion's Convoy Support Center, AVIM/SSA distribution, and 71<sup>st</sup> CSB's logistic support area productivity in coordination with advanced aviation gunnery tables, artillery maneuver, and live-fire exercises.
- Provide AVIM support to all V Corps aviation assets.
- Provide CL I, Water, CL III (Bulk), CL III (P), CL IV, CL V, and CL IX.
- Provide MHE at deploying locations, to include railheads and APODs.
- Provide movement control, transportation, and C<sup>2</sup> at railheads, APODs, and bus off-load/on-load points.
- Provide drop-zone recovery support to 5<sup>th</sup> QM during Ph II.
- Base cluster cdr responsibilities for JAWORCE, GLEBOKIE, & CYBOWO.
- Receive OPCON 94<sup>th</sup> En Bn (-) NLT 12 Sep 01.
- Develop a movement and RSO plan in coordination with corps G4.
- Provide DART capability in support of deployment and redeployment.
- Develop and coordinate for Class IX support package.
- Establish forward logistics elements at Ziemsko and WTA.
- Coordinate resupply operations by air.
- Establish FSSP.

**End State:** The end state for VS II is the safe deployment and redeployment of all logistical elements while providing seamless logistical support during the exercise. Units have trained to the maximum extent possible without logistical constraints.

e. (U) Attachments and Detachments. None.

2. (U) MISSION.

The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Maintenance Battalion deploys by rail and ground to DPTA, Poland, OA 21 Sep 01, establishes AVIM operations in support of 11<sup>th</sup> AHR Air Gunnery and 12<sup>th</sup> AB operations for V Corps Exercise VS II, 24 Sep-16 Oct 01. OO, supports the redeployment of 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and 12<sup>th</sup> AB aviation units, then redeploys the battalion via rail and ground back to CR.

3. (U) EXECUTION.

a. (U) Commander's Intent.

**Purpose** is to fix and sustain the 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and its attachment of 1-1 Attack Helicopter Squadron; the 12<sup>th</sup> AB, 30<sup>th</sup> Medical Brigade (421<sup>st</sup> MEDEVAC) and 7<sup>th</sup> ATC aviation assets during all phases of the V Corps VS II exercise by providing responsive and flexible AVIM support.

**Our key tasks** are to deploy our AVIM forces in early to Ziemsko Airfield to be operational upon the arrival of V Corps aviation units, assist in building combat power before force-on-force engagement and gunnery operations (key focus is on AH-64s), sustain the aviation brigade and corps MEDEVAC aircraft in all phases of the operation, surge AVIM support before and during the gunnery portion of the exercise, and conduct aircraft maintenance to assist all unit departures from DPTA/NTA back to central region.

**End state** is a successful 11<sup>th</sup> AHR force-on-force and gunnery operation, which culminates with all V Corps aviation assets safely returned to home station, postured and ready for future combat operations.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

b. (U) Bn Training Objectives. The following are the bn training objectives:

- Deploy/redeploy the bn via ground, convoy, and rail.
- Learn internal and external AVIM bn staff relationships.
- Support and augment strat air load of select 11<sup>th</sup> AHR aircraft from Ramstein.
- Demonstrate proficiency in executing the U.S. Army orders process according to FM 5-0(FM 101-5).
- Demonstrate proficiency in establishing and conducting command post operations according to ARTEP 1-947-30-MTP.
- Validate the bn FSOP.
- Demonstrate proficiency in planning, C<sup>4</sup>I and executing AVIM and CSS logistics synchronization for a corps aviation brigade according to ARTEP 1-947-30-MTP.
- Demonstrate proficiency in reacting to a Level-I threat (trained and proficient QRF).
- Prepare combined base-defense plan and emplace crew-served weapons within six hours of arrival.
- Demonstrate proficiency in battle staff planning and execution.
- Demonstrate proficiency in receiving and processing CSS and operational information from subordinate units to higher HQ.
- Demonstrate proficiency in intelligence gathering and processing.
- Demonstrate proficiency in evaluating casualties.
- Demonstrate proficiency in preparing and presenting daily AVIM maintenance updates to the bn cdr.
- Execute the Army's military decision-making process.
- Plan, coordinate, and execute the bn's concept of support for the corps avn bde.
- Validate staff battle drills for planning rear-area reconnaissance and security, reaction to enemy NBC operations, deployment and redeployment of an AVIM company, and cross leveling of aviation CSS support from A and B Co AVIMs.

c. (U) Concept of the Operation. VS II is V Corps' capstone aviation training event. VS II is a five-phase operation.

(1) (U) Phase I (preparation, ongoing—19 Sep 01). The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment staff and subordinate units conduct critical predeployment actions and training. Key actions include attendance at in-progress reviews, ROC drills, and command briefings. This phase also includes initial rail staging, and deployment drills. Key individual and collective training will include rail-load operations, convoy procedures, DART training, staff coordination, force protection, TOCEX, PDP, and precombat inspections.

(2) (U) Phase II (Deployment, 20-24 Sep 01). On 21 Sep 01, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Avn Regt deploys by rail and bus from home stations to DPTA. NET 20 Sep 01, two trains (15 & 16) will arrive at Illesheim railhead. The bn will conduct rail-load operations with B Co elements providing rail team support and C<sup>2</sup> operations loading about 132 pieces of equipment. About 54 deploying super cargoes/drivers will depart with the two trains arriving at the north railhead, Jankowo, Poland, on 22 Sep 01. The remaining 91 personnel (projected) will deploy on four buses with trailers departing Illesheim at 1800 21 Sep 01. Buses will proceed to Beelitz CSC en route to Jaworze, Poland, arriving NLT 0900 22 Sep 01. Elements arriving by bus will be called forward to the north railhead to link up with the bn trains and conduct off-load operations. The bn will convoy to Ziemsko airbase and establish operations. The purpose of this phase is to execute the safe deployment of the bn from home stations to the training area. End state is A Co AVIM operations established, bn TOC and CPs operational, the bn perimeter integrated in the base cluster, and the bn fully prepared to receive corps aircraft and execute Phase III of VS II.

(3) (U) Phase III (Execution, 25 Sep-12 Oct 01). The 11<sup>th</sup> AHR, 12<sup>th</sup> AB, 30<sup>th</sup> Med and subordinate warfighter units self-deploy to DPTA from CR. The bn executes AVIM and CSS sustainment and synchronization operations while supporting the arrival and integration of the all aviation assets. B Co provides DART coverage for all deploying aircraft. A Co conducts DART operations in Poland as required. BPT conduct strat load/off load support at Ramstein (APOD) (23-27 Sep 01) and provide support at Miroslawiec AB (APOE) (24-27 Sep 01) as required. Conduct AVIM support operations to prepare and sustain the 11<sup>th</sup> AHR (and attachments) for intensive force-on-force and day/night live-fire operations 2-13 Oct 01. Support 11<sup>th</sup> AHR jump and regimental attack 8-9 Oct 01. The purpose of this phase is to support corps deep operations culmination training for attack-helicopter elements. End state is successful, safe execution of this culmination exercise with the execution of responsive and flexible AVIM support.

(4) (U) Phase IV (Redeployment, 13-20 Oct 01). The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment supports the redeployment of all theater aviation units from DPTA to home station with final maintenance checks in Poland, sustained DART coverage, and aircraft reception operations. The bn will conduct redeployment and rail-load operations OA 17 Oct 01 (after aircraft have departed). Expect redeployment procedures, rail support, and bus movement to be much the same as deployment (Redeployment time lines and instructions TBP). Expect all bn soldiers and assets to close at Illesheim NLT 20 Oct 01. Upon closure at home stations, the bn conducts closure/recovery tasks to standard—accounting for all personnel, equipment, and sensitive items—and prepare for future operations. Mission support will continue, however, as the bn provides DART coverage from CR until all MEDEVAC aircraft have returned to home station, OA 25 Oct 01.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

(5) (U) Phase V (Recovery, AAR, and Follow-on Mission Preparation, 20 Oct-2 Nov 01). The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment conducts recovery and maintenance operations on organic equipment while supporting the recovery and sustainment of returning aviation elements. The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment HQ and subordinate elements capture lessons learned from VS II and apply to planning and training for follow-on operations. In addition, the bn integrates lessons learned into exercise design for future aviation culmination exercises and future training events in Poland. Organic units will submit lessons learned to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01; format will be issue, discussion, and recommendation.

d. (U) Tasks to Subordinate Units.

(1) (U) Commander, HHD, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment. The commander will—

(a) (U) Perform duties as the bn base-cluster representative at Ziemsko.

(b) (U) Appoint, in writing, an HHD rear det cdr; provide SNL to S3 NLT 7 Sep 01.

(c) (U) Provide SNL of deploying personnel and to the bn S3 NLT 1 Aug 01. Provide finalized deploying personnel roster and weapons SN NLT 7 Sep 01.

(d) (U) Identify all rear-detachment personnel by SNL to the S3 NLT 29 Aug 01.

(e) (U) Conduct rail-load training for all assigned HHD personnel. (Note: Rail-load team must be on orders.)

(f) Conduct rail-load operations at Illesheim OA 20 Sep 01.

(g) (U) Identify officer to serve as HHD rail OIC for train #16.

(h) (U) Provide one rail-load kit for rail-load operations.

(i) (U) Appoint a bn FPNCO and provide SNL to S3 NLT 7 Sep 01.

(j) (U) Assist the CSM in the development, coordination, and implementation of an integrated base-cluster defense plan at Ziemsko AB. Brief the cmd & staff NLT 18 Sep 01.

(k) (U) BPT receive attachment of one SEN team, consisting of six personnel and associated equipment from 414<sup>th</sup> Signal Bn. HHD will be responsible for providing force protection and administrative and logistic support to attached SEN team.

(l) (U) (U) BPT receive the bn OA 18 Oct 01; provide rail-team off-load augmentation from the RD as required.

(m) (U) Conduct unit-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.

(n) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.

(2) (U) Commander, A Company, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment. The commander will—

(a) (U) Operate consolidated PC for AH-64, UH-60, and CH-47 maintenance operations.

(b) (U) Appoint, in writing, a rear det cdr; provide SNL to S3 NLT 4 Sep 01.

(c) (U) Provide SNL of deploying personnel to the bn S3 NLT 1 Aug 01. Provide finalized deploying personnel roster and weapons SN NLT 4 Sep 01.

(d) (U) Identify all rear-detachment personnel by SNL to the S3 NLT 30 Aug 01.

(e) (U) Conduct unit-level rail-load training for all assigned personnel at Illesheim NLT 17 Aug 01. (**NOTE:** Rail-load team must be on orders and provide BMO a copy NLT 7 Sep 01).

(f) ICW B Co and HHD, conduct rail-load operations at Illesheim OA 20 Sep 01.

(g) (U) Identify officer to serve as A Co, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation, rail OIC.

(h) (U) Provide one rail-load kit for rail-load operations.

(i) (U) Ensure that rail-load team deploys to Poland for exercise to facilitate redeployment to home station.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

- (k) (U) BPT receive B Co attachment OA 18 Sep 01. Coordinate with B Co to ensure that adequate tentage, cots, and life-support items are deployed ISO slice.
- (l) (U) ICW SPO, develop rear-detachment aviation maintenance plan and brief the cdr NLT 7 Sep 01.
- (m) (U) Deploy with *all* light sets to conduct FP and night AVIM operations.
- (n) (U) BPT provide MHE support as part of Ziemsko base-cluster operations.
- (o) (U) ICW SPO, establish and operate consolidated CL IX (Air) SSA capabilities.
- (p) (U) BPT provide contact team and armament support during 11<sup>th</sup> AHR operations.
- (q) (U) Deploy with ASL, bench stock, shop stock, and aircraft recovery assets (UMARK, tractors, lowboy trailers) to support DS/AVIM maintenance operations.
- (r) (U) BPT provide AVIM/AVUM support to 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and other V Corps acft throughout deployment/redeployment.
- (s) (U) Conduct AH-64/UH-60/CH-47 recovery training before bn deployment.
- (t) (U) BPT support sling-load operations as required in DPTA AO with SLICC-trained personnel.
- (u) (U) Deploy A Co rail-load team on train #15 to ensure that adequate rail-load personnel are available to off load train upon arrival.
- (v) (U) Have A Co cdr deploy on train #15 to supervise initial establishment at Ziemsko.
- (w) Provide one officer to be bn FP officer and battle captain (to assist in coordination of base-cluster defense and TOC operations); provide SNL to S3 NLT 7 Sep 01.
- (x) (U) BPT support bn reception operations OA 18 Oct 01.
- (y) (U) Conduct unit-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
- (z) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
- (3) (U) Commander, B Company, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment. The commander will—
- (a) (U) BPT support strat air-load operations at Ramstein AB commencing OA 23 Sep to 27 Sep 01. Act as OIC for bn element to receive air-load training/experience and support the load operations of 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and 1-1 Atk AH-64s. Direct coordination is authorized.
- (b) (U) BPT coordinate with the S1 and XO for assumption of command orders for rear-detachment cdr duties.
- (c) (U) Provide SNL of deploying personnel to the bn S3 NLT 1 Aug 01. Provide finalized deploying personnel roster and weapons SN NLT 7 Sep 01.
- (d) (U) (U) ICW SPO, provide A Co a list of deploying CL IX (Air) NLT 7 Sep 01.
- (e) (U) Conduct unit-level rail-load training for pusher teams and deploying soldiers NLT 18 Aug 01. **(NOTE:** Rail-load team must be on orders; provide BMO a copy NLT 7 Sep 01).
- (f) (U) Coordinate with the bn S4 to transport deploying equipment from Giebelstadt to Illenheim NLT 7 Sep 01. Ensure that appropriate march credits and convoy requirements are met.
- (g) (U) BPT provide AVIM/AVUM support to 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and other V Corps' acft throughout deployment/redeployment.
- (h) (U) ICW SPO, coordinate a DART plan and serve as the responsible officer for all DART missions assigned to the rear det.
- (i) Provide bn rail-load task force. ICW A Co, HHD, and S4, conduct rail-load operations at Illenheim (trains 15 & 16) for all deploying bn assets. Identify officer to serve as rail-load OIC. He must ensure that each train OIC/NCOIC departs with a hard-copy list (and disk copy) of personnel, sensitive items, and equipment.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

- (j) (U) Provide one rail-load kit for rail-load operations.
  - (k) (U) Conduct UH-60/CH-47 DART training before bn deployment.
  - (l) (U) ICW SPO, coordinate DART coverage for all deploying acft from central region points of departure along the flight route to the Polish border (and return during redeployment). Brief the bn cdr NLT 7 Sep 01.
  - (m) (U) Deploy CL IX(Air) to support utility acft density and AVIM maintenance.
  - (n) (U) BP with aircraft recovery assets to allow for utility and attack acft recovery operations from CR to the Polish border. Notify SPO ASAP if equipment density does not support this operation.
  - (o) (U) BPT provide pusher unit and AVUM-level support to 12<sup>th</sup> Aviation Bde throughout redeployment.
  - (p) (U) B Co SSA will be the bn's centralized point for the collection of cargo for VS II courier flights; coordinate cargo/parts drop to Kitzigen for Redball express runs NLT 1430 hours daily.
  - (q) (U) Appoint one officer to serve as a liaison between the bn and 12<sup>th</sup> AB for logistics shipments into and out of Poland. Provide SNL to the bn S3 NLT 7 Sep 01.
  - (r) (U) BPT receive bn personnel and equipment and conduct rail off-load operations OA 18 Oct 01.
  - (s) (U) Conduct unit-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
  - (t) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
- (4) Rear-detachment cdr and NCO—TBD.
- e. (U) Tasks to Staff and Special Staff.
- (1) (U) S1. The S1 will—
    - (a) (U) Coordinate PDP for bn at both Illenheim and Giebelstadt.
    - (b) (U) Coordinate FRG deployment briefing for 28 Aug (Illenheim) and 5 Sep (Giebelstadt) 01. Location will be the post chapel or theater.
    - (c) (U) Coordinate postal services with 7<sup>th</sup> CSG for deployed personnel; BPT coordinate mail delivery for deployed personnel.
    - (d) (U) Brief personnel service support operations including, but not limited to, finance (LES receipt, monetary exchange, and TDY costs), mail, personnel accountability, and strength reporting NLT 7 Sep 01.
    - (e) (U) Publish Annex I (Personnel) and Appendix 5 (Medical) to Annex I (Service & Support) NLT 7 Sep 01. Coordinate with 7<sup>th</sup> CSG for planning and preparation for mass-casualty operations.
    - (f) (U) Coordinate slots for deployed bn soldiers to participate in corps G5-sponsored cultural visits in Poland. Brief cmd and staff on these opportunities 4 Sep 01.
    - (g) (U) Serve as staff proponent for bn cmd information and media support plan. Coordinate press releases and cmd information plan with 7<sup>th</sup> CSG PAO. Coordinate bn involvement in media days.
    - (h) (U) ICW S4 and B Co rail-manifest officer, track and report PAX and rail movement for deployment and redeployment. For deployment and redeployment, ensure that train and bus OIC/NCOIC has a hard copy and disk copy of personnel on his rail car or bus.
    - (i) (U) Monitor and report daily personnel status throughout VS II.
    - (j) (U) Coordinate all personnel and finance actions for the bn in theater.
    - (k) (U) Conduct section-level AARs throughout the exercise and redeployment.
    - (l) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

<p>(2) (U) S2. The S2 will—</p> <p>(a) (U) Under the direction of the S3, publish Annex B (Intelligence) and Annex Q (OPSEC) to bn VS II OPORD NLT 7 Sep 01.</p> <p>(b) (U) Consolidate and request through 7<sup>th</sup> CSG all translator requirements.</p> <p>(c) (U) Produce weather products for deployment, execution, and redeployment.</p> <p>(d) (U) Coordinate requisition and distribution of special maps and terrain products. (<b>NOTE:</b> Units will order regular maps through supply channels).</p> <p>(e) (U) BPT brief intel portion of OPORD during bn OPORD brief 30 Aug 01.</p> <p>(f) (U) Provide updated threat and FP assessments for DPTA and surrounding areas, as required. Coordinate intel support to include FP concerns with 7<sup>th</sup> CSG S2 and 12<sup>th</sup> AB S2.</p> <p>(g) (U) Under the direction of the S3, staff proponent for VS II physical security planning and execution; coordinate requirements with the 12<sup>th</sup> AB and 7<sup>th</sup> CSG S2.</p> <p>(h) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 2 Nov 01.</p> <p>(3) (U) S3. The S3 will—</p> <p>(a) (U) Attend all IPRs, ROC drills, VTCs, and coordination/planning meetings for VS II.</p> <p>(b) (U) Serve as collection and processing agent for maneuver damage reports and claims; forward reports to 7<sup>th</sup> CSG.</p> <p>(c) (U) Be staff proponent overall responsible for VS II planning, coordination, and execution. Responsible for IPRs, back briefs, VTC, and all other conferences.</p> <p>(d) (U) ICW the staff, consolidates and staff all requests for external support.</p> <p>(e) (U) ICW S4, coordinate PAX and rail movement for VS II. Submit deployment/redeployment and closure reports according to 7<sup>th</sup> CSG and V Corps' guidance.</p> <p>(f) (U) Staff proponent for base OPORD, Annexes C (Operations), U (CMO), and Y (Distribution) in support of VS II.</p> <p>(g) (U) Develop and coordinate bn site diagram with base cluster and HHQ.</p> <p>(h) (U) ICW SPO, be staff proponent for all external support requests, to include support requirements from 11<sup>th</sup> AHR, 12<sup>th</sup> AB, 30<sup>th</sup> Med. Consolidates and staffs all requests for external support.</p> <p>(i) (U) Be responsible for OPSEC planning and execution in all phases.</p> <p>(j) (U) Be staff proponent for annex/appendix collection and review.</p> <p>(k) (U) ICW S4, coordinate and publish bn redeployment plan.</p> <p>(l) (U) Collect unit-level AAR comments and develop consolidated bn AAR.</p> <p>(m) (U) Capture lessons learned and provide written AAR comments to 7<sup>th</sup> CSG.</p> <p>(n) (U) Incorporate lessons learned and exercise observations to improve and refine bn training guidance.</p> <p>(4) (U) S4. The S4 will—</p> <p>(a) (U) Publish Annex I (Service Support) and necessary appendixes (Transportation, Movements, Supplies, Services and Contracts) to VS II OPORD. Staff proponent for VS II resource management and contracting, Annex G (Resource Management). Publish annexes and appendixes NLT 29 Aug 01.</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

(b) (U) Coordinate CL IV barrier requirements with the company supply personnel, 12<sup>th</sup> AB S4 and 7<sup>th</sup> CSG S4s to ensure adequate concertina wire, posts, and equipment (such as gloves and post pounders) is available to secure the bn perimeter and the consolidated motor park area. Plan for enough CL IV to triple strand the bn and adjacent areas.

(c) (U) Participate in VS II planning, coordination, and IPRs.

(d) (U) Act as lead planner for development of DELs and ensure that DEL lock-in suspenses are met.

(e) (U) During all phases, to include VS II ramp up, monitor all exercise costs and provide cumulative feedback to the bn cdr during updates.

(f) (U) Consolidate a CL III(P) requirements list; ensure 30 DOS deploys with bn.

(g) (U) Coordinate CL I for two bn-size cookouts during VS II.

(h) (U) Coordinate with AVIM companies to ensure refrigerator van and commercial grills are deployed.

(i) (U) Obtain exercise fund cite and constraints.

(j) (U) ICW S3 coordinates PAX and rail movement for deployment.

(k) (U) Monitor and track bn rail-load operations.

(l) (U) ICW S1 and B Co rail manifest officer, track and report PAX and rail movement for deployment.

(m) (U) ICW the S1, provide daily feeder reports to the consolidated mess facility.

(n) (U) Determine fuel requirements by day and submit to 7<sup>th</sup> CSG S4 as required.

(o) (U) Submit daily log status report according to VS II reports TBP.

(p) (U) BPT coordinate border clearances for line haul or DART support vehicles.

(q) (U) Coordinate internal logistical sustainment requirements with 12<sup>th</sup> AB, 71<sup>st</sup> CSB and bn elements.

(r) (U) Coordinate pickup of redeployment rations from consolidated mess facility NLT five days before redeployment.

(s) (U) Develop bn cost estimate for the execution of VS II. Consolidate UFRs, if any, and brief XO before submission to 3<sup>d</sup> CC RM.

(t) (U) Conduct section AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.

(u) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.

(5) (U) S6 commo. The S6 commo will—

(a) (U) Under the direction of the S3, publish Annex H (Signal) for VS II OPORD NLT 29 Aug 01. At a minimum, the bn signal plan will include FM, commercial landline, DSN, MSE, NIPR, SIPR, and VTC plan.

(b) (U) ICW SPO, coordinate all CSSAMO requirements with 7<sup>th</sup> CSG S6.

(c) (U) Coordinate with 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and/or 12<sup>th</sup> AB to obtain airfield frequencies, DSN phone numbers, MSE, and FM frequencies.

(d) (U) Publish exercise communications phonebook NLT 18 Sept 01; update as required upon arrival.

(e) (U) Synchronize bn signal support requirements 7<sup>th</sup> CSG S6. Obtain VS II SOI.

(f) (U) Conduct unit-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.

(g) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

- (6) (U) Support operations. Support operations will—
- (a) (U) Oversee all aviation logistical support at DPTA.
  - (b) (U) Develop AVIM concept of support and brief 11<sup>th</sup> AHR (include 12<sup>th</sup> AB rep) and bn cmd and staff on 28 Aug 01. Include a coordinated DART plan for CR and Poland. Prebrief the cdr before this brief.
  - (c) (U) Coordinate external logistical sustainment and support requirements with 71<sup>st</sup> CSB, 7<sup>th</sup> CSG, and 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM.
  - (d) (U) Scrub deployment-critical CL IX(A) repair components lists NLT 7 Sep 01.
  - (e) (U) Coordinate all CSSAMO requirements through 7<sup>th</sup> CSG G6.
  - (f) (U) Request float SARSS box from 7<sup>th</sup> CSG CSSAMO.
  - (g) (U) Coordinate and establish test flight area vic Ziemsko Airfield ICW 12<sup>th</sup> AB S3 NLT 18 Sep 01.
  - (h) (U) Publish Concept of Support Appendix for VS II NLT 7 Sep 01.
  - (i) (U) When deployed, coordinate all test flights through 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and 12<sup>th</sup> AB.
  - (j) (U) Participate in VS II planning, coordination, and IPRs.
  - (k) (U) (U) Conduct section-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
  - (l) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
  - (m) (U) Coordinate for utility acft support for DART coverage (for both CR and Poland) for the duration of VS II. Consider MEDEVAC deployment dates when coordinating this support.
- (7) (U) Safety Officer.
- (a) (U) Develop exercise aviation preaccident plan.
  - (b) (U) Deploy bn safety officer and NCO ISO operation VS II.
  - (c) (U) Staff proponent for risk management in support of VS II.
  - (d) (U) Publish Appendix 8 to Annex I to OPORD (VS II) NLT 7 Sep 01.
  - (e) (U) Monitor risk and advise cdr on safety throughout all phases of VS II.
  - (f) (U) Monitor bn Fighter Management Program throughout the exercise.
  - (g) (U) Ensure all incident/accident reports are submitted NLT five days after ENDEX.
  - (h) (U) Conduct section-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
  - (i) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
- (8) (U) Chaplain.
- (a) (U) Publish Appendix 1 (Religious Support) to Annex I (Service and Support) NLT 7 Sep 01.
  - (b) (U) Deploy unit ministry team and coordinate bn unit ministry team support during VS II.
  - (c) (U) Conduct section-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
  - (d) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

- (9) (U) Bn motor officer. The bn motor officer will—
    - (a) (U) Conduct bn predeployment rail load training before 31 Aug 01.
    - (b) (U) ICW S4, coordinate and maintain a bn vehicle deployment list.
    - (c) (U) Establish bn motor-pool operations within the consolidated motor park at Ziemsko airfield.
    - (d) (U) BPT establish an LSA for all bn MP personnel to include one GP medium tent within the consolidated motor park.
    - (e) (U) BPT provide personnel to secure the consolidated motor park ICW 12<sup>th</sup> AB.
    - (f) (U) ICW CSM, coordinate consolidated motor park security manning. Produce site diagram NLT 11 Sep 01.
    - (g) (U) Monitor and report daily status of deployed vehicles to the TOC as required.
    - (h) (U) Monitor ground-vehicle status throughout the deployment and report NMC vehicles and maintenance status to the cdr and S4 ASAP.
    - (i) (U) Supervise bn vehicle recovery and maintenance plan for three working days following return from Poland.
    - (j) (U) Conduct section-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
    - (k) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
  - (10) CSM. The CSM will—
    - (a) (U) Assist in coordinating field feeding plan.
    - (b) (U) ICW the BMO, coordinate consolidated airfield motor park security manning plan with the 11<sup>th</sup> AHR and 12<sup>th</sup> AB command sergeants major. Produce site diagram NLT 11 Sep 01.
    - (c) (U) ICW 12<sup>th</sup> AB develop, coordinate and implement an integrated base cluster defense plan at Ziemsko AB. ICW the HHD cdr, brief the cmd and staff NLT 18 Sept 01.
    - (d) (U) Provide staff oversight of redeployment.
    - (e) (U) Develop vehicle redeployment wash-rack plan.
    - (f) (U) Conduct unit-level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment.
    - (g) (U) Submit AAR comments to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
- f. Coordinating Instructions.
- (1) (U) Time line and milestones. See Appendix 1 (Milestones) and Appendix 2 (Exercise Time Line) to Annex C (Operations). TBP.
  - (2) (U) Units and sections will conduct unit level AARs throughout the exercise and upon redeployment. AAR comments will be submitted to the bn S3 NLT 2 Nov 01.
  - (3) (U) Unit must deploy adequate personnel to perform base cluster defense (as part of bn guard force) with minimal degradation to maintenance capability.
  - (4) (U) Cdrs will enforce FP requirements during all phases of VS II. Develop and include antiterrorism/force protection (AT/FP) policies, plans, and procedures for deployed forces.

Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).

(5) (U) Cdrs will ensure the following:

(a) (U) Appoint FP officers down to company level to advise the cdr on FP issues. FP officers must have attended FP Level-II training.

(b) (U) Assigned, attached, and OPCON personnel have received Level-I FP/AT training, as well as an area-specific threat briefing before deployment. FP/AT Level-I training will be conducted by trained personnel at the unit level (2LT Duncan, CW2 Savage, SSG Maloney, or SSG Day). Poland area threat briefing will be conducted by 66<sup>th</sup> MI in Wurzburg, DSN 351-4317. Units will coordinate this briefing with the S3 before scheduling. (Currently, one briefing has been scheduled: 14 Sep 01 at the Illesheim post theater for all deploying soldiers; time TBP).

(c) (U) Ensure constant accountability of personnel and equipment. Lock high-value and sensitive items in a storage facility that includes continuous surveillance by guard force personnel.

(d) (U) Units will deploy with sufficient Class IV to meet FP and physical security requirements. *Physical security requirements are triple-strand concertina wire and pickets around the entire AO.* In addition, unit cdrs will employ supplemental lighting wherever possible. Restrict movement of outsiders in and around the exercise and sensitive areas.

(e) (U) Cdrs will select QRF personnel and appoint them on orders for the duration of VS II. QRF personnel will be trained to respond to Level-I and -II threats according to the ARTEP.

(f) (U) Develop and rehearse procedures to rapidly notify personnel of known or suspected attacks, to include response/evacuation procedures.

(g) (U) Uniform for deployment to VS II is BDUs, Kevlar, LBE, protective mask, and personal weapons. Soldiers will deploy with flak vests, but the decision to wear them will be based upon the FP posture at the time of the exercise. ~~TBD~~— Soldiers will deploy with one set of presentable informal civilian attire for the opportunity to participate in a cultural tour of Poland. T-shirts and tank or tube-top shirts are not considered as presentable informal civilian attire. Shirts must have collars. (Packing list can be found in Appendix 1 (Packing List) to Annex I (Service Support). TBP.

(h) (U) Soldiers will pack for train/bus ride and include sleeping items and personal-hygiene and comfort items.

(i) (U) Initial MOPP level is 0. All bn personnel will deploy with chemical protective garments and equipment. Units will ensure that all personnel deploying have completed mask-fit test and issue of chem protective clothing.

(j) (U) Use of alcohol during the exercise is prohibited.

(k) (U) Units will deploy with adequate dunnage and barrier material to support security and retrograde operations. All containers will use dunnage when spotted in Poland.

(l) (U) All cdrs will BPT provide personnel to participate in possible airfield mass casualty exercise, date TBD.

(m) Ensure that soldiers and family members attend FRG deployment briefing at the Illesheim Post Chapel (28 Aug 01) and Giebelstadt Chapel or theater (5 Sep 01).

(n) (U) Deployed cdrs will appoint a RD cdr in writing for duration of deployment. Individual selected must have attended the RDC course.

(o) (U) Unit cdrs will deploy with camouflage, tents, tent repair kits, cots, and heaters in sufficient quantities to conduct operations.

(p) (U) Unit cdrs will ensure that each train has one set of tow bars for each type of vehicle on the train to facilitate self-recovery of unit vehicles.

(q) (U) Unit cdrs will appoint convoy commanders for each serial on each train. Convoys will not exceed 20 vehicles per ground convoy. Cdrs will ensure that each convoy receives a route briefing before deployment.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

(r) (U) All soldiers will be briefed on speed limits on the MSR according to Appendix 3 (Traffic Circulation and Control) to Annex I (Service Support) TBP. MP will issue tickets to U.S. soldiers speeding on DPTA.

(s) (U) Unit cdrs will conduct a company-level VS II OPORD detailing the mission, threat, requirements, safety and training objectives to their soldiers.

(t) (U) Unit cdrs will conduct a safety briefing before each rail-load operation.

(u) (U) Load ISU-90s on trains end to end (doors facing) to prevent pilferage.

(v) (U) Units and staff sections will order standard tactical maps through supply channels. Submit requests NLT 30 Aug 01.

(w) (U) Cdrs will conduct mission back briefs to the bn cdr 7 Sep 01.

(x) (U) All leaders will use risk management procedures during every phase of the operation to minimize incidents and accidents. Any soldier who observes an unsafe act or condition will be expected to correct it and notify his supervisor. See Appendix 8 (Safety) to Annex I (Service Support). TBP.

#### 4. (U) SERVICE SUPPORT.

##### a. Concept of Support.

(1) General. Logistical support command and control will be coordinated at the bn TOC and ALOC, located at Ziemsko Airfield. Bn LSA functions will be primarily based out of Ziemsko Airfield to include bivouac. All classes of supply, less CL IX (Air), will be provided through the 71<sup>st</sup> CSB or 12<sup>th</sup> AB.

##### (2) Materials and services.

(a) Supplies. Primary logistical support will be from internal assets deployed from home station with the bn. Unit must deploy with three DOS MREs to sustain deployment operations via rail. Redeployment rations will be issued from the FRBP; S4 will coordinate this action for the bn. Class II, IV, or VII resupply will *not* be available in theater. Limited CL III(P), V, VIII, and IX(G) supplies and contracting support will be available upon arrival. Units will deploy with three DOS on hand (UBL). Units will not deploy with basic loads of ammunition. Personnel will deploy with enough personal-hygiene items—Class VI (Personal Demand Items)—for the duration of the exercise.

(b) (U) Services. DPTA Poland has minimal logistical support available. Units are expected to bring sufficient, supplies and equipment to sustain 30 days of operations. Units must deploy with internal combat PLL and unit basic (UBL). For specifics on each class of supply, see Annex I (Service Support). TBP.

(c) (U) Medical Services. See Annex I (Service Support) to OPORD (VS II). TBP.

(d) (U) Personnel Support. See Annex I (Service Support) to OPORD (VS II). TBP.

(3) Maintenance. Units will perform all organizational maintenance on their own systems. Systems requiring DS maintenance will be evacuated from Ziemsko on a case-by-case basis. The bn is responsible for deploying with unit CL IX(G) PLL. DS/GS maintenance support will be provided by 147<sup>th</sup> Maintenance Company's FLE located at Ziemsko Airbase.

##### (4) Support by Phase. See Annex I.

(a) Phase 1 (Preparation). Priority of ground maintenance support during Phase I is to deploy equipment ACO, HHD, then B Co. All personnel will ensure that all equipment is prepared and preinspected before any rail loading. Support for any requirements will be coordinated through bn S4. Any necessary maintenance requirements will be provided through bn motor pools.

(b) Phase 2 (Deployment).

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

(c) Phase 3 (Execution). Priority of ground support will be to avn GSE, generators, A Co vehicles, HHD vehicles, and B Co vehicles.

(d) Phase 4 (Redeployment). Priority of support during Phase III will be the recovery of internal equipment and assets. During recovery, individual units and personnel are responsible for the recovery and repair of unit and individual equipment and ensuring that it is brought to acceptable standards. Any necessary recovery requirements will be coordinated through bn S4 for assistance and execution.

(e) Phase 5 (Recovery, AAR, follow-on exercise preparation).

5. Command and Signal.

a. Command.

(1) (U) Critical C<sup>2</sup> nodes: The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment headquarters will be located at Ziemsko Airbase vic WV476259; 7<sup>th</sup> CSG CSSOC will be established vic of Jaworce, Poland. The 11<sup>th</sup> AHR aircraft and attachments will be located at Ziemsko airfield (WV 476259).

(2) COL Chambers, cdr, 7<sup>th</sup> CSG, will be located at the 7<sup>th</sup> CSG CSSOC.

(3) LTC Russell, cdr, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Avn Regt will be located at the bn TOC vic WV476259.

(4) Succession of command is bn cdr, XO, S3, and the B Co cdr.

b. Signal.

(1) (U) 7-159<sup>th</sup> Avn Regt concept of signal support, Annex H (Signal), TBP.

(2) (U) Standard military services (MSE, DSN, SIPRNET, NIPRNET, and VTC) will be provided by 22<sup>d</sup> Signal Bde. Multichannel tactical satellite, augmented by commercial data circuits, will provide connectivity to the Defense Information Services Network nodes in Germany. Expect DSN service to be limited to the EXCON HQ area. Expect international commercial phone services to be available in the bn TOC and A Co production control. Local commercial services will be free of charge; all international calls will billed to V Corps. Units will closely monitor usage of international access.

(3) (U) Before use, units must coordinate with the bn S3 for commercial cell-phone issue and utilization.

(4) (U) The standard V Corps' SOI will not apply for VS II. V Corps G6 will publish a VS SOI with approved frequencies See Annex H (TBP).

ACKNOWLEDGE

RUSSELL  
LTC

OFFICIAL

HIRSCHINGER  
S3

Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).

## ANNEXES:

- A. TASK ORGANIZATION (Not Used)
- B. INTELLIGENCE (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 1. CLIMATOLOGY (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 2. FORCE PROTECTION (TBP)
- C. OPERATIONS (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 1. MILESTONES
  - APPENDIX 2. TIME LINE
  - APPENDIX 3. VICTORY STRIKE I & II COMPARISON
  - APPENDIX 4. AOR MAPS
  - APPENDIX 5. GRID COORDINATES (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 6. AIRFIELD DIAGRAM (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 7. OPERATIONS OVERLAY (TBP)
- D. FIRE SUPPORT (Not Used)
- E. MASTER EVENTS LIST (Not Used)
- F. ENGINEER (Not Used)
- G. RESOURCE MANAGEMENT (TBP)
- H. SIGNAL (TBP)
- I. SERVICE SUPPORT (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 1 PACKING LIST
  - APPENDIX 2 SERVICE SUPPORT OVERLAY (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 3 TRAFFIC CIRCULATION AND CONTROL (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 4 DEPLOYING EQUIPMENT LIST (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 5 MORTUARY AFFAIRS (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 6 LOGSTAR (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 7 PERSONNEL (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 8 SAFETY (RISK ASSESSMENT) (TBP)
  - APPENDIX 9 RELIGIOUS SUPPORT (TBP)
- J. NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS (TBP)
- K. PROVOST MARSHALL (TBP)
- L. RSO CONCEPT (TBP)
- M. DEEP OPERATIONS (Not Used)
- N. REAR OPERATIONS (Not Used)
- O. AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (Not Used)
- P. COMMAND AND CONTROL WARFARE (Not Used)
- Q. OPERATIONS SECURITY (TBP)
- R. JOINT VISITORS BUREAU PROCEDURES (Not Used)
- S. DECEPTION (Not Used)
- T. ELECTRONIC WARFARE (Not Used)
- U. CIVIL-MILITARY OPERATIONS (TBP)
- V. PUBLIC AFFAIRS (TBP)
- W. SPECIAL OPERATIONS (Not Used)
- X. REPORTS (TBP)
- Y. DISTRIBUTION

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

## UNCLASSIFIED

ANNEX I (SERVICE SUPPORT) TO 7-159<sup>th</sup> AVN REGT OPORD 60-00  
(VICTORY STRIKE 01-00)

ADMINISTRATIVE/LOGISTICS PLAN NO 60-00

References: See BASE ORDER

Time Zone Used Throughout the Plan: Local

1. SITUATION.

- a. Enemy Forces—see base order.
- b. Friendly Forces—see base order.
- c. Attachments and Detachments—see base order.

2. MISSION.

The 7<sup>th</sup>-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment provides AVIM operations in support of the 11<sup>th</sup> AHR aerial gunnery and 12<sup>th</sup> Avn Bde mission support during Exercise "VICTORY STRIKE" on or about 8 Oct 00 in the vicinity of Ziemsko, Poland. OO, the 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment provides CSS support during the redeployment of units.

3. GENERAL.

Support of CSS mission for exercise "VICTORY STRIKE" will be accomplished through overall control and administration from higher agencies and personnel located in the Central Region.

4. MATERIAL AND SERVICES.

a. Supply.

(1) Class I. The 240<sup>th</sup> QM Class I section will operate the 71<sup>st</sup> CSB field ration break point at Konotop. Units will deploy with three DOS MREs and draw an additional six DOS MREs upon arrival at DPTA from on-hand stocks at 71<sup>st</sup> CSB CL I FRBP located at Konotop. MRE rations will be used to support assigned personnel after A rations cease on 22 Oct 00. Dining facility manager (11<sup>th</sup> AHR/SFC Mayhood) will be responsible for picking up rations from the FRBP. Ration cycle is as follows.

(a) Meal cycle:

- Deployment from home station until 7 Oct: M—M—M.
- 8-9 Oct: UGR HS—M—UGR HS.
- 10-22 Oct: UGR A—M—UGR A.
- 23-26 Oct: M—M—M and one Jimmy Dean sack lunch travel ration per soldier.

(b) Units will deploy with sufficient bottled water for three DOS. Bottled water will be contracted and provided from 5-8 Oct and again from 22-26 Oct. Between those periods, 240<sup>th</sup> QM water team will provide purified water using two 3kW ROWPUs at Konotop Log Base and one 3,000-gallon SMFT at Ziemsko Airfield for area support supply point distribution.

(c) Individual units are responsible for bringing certified M-149 water trailers to the supply point distribution center. Preventive medicine will conduct testing 48 hours before ROWPU operation to ensure potability of water.

(2) Class II. Individual units will deploy with required tents, tent repair kits, and cots to sustain themselves during the exercise. Units will deploy with adequate administrative supplies. OCIE DX will be accomplished through unit supply personnel. If required, option will exist to conduct emergency procurement using V Corps' attached USACCE contracting officer. The V Corps G4 will approve all local procurements. Contracted items or local procurement items must be turned in at the end of the exercise.

(3) Class III. Unit vehicles will deploy by rail with fuel tanks three-fourths full. Units will deploy with 21 DOS Class III (P) POL. Emergency resupply requisitions will be processed through normal supply channels. The 515<sup>th</sup> POL Supply Company will provide line-haul resupply of Class III(B) from Central Region to DPTA. The 240<sup>th</sup> QM will provide area of support and throughput distribution at Ziemsko Airbase. MOGAS distribution is via supply point distribution at Konotop Log Base. Units will deploy with enough internal HEMTT or TPU assets to sustain daily operations.

(4) Class IV. Units will deploy with sufficient Class IV to secure company CPs and unit areas. All battalion TOCs and equipment will be located within the battalion area. Units will bring enough concertina wire to secure a ½-mile area with double-strand concertina. Emergency resupply requisitions will be processed through normal supply channels.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

(5) Class V. No CL V will be drawn during this operation.

(6) Class VI. Units will deploy with enough personal-demand and personal-hygiene items to sustain them throughout the duration of the deployment. Health and comfort packages are not available because of the limited length of the exercise. V Corps has contracted AAFES to provide two Class-VI trailers at Konotop.

(7) Class VII. No resupply of major end items is available during the exercise. Units will deploy all required major end items. Any shortage Class VII requirements will be managed through unit supply sergeants to S4.

(8) Class VIII. Units will restock CLS bags through internal requisitions before deployment. Units will deploy with sufficient Class-VIII material to sustain CLS operations for the duration of the deployment. The 30<sup>th</sup> Med Bde slice will establish and operate a 15-bed aid station vicinity Konotop Log Base. On 8 Oct 00, the 30<sup>th</sup> Med Bde established MEDEVAC in vicinity Ziemsko Airfield. Veterinarian services will provide oversight and inspection of water and MKTs.

(9) Class IX.

(a) Ground. Units will deploy with unit CL IX (G) PLL to support ground-maintenance operations. All replenishment actions will be accomplished through unit ground-maintenance personnel in coordination with the 147<sup>th</sup> MNT SSA. The 147<sup>th</sup> MNT will have primary MST responsibility at the airfield to troubleshoot and fix forward minor deficiencies. Units are responsible for evacuating their own equipment to primary DS maintenance facility vicinity Konotop.

(b) Air. A Company, SSA will accomplish all CL IX (A) replenishment actions. Commander, 7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment, has AVIM responsibility at the airfield to troubleshoot and repair all AVIM aircraft repairs. Units are responsible for evacuating aircraft to the AVIM facility, vicinity (WV48452538) Ziemsko Airfield.

b. Transportation.

(1) Land. See Annex I, Appendix 2 (Movements).

(2) Air. Any air transport of Class IX equipment during deployment should be coordinated through B Co/7-159<sup>th</sup> Aviation Regiment SSA. Limited rotary-wing assets are available through 12<sup>th</sup> Aviation Brigade. All aerial transportation requests must be submitted to the battalion S3 for coordination.

c. Services.

(1) Construction. Units are responsible for procuring and transporting enough materials to conduct all required construction operations.

(2) Graves registration. MA support will be provided by Landstuhl regional medical facility through a mortuary affairs team on station at Konotop Log Base. MA includes one 33M30 soldier and one 33M20 soldier and one refrigerator van.

(a) Unit commanders will comply with procedures outlined herein to ensure proper handling of deceased personnel and their personal effects.

- All personal effects of KIA personnel will be inventoried by at least two personnel (one E6 or higher and one E5 and below) within five days of death.
- Personal effects will be forwarded to next of kin not later than five days after completion of inventory.
- Commanders will ensure that no personal effects that are bloodstained or that could be embarrassing will be forwarded to next of kin.
- Ceremonies for deceased personnel left behind on a unit move will consist of a brief ceremony by the battalion chaplain or unit commander; personnel in the unit will be encouraged to attend.
- If it becomes necessary to leave the body of a deceased person because of the tactical situation, the grid coordinates and any distinguishing land features identifying the exact location of the body will be reported to the battalion headquarters; the service member's identification tags will be secured in the individual's mouth in such a way as to preclude loss of the tags.
- Isolated burials and mass burials are not authorized without the consent of the 3<sup>d</sup> COSCOM commander.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

(3) Field Services. Bath and laundry services will be contracted from the host nation:

- Limited shower facilities will be available at Konotop Log Base.
- Laundry will pick up on 10, 14, and 18 Oct and deliver to same pickup point on 12, 16, and 20 Oct.
- Soldiers should deploy with 10 DOS uniforms and clothing to sustain the duration of operations.

(4) Health Services.

(a) Medical. Combat lifesavers will be the unit-level primary care provider. The 30<sup>th</sup> Med Bde (-) will establish and operate a 15-bed medical facility, vicinity Konotop. OO, 8 Oct 00, MEDEVAC will be established at Ziemsko Airfield.

(b) Veterinary Service/Preventive Medicine. Veterinary services will provide oversight and inspection of water and MKTs.

d. Maintenance.

(1) Air. All aviation maintenance issues will be coordinated through battalion support operations.

(2) Ground. Each unit will be responsible for operator-level maintenance and recovery of assigned vehicles. The 147<sup>th</sup> Maintenance Company will have an FLE located in the vicinity of Ziemsko Airbase to provide DS support as required. Unit maintenance NCOs will determine maintenance priorities based on the battalion commander's guidance.

#### 5. MEDICAL EVACUATION AND HOSPITALIZATION.

a. Evacuation. Any personnel sustaining injuries requiring treatment beyond the capabilities of the on-site combat lifesaver will be evacuated by ambulance or MEDEVAC aircraft to the 15-bed medical treatment facility operated by the 30<sup>th</sup> Med Bde (-), vicinity Konotop. Those personnel requiring additional treatment will be evacuated via MEDEVAC aircraft to the Landstuhl Regional Medical Facility in the vicinity of Ramstein, Germany, for additional treatment.

b. Hospitalization. Any personnel who sustain moderate to severe injuries will be transported to the 15-bed medical treatment facility operated by the 30<sup>th</sup> Med Bde (-), vicinity Konotop. MEDEVAC aircraft will evacuate those personnel requiring additional treatment to the Landstuhl Regional Medical Facility in vicinity of Ramstein, Germany, for additional treatment.

#### 6. PERSONNEL.

a. Maintenance of Unit Strength: Strength reports—units will report their personnel situation daily, time TBD.

b. Personnel Management.

(1) Military personnel.

(a) Initial casualty feeder reports. DA Forms 1156 and 1155 will be forwarded through the 71<sup>st</sup> CSB S1 to the COSCOM G1. The 71<sup>st</sup> CSB S1 will retain the second copy of the report.

(b) Unit feeder report. The 71<sup>st</sup> CSB S1 will consolidate all reports on a unit feeder report and will maintain a unit casualty log. Unit feeder reports will include the following:

- Control number.
- Name.
- Grade.
- SSN.
- Status (for example, KIA or MIA).

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued).**

Unit feeder reports will be assigned control numbers in a single consecutive series for each calendar year. Control numbers will consist of the last two digits of the year in numerical sequence; for example, 93-1, then 93-2, and so on. The S1 will prepare an endorsement showing the LTF control number and total number of unit feeder reports attached by unit. Feeder reports will be submitted, as required, to the S1.

(2) Civilian personnel. Civilian labor will be contracted for use as additional workers in the consolidated dining facilities as well as supplemental labor involved with locally contracted services.

(3) EPWs and civilian internees/detainees. Commanders have a legal obligation under the Geneva Convention to provide minimum human care, to establish law and order, and to protect EPWs. Basic human care consists of water, food, shelter, security, and medical attention.

(a) Procedures.

- Units should immediately search, segregate, and secure EPWs in their company areas; units should then contact the TOC for further handling instructions.
- Units should provide medical supplies to EPWs to treat minor wounds; nonwalking wounded or sick EPWs should be evacuated to receive medical attention.
- If immediate transportation is not available, units should provide or improvise shelter to protect EPWs from the elements.
- Units should provide water and, if required, food for all EPWs.
- The S1 will report the number of EPWs to be transported, housed, and fed and needing medical attention to the COSCOM G1.

(b) Reports: Contact the TOC with EPW information.

(c) Development and Maintenance of Morale.

- Unit morale support activities officers will be appointed to coordinate and furnish the maximum MSA support consistent with the military situation and the availability of supplies and equipment.
- The company chain of command is responsible for organizing amusement activities. The following are available:
  - A&R kit.
  - Paperback book library.
  - Other items such as craft materials and musical instruments.
- The 7-159<sup>th</sup> Avn Regt chaplain provides chaplain support; religious services will be scheduled and announced by the S1. See Appendix 8 (Religious Support) to Annex I (Service Support).

(d) Miscellaneous. The following are part of the miscellaneous procedures:

- Finance Support. Limited finance support for contracting services will be provided; personnel finance support will not be provided because of the short duration of the exercise.
- Postal Operations. Postal operations will be provided during exercise; mail will be collected/delivered to the exercise location.

7. CIVIL-MILITARY COOPERATION (See Annex U—CMO).

8. MISCELLANEOUS. Units are responsible for providing their own force protection and perimeter security. See Appendix 2 (Force Protection) to Annex B (Intelligence).

9. COMMAND AND SIGNAL (See base OPORD).

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (concluded).**

## B-2. TAILORING ORDERS

Subsequent higher headquarters' OPORDs/FRAGOs are developed to portray various factors that affect mission difficulty. Thus, the commander/exercise director can tailor the exercise to the unit's level of proficiency using the *crawl-walk-run* training philosophy covered in Chapter 4. For example, as portrayed in the upper half of Figure B-2, based on his assessment of the unit, the commander/exercise director used the *crawl* version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. Based on the unit's performance, next was the *walk* version of the Mission 2 FRAGO, and then the *run* version of the Mission 3 FRAGO. In the lower half of Figure B-2, the commander/exercise director also began with the *crawl* version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. However, based on the unit's performance and the commander's/exercise director's judgment, the unit repeated Mission 1 but this time was issued the *walk* version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. These are just two of the many possible options/combinations.



Figure B-2. Tailoring orders.

## APPENDIX C

### RISK MANAGEMENT

#### C-1. BACKGROUND

Risk management is the process of identifying and controlling hazards to protect the force. It is the Army's principal risk-reduction process. The intuitive management of risk in conducting military training and operations is old. Its systematic application, as part of Army doctrine, however, is relatively new. This appendix summarizes how-to-do-it information based on FM 5-0(FM 101-5) and FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14). **NOTE:** Key risk management terms are defined at the end of this appendix.

#### C-2. APPLICATION

Risk management is applied to reduce the risk of the full range of METT-TC hazards, including enemy action. Figure C-1 shows how risk management is integrated into the MDMP.

*Military Decision-Making Process	Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls and Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise and Evaluate
1. Receipt of Mission	X				
2. Mission Analysis	X	X			
3. COA Development	X	X	X		
4. COA Analysis (War Game)	X	X	X		
5. COA Comparison			X		
6. COA Approval			X		
7. Orders Production				X	
8. Rehearsal					
9. Execution and Assessment	X	X	X	X	X

\* FM 5-0 (FM 101-5)

Figure C-1. Example of risk management integrated into the military decision-making process.

#### C-3. RESPONSIBILITIES

**a. General Responsibilities at Battalion/Squadron and Higher.** Every staff officer must integrate risk management into planning and executing training and operational missions. Staff officers assist the commander in minimizing unnecessary risk by increasing certainty in all operations. He uses the risk-management process to assess his functional area. He also uses it to make control-measure recommendations to reduce or eliminate risk to support the combat power dynamic of force protection. Examples of this process include the following:

- Applying risk management during the MDMP to identify force-protection shortcomings in BOS functions.
- Developing and implementing controls for the commander that support the mission by avoiding unnecessary risk and loss of combat power.
- Providing support to operational requirements and establishing procedures and standards that are clear and practical for each specified and implied task.

**b. Specific Responsibilities at Battalion/Company and Higher.****(1) Commander (overall).** The commander—

- Provides risk guidance.
- Selects hazard-control options.
- Makes risk decision for COA.
- Enforces and evaluates controls.

**(2) XO (staff supervision).** The executive officer—

- Supervises risk-management integration across the entire staff.
- Ensures that hazards and controls are integrated into plans and orders.
- Ensures that the staff monitors and enforces controls during execution.

**(3) Staff officers (functional area).** Staff officers—

- Identify hazards most likely to result in loss of combat power; for example, hazards that are not adequately controlled.
- Develop control options that address reasons for hazards.
- Integrate hazards and selected controls into functional-area paragraphs, graphics, and annexes of the OPORD.

**(4) Safety officer/NCO (coordination).** The safety officer/NCO—

- Assists the commander and staff with risk-management integration during mission planning, execution, and assessment.
- Collects hazards and controls identified by staff; uses these to prepare risk assessment and control measures for all operations.
- Coordinates staff risk management and makes recommendations to the S3.

**c. Responsibilities at Company/Troop and Lower.** The commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (Figure C-2).

Troop-Leading Steps		Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls & Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise & Evaluate
1	<b>Receive mission</b>	X				
	-Perform initial METT-TC analysis	X				
2	<b>Issue the warning order</b>	X				
3	<b>Make a tentative plan</b>	X	X			
3A	Make an estimate of the situation	X	X			
3B	Detailed mission analysis	X	X			
3C	Develop situation and courses of action for—	X	X			
3C1	-Enemy situation (enemy COAs)	X	X			
3C2	-Terrain and weather (OCOKA)	X	X			
3C3	-Friendly situation (troops and time available)	X	X			
3C4	-Courses of action (friendly)	X	X			
3D	Analyze courses of action—war-game	X	X			
3E	Compare courses of action			X		
3F	Make decisions			X		
3G	Expand selected COA into tentative plan			X		
4	<b>Initiate movement</b>				X	
5	<b>Reconnoiter</b>				X	
6	<b>Complete the plan</b>				X	
7	<b>Issue the order</b>				X	
8	<b>Supervise and refine the plan</b>					X

Figure C-2. Example of risk management integrated into troop-leading procedures.

**C-4. RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

The commander and staff perform the actions listed below. The safety officer collects the information generated during these actions and enters it on the risk-management worksheet (Figure C-3).

**RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET** PAGE 1 of 1

1. MSN/TASK: Insertion/Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97	
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S3 <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>					
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE
<b>Adverse Environment</b> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility During Flight - Brownout					
<b>Continuous Operations</b> - Fatigue					
<b>Unfamiliar Terrain</b> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone					
<b>Inadequate Planning Time</b>					
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW   MODERATE   HIGH   EXTREMELY HIGH			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY:  <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

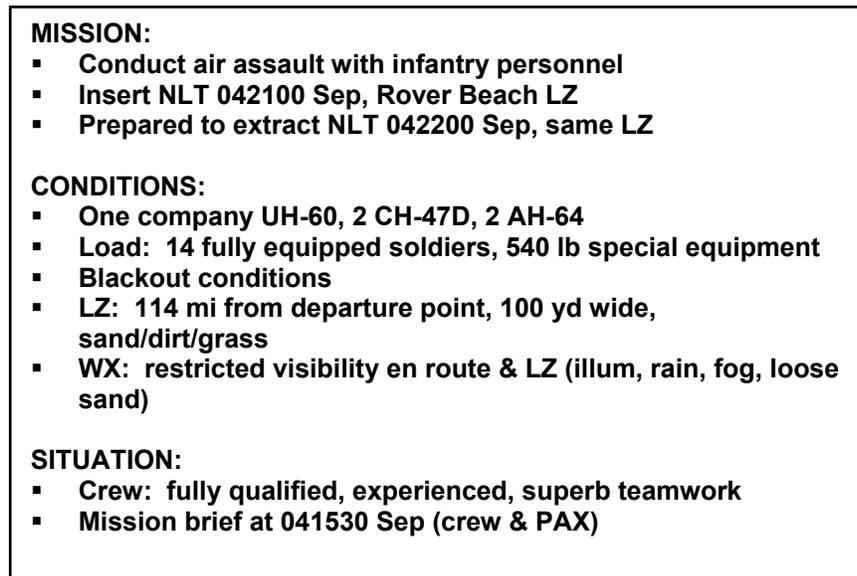
ID Hazards

Figure C-3. Sample risk management worksheet—ID hazards.

**a. Identify Hazards.**

(1) Collect METT-TC hazard facts for each COA for the mission or task (Figure C-4). Sources include the following:

- Mission order/task instructions.
- Commander's critical information requirements.
- Mission planning systems.
- Tactical SOP.
- Unit accident history.
- Reconnaissance.
- Experience.



**Figure C-4: Example of mission factors collected.**

(2) Review the mission's METT-TC factors to identify those enemy and accident/fratricide hazards that are most likely to cause loss of combat power. That is, identify those hazards that are not adequately controlled at this or the next-lower echelon of command. To do this, answer the questions in the matrix in Figure C-5 to determine if the hazard needs to be risk managed.

(3) Hazards that require risk management are identified to the safety officer/NCO, who enters them in Block 5 on the worksheet.

QUESTIONS	Adequate	
	YES	NO
<b>Support</b> —Is type/amount/capability/condition of support adequate to control hazard? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Personnel.</li> <li>• Supplies.</li> <li>• Equipment/materiel.</li> <li>• Services/facilities.</li> </ul>		
<b>Standards</b> —Is guidance/procedure adequately clear/practical/specific to control hazard?		
<b>Training</b> —Is training adequately thorough and recent enough to control hazard?		
<b>Leadership</b> —Is leadership ready, willing, and able to enforce standards required to control hazard?		
<b>Unit Self-Discipline</b> —Is unit performance and conduct self-disciplined to control hazard?		

If all answers are “yes,” then no further action is required.  
 If one or more answers are “no,” this hazard needs risk management.  
 (Enter the hazard on the risk-management work sheet.)

Figure C-5. Example of a matrix to determine if hazard needs risk management.

**b. Assess Hazards.**

(1) Determine the risk level of each hazard that is not adequately controlled. Figure C-6 and best judgement are the basis for selecting the risk level.

<b>Risk Level:</b> <i>E - Extremely High</i> <i>H - High</i> <i>M - Moderate</i> <i>L - Low</i>		<b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b>				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
<b>S e v e r e l y</b>	<i>Catastrophic</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>
	<i>Critical</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Marginal</i>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Negligible</i>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>

Figure C-6. Example of a risk-assessment matrix—assess hazards.

(2) Provide the risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO. The safety officer/NCO enters this information in Block 6 of the risk management worksheet as the initial risk level for each hazard (Figure C-7).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion/Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESULTING RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. EFFECTIVE DATE
<u>Adverse Environment</u> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility During Flight - Brownout	EH					
<u>Continuous Operations</u> - Fatigue	H					
<u>Unfamiliar Terrain</u> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H					
<u>Inadequate Planning Time</u>	EH					
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW   MODERATE   HIGH   EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION		

Figure C-7: Example of a risk management worksheet—assess hazards.

c. Develop Controls.

(1) Develop one or more controls to eliminate each hazard or to reduce its level of risk. Controls should address the reasons that the hazard needs risk management (see C-4a[2] above).

(2) Provide controls to the safety officer/NCO, who enters them in Block 7 of the risk management worksheet (Figure C-8).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion/Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESULTING RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. EFFECTIVE DATE
<u>Adverse Environment</u> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility During Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure that crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed				
<u>Continuous Operations</u> - Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-rest plan is adhered to				
<u>Unfamiliar Terrain</u> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ				
<u>Inadequate Planning Time</u>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted				
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW   MODERATE   HIGH   EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION		

Figure C-8. Example of a risk management worksheet—develop controls.

**d. Determine Residual Risk.**

(1) For each hazard, use the risk-assessment matrix (Figure C-9) and judgment to determine the level of risk remaining, assuming that the controls are implemented.

<b>Risk Level:</b> <b>E - Extremely High</b> <b>H - High</b> <b>M - Moderate</b> <b>L - Low</b>		<b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b>				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
<b>s e v e r e r i t y</b>	<i>Catastrophic</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>
	<i>Critical</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Marginal</i>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Negligible</i>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>

**Figure C-9. Example of a risk-assessment matrix—determine residual risk.**

(2) Provide the residual risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO, who enters it in Block 8 of the risk management worksheet (Figure C-10).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET						PAGE 1 of 1
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion/Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S3 <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	
<b>Adverse Environment</b> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility During Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure that crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H			
<b>Continuous Operations</b> - Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-rest plan is adhered to	M			
<b>Unfamiliar Terrain</b> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M			
<b>Inadequate Planning Time</b>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H			
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW    MODERATE <b>HIGH</b> EXTREMELY HIGH			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: <b>COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR</b> <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>			

**Figure C-10. Example of a risk management worksheet—residual risk.**

**e. Determine Course-of-Action Risk.**

(1) The safety officer/NCO determines the overall risk level for each COA, assuming that the commander selects the controls and that they are implemented. He uses procedures in the unit's SOP to do this. If the unit has no such procedures, the COA's overall risk level is the same as the hazard with the highest residual risk. He circles the COA's risk level in Block 9 (Figure C-10).

(2) The safety officer/NCO analyzes the feasibility and acceptability of each COA in terms of residual risk. He scores the residual risk criterion for each COA, using weights determined by the XO, and provides these scores for entry on the decision matrix.

(3) The safety officer/NCO presents hazards, controls, and risks during the commander's decision briefing. Risk management worksheets may be used for this purpose.

**f. Make Risk Decision.**

(1) The commander selects the COA and decides whether to accept the COA's risk level. He decides what level of residual risk he will accept. He approves control measures that will result in that level or a lower level of risk. He obtains the higher commander's approval to accept any level of residual risk that might imperil the higher commander's intent or is not consistent with his risk guidance. In Block 10, the safety officer/NCO enters the name, rank, and duty position of the commander accepting the COA's risk level (Figure C-10).

(2) The S3 develops and issues a warning order that contains the commander's refined risk guidance.

**g. Implement Controls.**

(1) Based on the commander's decision and risk guidance, the staff determines how each control will be put into effect or communicated to the personnel who will make it happen; for example, FRAGO, OPORD, TACSOP, mission briefing, and rehearsals. The safety officer/NCO enters this information in Block 11 of the risk management worksheet (Figure C-11).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET						PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion/Extraction			2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION							
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. EFFECTIVE DATE	
<b>Adverse Environment</b> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility During Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure that crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals Mission Brief Rehearsals	← ← ←	<b>IMPLEMENT</b>	
<b>Continuous Operations</b> - Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-rest plan is adhered to	M	TACSOP	←		
<b>Unfamiliar Terrain</b> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	← ←		
<b>Inadequate Planning Time</b>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H	FRAGO	←		
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW    MODERATE <b>HIGH</b> EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION			

Figure C-11. Example of a risk management worksheet—implement.

(2) The staff coordinates controls, integrates them into the FRAGO/appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD, and confirms understanding by subordinate units during the rehearsal.

**h. Supervise.**

(1) The staff determines how each control will be monitored/enforced to ensure that it is effectively implemented. Examples of monitoring and enforcement include command presence, direct supervision, PCI, PCC, SITREP, spot check, radio-net monitoring and crosstalk, and back-brief.

(2) The staff provides control supervision methods to the safety officer/NCO, who enters them in Block 12 (Figure C-12).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE <u>1</u> of <u>1</u>
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion/Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97	
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S3 <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>					
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE
<u>Adverse Environment</u> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility During Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure that crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supv Mission Updates
<u>Continuous Operations</u> - Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-rest plan is adhered to	M	TACSOP	Direct Supv
<u>Unfamiliar Terrain</u> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supv Mission Update
<u>Inadequate Planning Time</u>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H	FRAGO	Direct Supv
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW   MODERATE <b>HIGH</b> EXTREMELY HIGH			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: <b>COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR</b> <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

**Figure C-12. Example of a risk management worksheet—supervise.**

**i. Risk-Management Assessment.**

(1) Staff members evaluate the effectiveness of each control in reducing the risk of the targeted hazard. They provide a “yes,” if effective, or “no,” if not, to the safety officer/NCO who enters this information in Block 13.

(2) For each control judged not effective, the staff determines why and what to do the next time that the hazard is identified. Examples of these procedures are changing the control, developing a different control, or changing the method of implementation or supervision. Staff members provide this information to the safety officer/NCO, who reports it during the AAR.

(3) The safety officer/NCO evaluates the unit’s risk-management performance and reports it during the AAR. The matrix in Figure C-13 may be used for this report.

	GO	NO GO
<b>Identified the most important hazards.</b>		
• Available facts for each METT-TC factor gathered and considered?		
• Hazards (enemy and accident) most likely to result in loss of combat power identified?		
<b>Assessed risk level of each hazard.</b>		
• Valid method/tool used to assess initial risk levels?		
<b>Developed appropriate control options and determined residual risk.</b>		
• Each control addressed hazard reasons?		
• Residual risk level realistic for each hazard?		
• Valid method/tool used to determine the residual risk level for each COA?		
• Residual risk level for each COA entered on decision matrix?		
<b>Made risk decision for selected COA.</b>		
• Valid procedure/guidance used for determining risk decision authority?		
<b>Hazards and controls clearly communicated to responsible unit/leadership.</b>		
• Controls integrated into appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPOD/FRAGO and rehearsals?		
<b>Implemented and enforced controls.</b>		
• Effective methods used to supervise/enforce controls?		

**Figure C-13. Example of risk-management task standards and performance assessment.**

#### C-5. DEFINITIONS

**a. Hazard.** A hazard is an actual or potential condition that can cause injury, illness, or death of personnel; damage to or loss of equipment or property; or mission degradation.

**b. Condition.** Condition is the readiness status of personnel and equipment with respect to the operational environment during mission planning, preparation, and execution. Readiness that is below standard leads to human error, material failure, and inadequate precautions for environmental factors, which may cause accidents, fratricide, and mission degradation.

**c. Risk.** Risk is the probability of exposure to injury or loss from a hazard. Risk level is expressed in terms of hazard probability and severity.

**d. Probability.** Probability is the likelihood that an event will occur. Levels of probability are—

- Frequent—occurs often, continuously experienced.
- Likely—occurs several times.
- Occasional—occurs sporadically.
- Seldom—unlikely, but could occur at some time.
- Unlikely—can assume that it will not occur.

**e. Severity—**Severity is the expected consequence of an event in terms of degree of injury, property damage, or other mission-impairing factors. Level of severity are—

- Catastrophic—death or permanent total disability, system loss, major damage, significant property damage, mission failure.
- Critical—permanent partial disability, temporary total disability exceeding three months, major system damage, significant property damage, significant mission degradation.

- Marginal—minor injury, lost workday accident, minor system damage, minor property damage, some mission degradation.
- Negligible—first aid or minor medical treatment, minor system impairment, little or no effect on mission accomplishment.

**f. Controls**—Controls are actions taken to eliminate hazards or reduce their risk.

**g. Risk Assessment**—Risk assessment is the identification and assessment of hazards (the first two steps of the risk-management process).

**h. Residual Risk**—Residual risk is the level of risk remaining after controls have been selected for hazards. (Controls are identified and selected until residual risk is at an acceptable level or until it cannot be practically reduced further.)

## APPENDIX D

### TRAINING AIDS, DEVICES, SIMULATORS, AND SIMULATIONS

#### D-1. GENERAL

Training in individual and crew mission simulators accounts for much of the success that AVIM CSS aviation units have enjoyed in recent combat and stability operations/support operations. The development of new simulation and simulator technology provides essential tools for training. The new technology also allows air and ground units and their staffs to train for operations under METT-TC conditions.

#### D-2. TADSS OVERVIEW

Models and simulations (Figure E-1) are vital tools for achieving readiness. The Army has a long history of using M&S in every facet of operations, worldwide. Decision makers consider analytical results derived from M&S. M&S improves the quality of the acquisition process and the products delivered to soldiers.

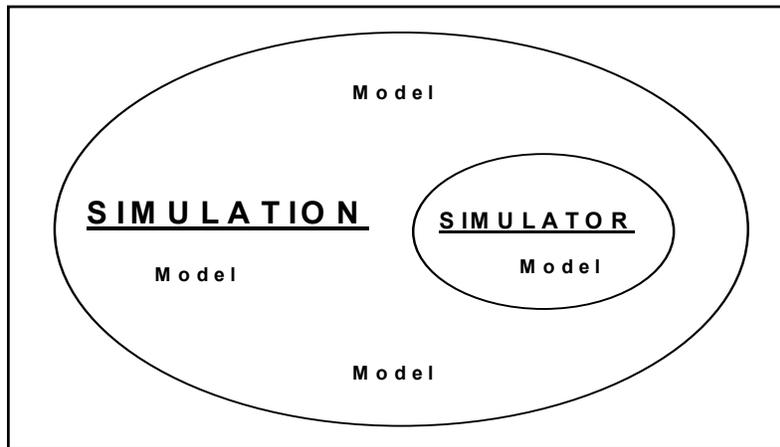
##### a. Definitions.

**(1) Model.** A model is a representation of some or all of the properties of a device, system, or object. The three basic classes of models are mathematical, physical, and procedural.

**(2) Simulation.** A simulation is an operating representation of selected features of real-world or hypothetical events and processes. It represents activities and interactions over time. A simulation may be fully automated (that is, executed without human intervention), or it may be interactive or interruptible (that is, the user may intervene during execution). The corps battle simulation integrates various models. The functionality of a simulation depends on the many models that serve as building blocks. For example, an Apache-equipped attack helicopter unit within CBS requires a model of how an AH-64 fights under different conditions. Likewise, the simulation needs models of an M1 Abrams tank, M2 Bradley fighting vehicle, and M3 cavalry fighting vehicle and of other systems operating under different conditions.

**(3) Models and simulations.** Models and simulations are often used as synonyms. They are not exactly the same in a technical sense. Models are the essential elements or characteristics of a simulation. (**NOTE:** M&S is used as both singular and plural for models and simulations.)

**(4) Simulator.** Models and simulations are sometimes used as synonyms, both internal and external to DOD. The terms *simulators* and *simulations*, however, are not synonyms. In the training context, simulators are most often associated with either individual or crew skill training. These simulators replicate either significant segments or the entire piece of equipment. The AH-64A Apache combat mission simulator is one example of a simulator that is associated with crew training.



**Figure D-1. Relationship of simulations, simulators, and models.**

**(5) War-gaming.** War-gaming is used in both training simulations and simulators. A wargame is a simulation of a military operation that involves two or more opposing forces. This simulation uses rules, data, and procedures that depict an actual or assumed real-life situation. War-gaming allows the participants to experiment with alternative tactics and operations against an opposing force. This process forces participants to react to the opposing force by developing plans and the executing operations. The complexity and sophistication of current simulations create a high degree of reality for wargame participants.

**b. Types of Simulations.** Simulations categories are constructive, virtual, and live (Figure E-2).

**(1) Constructive simulation.** A constructive simulation consists of wargames and models. Many of these rely heavily on mathematical methods. Examples include Janus (A), Spectrum, and BBS.

**(2) Virtual simulation.** A virtual simulation focuses largely on manned simulators. It interacts within a synthetic environment and, in many cases, with other simulators. Well-known examples are the SIMNET simulators commonly used throughout the Army for both training and developmental work.

**(3) Live simulation.** Live simulation may be described as actual soldiers and equipment operating together, often on instrumented ranges. The Army's CTCs are highly instrumented, live simulation facilities.

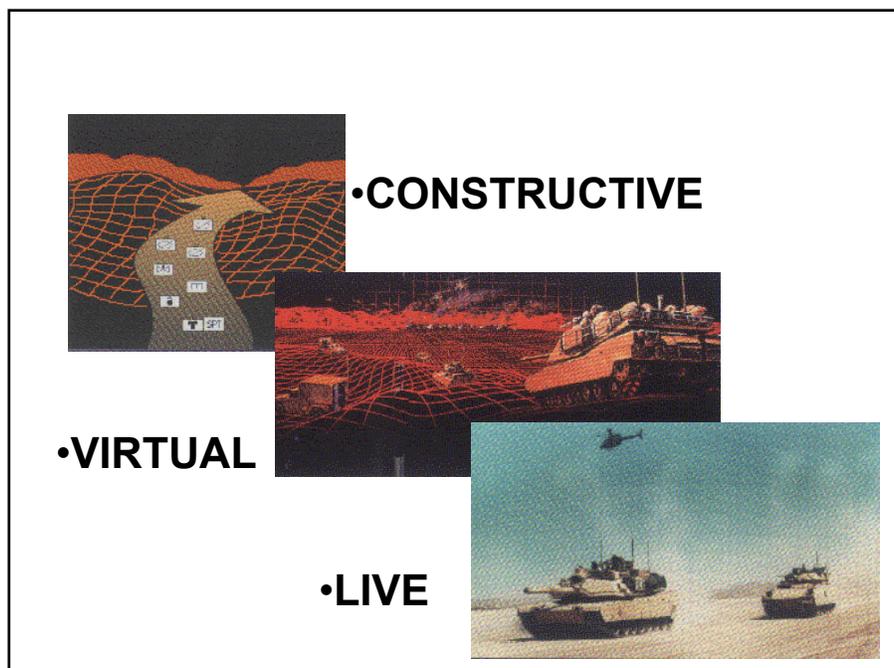


Figure D-2. Types of simulation.

### D-3. UNIT-LEVEL TADSS TRAINING

An integrated use of live, virtual, and constructive training tools can provide commanders with the best trained Army aviators and units. Helicopter pioneer Igor Sikorsky wrote that the use of the helicopter is limited only by the imagination of the user. This wisdom also holds true for the use of simulations and simulators.

**a. How Simulations Support Training.** Simulations support training in unique ways. Understanding how simulations support training benefits the commander as he incorporates unique features into an overall unit training strategy.

**b. Battalion/Company Training.** In the constructive environment, simulations—such as BBS, Janus, or ModSAF—can provide commanders, crews, and staff members with some mission battlefield visualization skills. BBS and Janus enable the user to portray friendly and enemy forces on a two-dimensional map, using high-fidelity terrain information. ModSAF accomplishes the same objective but in a three-dimensional world. Staffs can war-game various mission options and judge the effectiveness of their plans. Crews can gain an appreciation of terrain intervisibility or movement effect as the battle unfolds. In future developments, WARSIM will replace BBS/CBS and Janus; OneSAF will replace ModSAF. In an upgraded TADS Selected Tasks Trainer, a gunner can integrate with the WARSIM or OneSAF simulation. The pilot flies from a control workstation. The pilot can execute various mission options, to include evasive actions, multiple target engagements, and actions on contact. Enhancements in the AH-64 CMS also allow WARSIM or OneSAF integration. The TSTT and the CMS can pair on missions and conduct limited engagements. Leaders can develop battle drills and visually display those drills under conditions that crews may expect to encounter. Maintenance personnel can observe the commander's desired operational tempo and determine appropriate support options. Increased portability of the WARSIM, OneSAF, or other types of MPRTs will allow the battalion/company to transport simulation equipment to the field and train using simulations while deployed. Crews can conduct digital terrain walks so that they can see the terrain over which they will operate.

**c. Company/Troop Training.** The company/troop commander benefits from the integration of simulators and simulations into AVIM CSS unit training. Without integrated use of simulators and simulations, aircraft readiness, and funding drive unit training tempo. In the past, units would slow down the training tempo to have funding available for major events such as the NTC. With an integrated training vision, the training does not slow down. The commander has more options available to support his plan while allowing his soldiers the opportunity to maintain complex aircraft systems. During a typical weekly training schedule, events—such as motor stables, rotor stables, sergeant’s time, and RL training—are included. Integrated throughout the week are windows for simulator and simulations training to support the overall training plan. WARSIM, OneSAF, TSTT, CMS, and AVCATT are used by platoon leaders, company/troop commanders, and instructor pilots to prepare for live training. While aircraft are being repaired and readied for the next mission, crews can train at nearly the same level of fidelity and stress. Units are able to train and maintain—without compromising readiness.

**d. Individual Training.** TADSS will never replace live training events. Aviators/crews/staff personnel and soldiers require a baseline of hands-on experience that can be gained only through realistic training on actual equipment in tough, demanding conditions. This baseline—called situational experience—is the basis for individual success. Once this solid foundation of situational experience is established, the tremendous potential of simulators and simulations can be exploited (Figure D-3). Aviators need time in the cockpit to fully develop air sense and understand the complexities of their particular airframe. During this time, the aviator partially develops feel in a simulator such as during initial aircraft qualification. Simulators, however, cannot replace actual flight time. As aviators’ situational experience and understanding increase, other simulation tools can be used to supplement their baseline. Certain mission profiles can be demonstrated using a mission simulator or simulation. The overall situational experience of the aviator can grow. This is a key safety concept, especially considering the potential dangers that exist in most mission profiles. Those missions or events that cannot be realistically conducted in actual flight condition—for example, certain emergency procedures, selected weapons engagements, and specific weather conditions—must take place in either virtual or constructive simulations.

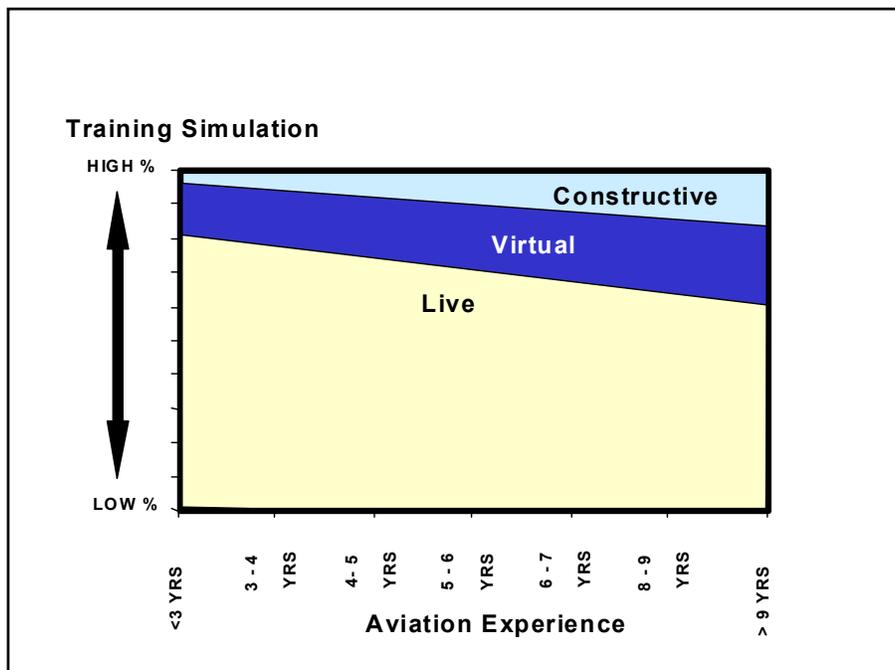


Figure D-3. Example of aviator experience and simulation training.

#### D-4. SIMULATIONS IN COMMAND AND CONTROL TRAINING

The Army's C<sup>2</sup> training simulations are computer driven and assist in training commanders and their staffs. Most of these simulations place C<sup>2</sup> elements in an environment that stimulates decision making, command and staff interaction, and staff coordination. In a simulation-driven exercise, participating commanders and staffs—the trainees or training audience—may operate in CPs or TOCs at field locations.

#### D-5. SIMULATIONS AND SIMULATORS AVAILABLE FOR BATTALION/COMPANY AND BELOW TRAINING

##### a. The Family of Simulations.

(1) The Army FAMSIM consists of a proponent-approved group of simulations. These simulations are for training unit commanders and battle staffs in CPXs and leader-development training simulations. FAMSIM continues evolutionary enhancements to ensure that the simulations remain relevant. Current objectives are to give commanders the ability to train subordinate commanders and staffs, from platoon through corps, in synchronizing all of the BOS under conditions that closely replicate the battlefield. Each corps and division will be able to conduct home-station CPXs for a variety of theaters and scenarios to include integrating heavy, light, and aviation and SOFs. The FAMSIM includes six fielded simulations:

- Janus.
- Spectrum.
- Brigade/Battalion Battle Simulation.
- Corps Battle Simulation.
- Tactical Simulation.
- CSS Training Simulation System.

(2) FAMSIM members are effective training tools when their capabilities are matched with the targeted echelons and trainees. Figure D-4 shows how these FAMSIM members normally support training. Janus, Spectrum, and BBS are most appropriate for battalion/squadron and lower levels and are discussed below.

Simulation	Training Audience
TACSIM	Intelligence staffs at all echelons in the joint and combined communities, including analysts
Spectrum	Company/troop to division commanders, staffs, first sergeants, and platoon leaders
Janus	Platoon leaders to brigade/regiment commanders and staffs
BBS	Battalion/squadron and brigade/regiment commanders and staffs Company/troop commanders (secondary)
CBS	Division to EAC commanders and staffs Brigade commanders (secondary)
CSSTSS	CSS commanders and staffs from battalion/squadron to EAC

**Figure D-4. FAMSIM training audiences.**

(a) **Janus.** Janus is a low-cost, flexible, interactive, event-driven war-gaming simulation for training platoon and company-/troop-level commanders. It can also be used to train

battalion/squadron and brigade/regiment staffs. As a staff trainer, Janus provides an environment requiring detailed interaction between the commander and S2/S3 as they develop and execute the tactical plan. Commanders must apply sound warfighting principles and fully synchronize BOS to win a Janus battle.

**(b) Spectrum.** Spectrum addresses deficiencies in C<sup>2</sup> training in SASO. Spectrum operates in the Microsoft Windows™ environment on personal computers.

**(c) Brigade/Battalion Battle Simulation.** BBS is a low-cost training simulation. It gives maneuver brigade and battalion/squadron commanders and their battle staffs practice for their decision-making skills in a realistic, multithreat, time-stressed combat environment. They must be able to develop, correlate, and assess large quantities of tactical and logistical data. They must also be able to formulate situational estimates and make immediate decisions in the C<sup>2</sup> and synchronization of combat, CS, and CSS assets. BBS supports training of combat maneuver commanders and the staffs at brigade/regiment and battalion/squadron levels. Company/troop commanders, CS, and CSS units also receive valuable secondary training as part of any BBS-driven CPX.

**(3) Future developments.** WARSIM 2000 is the major development effort for FAMSIM. WARSIM 2000 will exploit new technology to enable CPs at all echelons to train in a realistic, DIS environment. The increased realism of WARSIM 2000 over existing models will allow units to synchronize across each operating system. WARSIM 2000's design allows warfighting CPs to interact with the simulation using TOE equipment to train in the field.

#### **b. Other Army Simulations/Simulators.**

**(1) SIMNET-T.** SIMNET was a joint Army/DARPA project. It exploits the ability of computer technology to transfer data streams across networks containing large numbers of simulators with real-time update of all simulators in the network. SIMNET-T trains combat units at the crew through battalion/squadron echelons. Existing simulators are in the form of reconfigurable helicopter simulators, M1 tanks, and infantry fighting vehicles. Emulation of artillery, engineer, dismounted infantry, AD, and CSS also exists.

**(2) AVCATT.** The AVCATT is a modular suite of reconfigurable aviation warfighting platforms. The AVCATT is driven by software that creates a virtual battlefield. It provides a realistic, high-intensity, task-loaded combat environment. This environment is composed of attack, reconnaissance, and lift aircraft platforms, SAF workstations, AMPS, AAR capability, and battalion-/company-level staff work stations. AVCATT can be tailored to specific unit needs such as mission planning and rehearsal and collective task training through use of DIS protocols and TSIUs. AVCATT is aviation specific. It complements and functions with the CATT family of virtual-reality simulators. AVCATT supports training for aviation units worldwide.

### **D-6. UNIT SIMULATIONS TRAINING STRATEGY**

The commander and staff determine how to incorporate simulations into a unit's training strategy. Chapter 3 outlines the training planning process and links the organization's METL with subsequent execution and evaluation of training. A relatively centralized process, planning develops mutually supporting METL-based training at all levels within an organization. Thus, higher and lower command echelons may train simultaneously in the same exercise at different levels of realism, based on participation. The commander and staff must determine who is to be trained, the specific tasks on which they need training, which simulation can provide that training, and the availability of the simulation and resources necessary for the required training. *Training with Simulations: A Handbook for Commanders and Trainers* (National Simulation Center, January 1999), simulation users' guides, and experienced staff at simulation facilities provide guidance on simulation uses and capabilities.

**a.** The commander should not be trapped into thinking that simulation use equals training or that simulations can train everything well all of the time. Simulations do not train; they are merely training aids

that allow the commander to practice certain tasks and skills in a scenario specifically developed to test them.

b. Simulations use is invaluable as long as the commander places the simulation experience into the overall development of the unit and its individual members. Simulations use can be broken down into two areas: leader development training and collective task training.

(1) In leader development training, training develops the skills of an individual. Often, this is accomplished in a formal educational setting that trains and tests individual skills.

(2) Collective task training is best incorporated in a unit setting in which team building is desired to improve collective-task effectiveness. The focus is on collective tasks. Figure D-5 shows the level, type, and echelon of trainee for each of the C<sup>2</sup> simulations in the family of simulations.

<b>Leader Development Training* (Individual Skill Development)</b>	
<b>Trainees</b>	<b>Simulation</b>
Squad Leaders Crew Chiefs Platoon Leaders Company, Troop, Battery, and Battalion/Squadron Commanders	Janus (excellent for S2 and S3 skill development, weak in CSS)
<b>Collective Task Training* (Team Building)</b>	
<b>Trainees</b>	<b>Simulation</b>
Company/Troop (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, for all BOS), Janus
Battalion/Squadron (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion/Squadron (CSS)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion/Squadron and Brigade/Regiment (Combat or CS)	Janus (Command and Staff Trainer, weak on CSS)
Brigade/Regiment (CSS)	BBS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
DISCOM, COSCOM, TAACOM Groups (CSS) (Corps and EAC)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Division Corps Echelons Above Corps Joint and Multinational	CSSTSS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
<b>NOTE:</b>	* Spectrum can be used in all of the above.

**Figure D-5. C<sup>2</sup> simulation training applications.**

(3) Several items should be considered in developing the unit simulation training strategy.

(a) Integrate simulation into the overall training strategy during the development of the training plan. Determine which simulations would benefit units with upcoming training events; for

example, external evaluation. When simulation is used as a train-up device, the trainer must determine the echelon to train, the upcoming event requirements, and the simulation most likely to benefit this echelon.

**(b)** Determine which leaders and staff members must be trained. They may be able to train with other units, in addition to training with their unit.

**(c)** Review the higher commander's guidance to assure that his intent is met. List each training activity, and determine how sister units can assist and support training activities and receive secondary reinforcement in their skills.

**(d)** Use simulation to complement live training.

**NOTE:** The commander realizes that the training plan must be supportable by qualified individuals and a responsive maintenance flow. With this focus identified, he begins the training process as outlined in Chapter 3.

## GLOSSARY

A	arrival; airfield; air
AA	assembly area
A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup>	Army airspace command and control
A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> S	Army airspace command and control system
AAF	Army airfield
AAFES	Army and Air Force Exchange Service
AAR	after-action review
AASLT	air assault
AASLTD	air assault division
AB	aviation brigade; airbase
abn	airborne
ABND	airborne division
AC	active component; aircraft commander
acft	aircraft
ACP	air control point
acq	acquisition
ACT	AVIM contact team
AD	air defense
ADA	air defense artillery
A/DACG	arrival/departure airfield control group
ADC	area damage control
AF	Air Force
AG	adjutant general
AGL	above ground level
AH	attack helicopter
AHR	attack helicopter regiment
AIS	automated information systems
AL	Alabama
ALOC	administrative and logistics operations center
ALSE	aviation life support equipment
AM	amplitude modulation
AMB	aviation maintenance battalion
AMC	air mission commander
AMCO	aviation maintenance company
AMO	aircraft maintenance officer
AMPS	aviation mission planning system
ANCD	automated net control devices
ant	antenna
AO	area of operations
AOAP	Army oil analysis program
AOR	area of responsibility
APC	armored personnel carrier
APOD	aerial port of debarkation
APOE	aerial port of embarkation
AR	Army Regulation; Army Reserve
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
ASAP	as soon as possible
ASAT	Automated Systems Approach to Training
ASB	aviation support battalion
ASE	aircraft survivability equipment
ASET	aircraft survivability equipment trainer
ASG	area support group
ASL	authorized stockage list

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

aslt	assault
ASO	aviation safety officer
ASOS	automated surface observing system
AT	Army training; annual training; antiterrorism
ATB	aviation training brigade
ATC	air traffic control
atk	attack
ATM	aircrew training manual
ATO	air tasking order
ATP	aircrew training program
ATS	air traffic services
ATSC	Army Training Support Center
attn	attention
av	aviation
AVCATT	Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
AVIM	aviation intermediate maintenance
avn	aviation
AVUM	aviation unit maintenance
AWOL	absent without leave
ba	battery
BBS	Brigade and Battalion Simulation
BCBST	brigade command and battle staff training
BCOC	base cluster operations center
BDA	battle damage assessment
BDAR	battle damage assessment and repair
bde	brigade
BDU	battle-dress uniform
BL	battery low
BLTM	battalion-level training module
BLUEFOR	blue forces
BM	base maintenance
BMO	battalion maintenance officer
bn	battalion
BOS	battlefield operating system(s)
BP	be prepared
BPT	be prepared to
BSX	battle simulation exercise
C <sup>2</sup>	command and control
C <sup>4</sup>	command, control, communications, and computers
C <sup>4</sup> ISR	command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance
CALFEX	combined arms live fire exercise
CALL	Center for Army Lessons Learned
CAS	close air support
CAT	command and assessment team
CATS	Combined Arms Training Strategy
CATT	Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
cav	cavalry
CAX	computer-assisted exercise
CBS	corps battle simulation
CC	COSCOM
CCIR	commander's critical information requirements
CCP	civilian collection point
cdr	commander
CD-ROM	compact disk—read-only memory
CEMS	communications-electronic management system

CFX	command field exercise
CG	commanding general
CH	cargo helicopter
chem	chemical
chemlight	chemical light
CINC	commander in chief
CIS	command information system
CJCS	Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff
cl	class
CLS	combat lifesaver
CM	countermeasures
cmd	command
CMEF	combined marine expeditionary force
CMMC	corps materiel management center
CMO	chief maintenance officer
CMS	combat mission simulator
co	company
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
commo	communication(s)
COMSEC	communications security
CONUS	continental United States
COSCOM	corps support command
CP	command post
CPT	captain
CPX	command post exercise
CR	central region
CS	combat support
CSB	corps support battalion
CSC	convoy support center
CSG	corps support group
CSM	command sergeant major
CSS	combat service support
CSSAMO	combat service support aviation maintenance officer
CSSOC	combat service support operations center
CSSTSS	Combat Service Support Training Simulation System
CTA	common table of allowances
CTC	Combat Training Center
CTG	command training guidance
CTX	combined training exercise
DA	Department of the Army
DACG	departure airfield control group
DARPA	Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency
DART	downed aircraft recovery team
DASB	division aviation support battalion
DC	dislocated civilian
DD	Department of Defense
DEL	deployment equipment list
DEPEX	deployment exercise
det	detachment
DIRLAUTH	direct liaison authorized
DIS	distributed interactive simulation
DISCOM	division support command
DISN	defense information services network
div	division
divarty	division artillery

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

DMMC	Division Materiel Management Center
DMX	decision-making exercise
DOCC	deep operations coordination center
DOD	Department of Defense
DODAAC	Department of Defense activity address code
DOL	Department of Logistics
DOS	day(s) of supply
DOTDS	Directorate of Training, Doctrine, and Simulation
DP	decision point
DPTA	Drawsko Pomorskie Training Area (Poland)
DR	data repository
DRB	division-ready brigade
DRF	division-ready force
DS	direct support
DS2	decontaminating solution #2
DSN	digital switched network
DST	direct support team
DSU	direct support unit
dtd	dated
DTG	date-time group
DTLOMS	doctrine, training, leader development, organization, materiel, and soldiers
DTO	division transportation officer
DTX	digital training exercise
DX	direct exchange
DZ	drop zone
EAC	echelons above corps
EAD	echelons above division
EC	electronic countermeasures
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
EDRE	emergency deployment readiness exercise
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
ele	element
en	engineer
ENDEX	end of exercise
eng	engineer
EOC	emergency operations center
EP	electronic protection
EPA	evasion plans of actions
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ER	evaluation report
evac	evacuation
EW	electronic warfare
EXCON	exercise control center
FAA	forward assembly area
FAC	forward air controller
FAMSIM	family of simulations
FAR	federal acquisition regulation
FARP	forward arming and refueling point
FCX	fire coordination exercise
FDO	force deterrent option
FEO	force enhancement option
FER	final exercise report
FFIR	friendly forces information requirements
FLE	forward logistics element
FLS	flight landing strip
FM	field manual; frequency modulated (radio)

FOB	forward operating base
FORSCOM	Forces Command
FP	force protection
FPNCO	force protection noncommissioned officer
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FRBP	field ration break point
FRG	family readiness group
FS	fire support
FSB	forward support battalion
FSO	fire support officer
FSOP	field standing operating procedures
FSSP	fuel system supply point
FST	field sanitation team
ft	feet
FTX	field training exercise
G	ground
G1	assistant chief of staff, personnel
G2	assistant chief of staff, intelligence
G3	assistant chief of staff, operations
G4	assistant chief of staff, logistics
G5	assistant chief of staff, civil affairs
G6	assistant chief of staff, information management
GLOC	ground line of communications
GP	general purpose
GRREG	graves registration
GS	general support
GSE	ground support equipment
HEMTT	heavy expanded mobile or mobility tactical truck
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HHD	headquarters and headquarters detachment
HHQ	higher headquarters
HHT	headquarters and headquarters troop
HN	host nation
HPT	high-pressure turbine
HQ	headquarters
hr	hour(s)
HS	home station
IAN	International Alliance of Nations
IAW	in accordance with
ICS	information control systems
ICW	in coordination with
ID	identification; infantry division
IDL	infantry division, light
IDP	initial delay position
IDT	individual development training; inactive duty training
illum	illumination or illuminating
inf	infantry
insp	inspection; inspect
intel	intelligence
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IP	initial point
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
IPR	in-progress review
IR	infrared radar; intelligence requirements
ISO	in support of
ISOPREP	isolated personnel report

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

ITEP	Individual Training Evaluation Program
JAX	Jacksonville, Florida
JCS	joint chiefs of staff
JOG	joint operations graphic
JP	joint publication; aviation fuel
JRTC	Joint Readiness Training Center
JTX	joint training exercise
KIA	killed in action
kW	kilowatt(s)
LAN	local area network
lb	pound(s)
LBE	load-bearing equipment
LCC	land component command
LCX	logistical coordination exercise
LD	line of departure
LES	leave and earnings statement
LFX	live fire exercise
LMTV	light medium tactical vehicle
LNO	liaison officer
LOC	logistical operations center
log	logistics
LOGEX	logistics exercise
LOI	letter of instruction
LP	listening post
LSA	logistics support area
LTC	lieutenant colonel
LTF	logistical task force
LTX	lane training exercise
LZ	landing zone
M&S	model(s) and simulation(s)
MA	mortuary affairs
MACOM	major command
maint	maintenance
MAJ	major
MAPEX	map exercise
MARKS	the Modern Army Record-Keeping System
max	maximum
MBA	main battle area
MC	mobility corridor
MCS	Maintenance Control System
MD	military deception
MDL	management data list
MDMP	military decision-making process
ME	maintenance test flight evaluator
med	medical
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain (and weather), troops, and time available
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civilian considerations
MHE	material handling equipment
MI	military intelligence
mi	mile(s)
MIA	missing in action
MIC	mission identification code
MIJI	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
mil	military

MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
min	minute(s)
MKT	mobile kitchen trailer
MLC	military load class
mm	millimeter(s)
MMC	Materiel Management Center
mnt	maintenance
MOBEX	mobilization exercise
ModSAF	modular semiautomated forces
MOGAS	motor gasoline
MOPP	mission-oriented protective posture
mort	mortar
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
MRC	maintenance requirement card
MRE	meal, ready-to-eat
MPRT	mission planning rehearsal tool
MQS	military qualification standard
MSB	main support battalion
MSE	mobile subscriber equipment
msn	mission
MSR	main supply route
MST	maintenance support team
MTOE	modified table(s) of organization and equipment
MTP	mission training plan
NA	not applicable
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NCMA	national command and military authorities
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCOPD	noncommissioned officer professional development
NEA	northeast Asia
NET	no earlier than
NG	National Guard
NIPR	nonclassified internet protocol router
NIPRNET	nonclassified internet protocol router network
NLT	no later than
NMC	nonmission capable
no	number
NSL	nonstockage list
NTA	Nadarzyce Training Area (Poland)
NTC	National Training Center
NVD	night-vision device
1SG	first sergeant
OA	on or about
OB	order of battle
obj	objective
OC	observer-controller
OCIE	organizational clothing and individual equipment
OCOKA	observation and fields of fire, concealment and cover, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OFS	Officer Foundation Standards
OH	observation helicopter

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

OIC	officer in charge
OneSAF	one semiautomated force
OO	on order
OP	observation post
OPCON	operational control
OPD	officer professional development
OPFOR	opposing force
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order
ops	operations
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operating tempo
OR	operation ready
org	organization
P	needs practice (partial)
PAC	personnel and administration center
pam	pamphlet
PAO	public affairs office or officer
para	paragraph
PAS	personnel accounting system
PAX	passengers
PC	production control; pilot in command
PCC	precombat checks
PCI	precombat inspection
PD	professional development
PDP	predeployment processing
PE	practical exercise
PERSTEMPO	personnel tempo
PFPX	Partnership for Peace Exercise
ph	phase
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
PL	phase line
PLL	prescribed load list
plt	platoon
PM	provost marshal
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
POC	point of contact
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POM	preparation for overseas movement
PP	passage point; present position
PPR	periodic personnel report
PSNCO	personnel service noncommissioned officer
PSRC	partial selective reserve call-ups
PT	physical training
pt	point
PW	prisoner of war
PX	post exchange
PZ	pickup zone
QM	quartermaster
QRF	quick-reaction force
QSS	quick supply store
QTB	quarterly training briefing
QTG	quarterly training guidance
R&R	rest and recuperation
R&S	reconnaissance and surveillance
RA	Regular Army

RAS	regimental aviation squadron
RC	reserve component
RCC	rescue coordination center
RD	rear detachment
RDC	rear detachment commander
RDL	Reimer Digital Library
recon	reconnaissance
regt	regiment
rep	representative
RES	radiation exposure status
retrans	retransmit (panel nomenclature)
RF	reserve forces; radio frequency
RFI	request for information
RL	readiness level
RM	remedial maintenance
ROC	rehearsal of concept
ROE	rules of engagement
ROS	Republic of Shiloh
ROWPU	reverse osmosis water purification unit
RP	reference point; release point
RR	radio range (station)
RSO	reception, staging, and onward (movement)
RSOI	reception, staging, onward movement, and integration
RX	repairable exchange
S1	adjutant (U.S. Army)
S2	intelligence officer (U.S. Army)
S3	operations, plans, and training officer (U.S. Army)
S4	supply officer (U.S. Army)
S5	civil affairs officer (U.S. Army)
S6	communications staff officer (U.S. Army)
SA	situational awareness
SAEDA	subversion and espionage directed against the U.S. Army
SAF	semiautomated forces
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit identification, time, and equipment (format for reporting enemy information)
SAMS	Standard Army Maintenance System
SARSS	Standard Army Retail Supply System
SASO	stability and support operations
SATS	Standard Army Training System
SB	supply bulletin
SC	single channel
sec	section
SEDRE	sealift emergency deployment readiness exercise
SEN	signal electronic node
SIDPERS	Standard Installation Division Personnel System
sig	signal
SIGSEC	signal security
SIMNET	simulations network
SIMNET-T	SIMNET training
SINCGARS	single-channel ground and air radio system
SIPR	secret internet router
SIPRNET	secret internet router network
SITREP	situation report
SIV	system integration van
SJA	staff judge advocate
SLICC	Sling Load Inspector Certification Course

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	soldier's manual of common tasks
SME	subject matter expert
SMFT	semitrailer-mounted fabric tank
SN	serial number
SNCO	senior noncommissioned officer
SNL	standard name line
SOF	special operations force
SOI	signal operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedures
SORTS	status of resource and training system
SP	start point
SPF	SIDPERS personnel file
SPO	support operations
SPOTREP	spot report
spt	support
SSA	supply support activity
SSI	special skill identifier
ST	student text
STAARS	Standard Army After-Action Review System
STAFFEX	staff exercise
STP	soldier training publication
strat	strategic
STRATAIR	strategic air
STX	situational training exercise
supv	supervision
sust	sustained
SWA	southwest Asia
sync	synchronize(d)
T	trained
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TA	theater army
TAA	theater army area
TAACOM	theater army area command
tac	tactical
TAC CP	tactical command post
TACCS	tactical army combat service support computer system
TACSAT	tactical satellite
TACSIM	tactical simulation
TACSOP	tactical standing operating procedures
TADS	target acquisition and designation sight
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
TAM	training assessment module
TAMMS	the Army Maintenance Management System
TAMMS-A	the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation
TAT	to accompany troops
TB	technical bulletin
TBD	to be determined
TBP	to be provided
TC	training circular
TCF	tactical combat force
TDY	temporary duty
TEWT	training exercise without troops
TF	task force
TM	technical manual
tm	team

TMDE	test, measurement, and diagnostic equipment
TOC	tactical operations center
TOCEX	tactical operations center exercise
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TOW	tube-launched, optically tracked, wire-guided (missile)
TPC	tactical pilotage chart
TPFDD	time-phased force and deployment data
TPU	tank and pump unit
TR	TRADOC regulation
TRADOC	U. S. Army Training and Doctrine Command
trans	transportation
TSBN	training support battalion
TSC	theater support command
TSIU	tactical simulation interface units
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedures
TSP	training support package
TSTT	TADSS Selected Task Trainer
TTP	tactics, techniques, and procedures
U	untrained; unclassified
UBL	unit basic load
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UFC	United Forces Command
UGR	unitized group rations
UH	utility helicopter
UI	unit of issue
ULLS	Unit-Level Logistics System
ULLS-A	Unit-Level Logistics System-Aviation
UMARK	unit maintenance aerial recovery kit
UMFC	United Marine Forces Command
UMT	unit maintenance team
UN	United Nations
unk	unknown
US	United States (of America)
USA	United States Army
USAAVNC	United States Army Aviation Center
USAF	United States Air Force
USAPA	United States Army Printing and Publishing Agency
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe
USEUCOM	U.S. European Command
USR	unit status report
vic	vicinity
VISMOD	visual modifications
VS	Victory Strike (exercise)
VTC	video teleconference
Warfighter TSP	A collective TSP that fully supports training for all units; that is, both current and Force XXI units (sometimes referred to as analog and digital, respectively).
WarMod TSP	A package of training products/materials used to initially train individual operator/maintainer/repairer, battle staff, or collective tasks for new equipment/systems. It provides the means to deliver training anywhere in the world, to include in the institution, at the unit, or at the contractor facility. Training may be conducted via formal instruction or distance learning in a live, virtual, or constructive environment. It will be used for Instructor and Key Personnel Training (IKPT) and may include doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures training.
Warrior TSP	A package of training products/materials necessary to train one or more critical individual tasks anywhere in the world, to include in the institution, at the unit, or in a soldier's home. Training may be conducted using formal instruction, self-study, or distance

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

	learning in a live, virtual, or constructive environment.
WARSIM	warfighter's simulation
WCS	weapon control status
WHNS	wartime host-nation support
WIA	wounded in action
WO	warrant officer
WTA	Wederzen Training Area (Poland)
WX	weather
XO	executive officer
yd	yard
yr	year

## REFERENCES

### Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

- AR 25-50. Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 5 March 2001.
- AR 25-51. Official Mail and Distribution Management. 30 November 1992.
- AR 25-400-2. The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS). 1 October 2000.
- AR 27-10. Legal Services: Military Justice. 24 June 1996.
- AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990.
- AR 70-1. Army Acquisition Policy. 15 December 1997.
- AR 71-32. Force Development and Documentation—Consolidated Policies. 3 March 1997.
- AR 220-1. Unit Status Reporting. 1 September 1997.
- AR 220-10. Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973.
- AR 350-35. Army Modernization Training. 30 May 1990.
- AR 380-5. Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000.
- AR 380-19. Information Systems Security. 27 February 1998.
- AR 380-19-1. (C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U). September 1990.
- AR 381-10. US Army Intelligence Activities. 1 July 1984.
- AR 381-12. Subversion and Espionage Directed Against the U.S. Army (SAEDA). 15 January 1993.
- AR 385-10. The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988.
- AR 385-95. Army Aviation Accident Prevention. 10 December 1999.
- AR 420-49. Utility Services. 28 April 1997.
- AR 600-8-6. Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting. 20 May 1994.
- AR 690-11. Mobilization Planning and Management. 14 September 1990.
- AR 700-4. Logistics Assistance. 30 June 1995.
- AR 700-138. Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997.
- AR 710-1. Centralized Inventory Management of the Army Supply System. 1 March 2001.
- AR 710-2. Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997.
- AR 725-50. Requisition, Receipt, and Issue System. 15 November 1995.
- AR 735-5. Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability. 31 January 1998.
- AR 740-26. Physical Inventory Control. 1 July 1980.
- AR 750-1. Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994.
- AR 750-43. Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment Program. 28 November 1997.

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

- ARTEP 1-111-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Aviation Brigades. 23 September 1998.
- ARTEP 1-112-MTP. Mission Training Plan for Attack Helicopter Battalion. 16 February 1999.
- ARTEP 1-113-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Utility Helicopter Battalion. 31 August 2001.
- ARTEP 1-114-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Air Cavalry/Reconnaissance Squadron and Troop. 30 March 2000.
- ARTEP 1-245-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Heavy Lift Helicopter. 31 August 2001.

## **ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

### **Department of the Army Forms**

- 31. Request and Authority for Leave. September 1993.
- 638. Recommendation for Award. November 1994.
- 647. Personnel Register. 1 August 1978.
- 1155. Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966.
- 1156. Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966.
- 1352. Army Aircraft Inventory, Status and Flying Time. April 1993.
- 1352-1. Daily Aircraft Status Record. April 1993.
- 1594. Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962.
- 2028. Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974.
- 2765-1. Request for Issue or Turn-In. April 1976.
- 3955. Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979.
- 4179-R. Leave Control Log. September 1993.
- 4186. Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty. January 1985.

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

- 350-38. Standards in Weapons Training. 3 July 1997.
- 385-1. Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide. 22 September 1993.
- 600-8. Management and Administrative Procedures. 25 February 1986.
- 600-8-20. SIDPERS Handbook for Commanders. 1 April 1986.
- 600-41. Military Personnel Managers Mobilization Handbook. 1 January 1987.
- 600-67. Effective Writing for Army Leaders. 2 June 1986.
- 710-2-1. Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997.
- 710-2-2. Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures. 30 September 1998.
- 738-750. Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994.
- 738-751. Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System—Aviation (TAMMS-A). 15 March 1999.

### **Department of Defense Forms**

- 551. Record of Interment. August 1984.
- 565. Statement of Recognition of Deceased. July 1998.
- 567. Record of Search and Recovery. July 1998.
- 1380. US Field Medical Card. December 1991.
- 1833. Isolated Personnel Report. February 1984.

### **Department of Defense Publication**

- 4500.9-R Part III. Defense Transportation Regulation (Mobility). April 1997.

### **Field Manuals**

FM numbering is in transition to a new system. The first number shown below is the new or future number. The second number, shown in parentheses, is the old or current number. If no new number appears, that publication is slated to be superseded by a new publication or to be rescinded.

- FM 1-0(FM 12-6). Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994.
- FM 1-05(FM 16-1). Religious Support. 26 May 1995.
- FM 2-0(FM 34-1). Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.

FM 2-00.21(FM 34-2-1). Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991.

FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130). Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994.

FM 2-19.202(FM 34-25-6). (S) Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Electronic Processing and Dissemination System (U). 15 June 1992.

FM 2-33.4 (FM 34-3). Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990.

FM 2-50.3(FM 34-25-3). All-Source Analysis System and the Analysis and Control Element. 3 October 1995.

FM 3-0(FM 100-5). Operations. 14 June 2001.

FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8). Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999.

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100). Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997.

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111). Aviation Brigades. 27 October 1997.

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112). Attack Helicopter Operations. 2 April 1997.

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113). Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations. 12 September 1997.

FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114). Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations. 1 February 2000.

FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300). Flight Operations Procedures. 15 July 1998.

FM 3-04.400(FM 1-400). Aviator's Handbook. 31 May 1983.

FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500). Army Aviation Maintenance. 26 September 2000.

FM 3-04.508(FM 1-508). Maintaining Aviation Life Support Equipment. 1 March 2000.

FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513). Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft. 27 September 2000.

FM 3-04.514(FM 1-514). Fundamentals of Rotor and Power Train Maintenance—Techniques and Procedures. 5 April 1991.

FM 3-04.563(FM 1-563). Fundamentals and Procedures of Airframe Maintenance. 30 September 1991.

FM 3-07(FM 100-20). Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict. 5 December 1990.

FM 3-07.5(FM 90-29). Noncombatant Evacuation Operations. 17 October 1994.

FM 3-07.7 (FM 100-19). Domestic Support Operations. 1 July 1993.

FM 3-09(FM 6-20). Fire Support in the Airland Battle. 17 May 1988.

FM 3-09.10 (FM 71-1). Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998.

FM 3-09.31(FM 6-71). Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support for the Combined Arms Commander. 29 September 1994.

FM 3-11(FM 3-100). Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.

FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3). Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.

FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4). NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.

FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5). NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.

FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7). NBC Field Handbook. 29 September 1994.

FM 3-11.50(FM 3-50). Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.

FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100). Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.

FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30). Physical Security. 8 January 2001.

FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40). Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001.

FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95). Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996.

FM 3-21.7 (FM 7-7). The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.

FM 3-21.8 (FM 7-8). Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.

FM 3-21.10(FM 7-10). The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.

FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20). The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992.

FM 3-22.6 (FM 22-6). Guard Duty. 17 September 1971.

FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3). Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.

FM 3-25.10 (FM 21-10-1). Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.

FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75). Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984.

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

FM 3-34.2. Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000.  
FM 3-34.102(FM 5-102). Countermobility. 14 March 1985.  
FM 3-34.103(FM 5-103). Survivability. 10 June 1985.  
FM 3-34-170(FM 5-170). Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.  
FM 3-35(FM 100-17). Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization. 28 October 1992.  
FM 3-57(FM 41-10). Civil Affairs Operations. 14 February 2000.  
FM 3-91.1(FM 71-1). Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998.  
FM 3-97.50(FM 3-50). Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.  
FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14). Risk Management. 23 April 1998.  
FM 3-100.15(FM 100-15). Corps Operations. 29 October 1996.  
FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100). Division Operations. 28 August 1996.  
FM 4-0(FM 100-10). Combat Service Support. 3 October 1995.  
FM 4-01(FM 55-1). Transportation Operations. 3 October 1995.  
FM 4-01.3 (FM 55-10). Movement Control. 9 February 1999.  
FM 4.01-9(FM 55-9). Unit Air Movement Planning. 5 April 1993.  
FM 4-01.12(FM 55-20). Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 2000.  
FM 4-01.40(FM 55-30). Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997.  
FM 4-02.6(FM 8-10-6). Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000.  
FM 4-20 (FM 10-1). Quartermaster Principles. 11 August 1994.  
FM 4-20.05(FM 10-27-4). Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.  
FM 4-20.2(FM 10-23). Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.  
FM 4-20.51(FM 10-23-1). Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992.  
FM 4-25.10 (FM 21-10). Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.  
FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11). First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988.  
FM 4-25.12(FM 21-10-1). Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002.  
FM 4-30.3(FM 9-43-1). Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000.  
FM 4-93.2 (FM 63-2). Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991.  
FM 4-93.3(FM 63-3). Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993.  
FM 4-93.4(FM 63-4). Combat Service Support Operations—Theater Army Area Command. 24 September 1984.  
FM 4-93.21 (FM 63-21). Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990.  
FM 4-93.40(FM 54-40). Area Support Group. 3 October 1995.  
FM 4-94(FM 63-4). Combat Service Support Operations—Theater Army Area Command. 24 September 1984.  
FM 5-0(FM 101-5). Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.  
FM 6-02(FM 24-1). Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990.  
FM 6-02.7(FM 24-7). Tactical Local Area Network (LAN) Management. 8 October 1999.  
FM 6-02.11(FM 24-11). Tactical Satellite Communications. 20 September 1990.  
FM 6-02.16(FM 24-16). Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records and Reports. 7 April 1978.  
FM 6-02.18(FM 24-18). Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.  
FM 6-02.19(FM 24-19). Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991.  
FM 6-02.22(FM 24-22). Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS). 30 June 1977.  
FM 6-02.33(FM 24-33). Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.

FM 6-02.35(FM 24-35). (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990.  
FM 6-22(FM 22-100). Army Leadership. 31 August 1999.  
FM 6-99.1(FM 101-5-1). Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997.  
FM 7-10(FM 25-101). Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.  
FM 7-0(FM 25-100). Training the Force. 15 November 1988.

### **Joint Publications**

JP 3-50.21. Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue. 23 March 1998.  
JP 4-0. Doctrine for Logistic Support of Joint Operations. 6 April 2000.

### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 1-15II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Aviation Branch (15), Company Grade Officer's and Aviation Commissioned Warrant Officer's Manual. 23 March 1992.  
STP 1-93C1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 93C, Air Traffic Control Operator Skill Level 1. 28 December 1994.  
STP 1-93P1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 93P, Aviation Operations Specialist Skill Level 1. 31 July 1996.  
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 93P, Aviation Operations Specialist. 31 July 1996.  
STP 21-1-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 2001.  
STP 21-24-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 2001.

### **Standard Form**

SF 368. Product Quality Deficiency Report (NSN 7540-00-133-5541). October 1985.

### **Technical Bulletins**

TB 1-1500-341-01. Aircraft Components Requiring Maintenance Management and Historical Data Reports. 4 September 2001.  
TB 43-0106. Aeronautical Equipment Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP). 10 April 1987.  
TB 43-180. Calibration and Repair Requirements for the Maintenance of Army Materiel. 1 December 2000.  
TB 380-41. (O) Procedures for Safeguarding, Accounting, and Supply Control of COMSEC Material. 1 October 1994.  
TB 750-25. Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair and Support (C&RS) Program. 1 March 1997.

### **Training Circulars**

TC 1-210. Aircrew Training Program Commander's Guide to Individual and Crew Standardization. 3 October 1995.  
TC 1-211. Aircrew Training Manual for Utility Helicopter, UH-1. 9 December 1992.  
TC 1-212. Aircrew Training Manual for Utility Helicopter, UH-60/EH-60. 8 March 1996.  
TC 1-213. Aircrew Training Manual for Attack Helicopter, AH-1. 9 December 1992.  
TC 1-214. Aircrew Training Manual, Attack Helicopter, AH-64. 20 May 1992.  
TC 1-215. Aircrew Training Manual, Observation Helicopter, OH-58A/C. 2 March 1993.  
TC 1-216. Aircrew Training Manual for Cargo Helicopter, CH-47. 8 October 1992.  
TC 1-219. Aircrew Training Manual for Guardrail/Common Sensor Airplane RC-12K/N/P. 20 September 1994.

## **ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

TC 24-20. Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

TC 25-30. A Leader's Guide to Company Training Meetings. 27 April 1994.

### **Technical Manuals**

TM 1-1500-204-23-1. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (General Maintenance and Practices) Volume 1. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-2. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Pneudraulics Maintenance and Practices) Volume 2. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-3. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Maintenance Practices for Fuel and Oil Systems) Volume 3. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-4. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Electrical and Instrument Maintenance Procedures and Practices) Volume 4. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-5. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Propeller, Rotor, and Powertrain Maintenance Practices) Volume 5. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-6. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Hardware and Consumable Materials) Volume 6. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-7. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Nondestructive Testing and Flaw Detection Procedures and Practices) Volume 7. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-8. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Machine and Welding Shop Practices) Volume 8. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-9. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Tools and Ground Support Equipment) Volume 9. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-204-23-10. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Sheet Metal Shop Practices) Volume 10. 31 July 1992.

TM 1-1500-250-23. Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance for General Tie-Down and Mooring on All Series Army Models, AH-64, UH-60, CH-47, UH-1, AH-1, OH-58 Helicopters. 24 August 1990.

TM 1-1520-237-10. Operator's Manual for UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 31 October 1996.

TM 1-1520-237-23-1. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters, and UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.

TM 1-1520-237-23-2. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 29 May 1998.

TM 1-1520-237-23-3. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters, UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.

TM 1-1520-237-23-4. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 29 May 1998.

TM 1-1520-237-23-5. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 29 May 1998.

TM 1-1520-237-23-6. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 29 May 1998.

- TM 1-1520-237-23-7. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters, and UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.
- TM 1-1520-237-23-8. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters, and UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.
- TM 1-1520-237-23-9. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters and UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.
- TM 1-1520-237-23-10-1. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters and UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.
- TM 1-1520-237-23-10-2. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters. 29 May 1998.
- TM 1-1520-237-23-11. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters, and UH-60Q Helicopters. 29 May 1998.
- TM 1-1520-237-23P-1. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Utility Tactical Transport, UH-60A (NSN 1520-01-035-0266) EH-60A (1520-01-082-0686) UH-60L (1520-01-298-4532) UH-60Q (1520-01-459-9468). 27 November 2000.
- TM 1-1520-237-23P-2. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Utility Tactical Transport, UH-60A (NSN 1520-01-035-0266); EH-60A (1520-01-082-0686); UH-60L (1520-01-298-4532); UH-60Q (1520-01-459-9468), 27 November 2000.
- TM 1-1520-237-23P-3. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Utility Tactical Transport, UH-60A (NSN 1520-01-035-0266); EH-60A (1520-01-082-0686); UH-60L (1520-01-298-4532); UH-60Q (1520-01-459-9468). 27 November 2000.
- TM 1-1520-237-23P-4. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Utility Tactical Transport, UH-60A (NSN 1520-01-035-0266); EH-60A (1520-01-082-0686); UH-60L (1520-01-298-4532); UH-60Q (1520-01-459-9468). 27 November 2000.
- TM 1-1520-237-23P-5. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Utility Tactical Transport, UH-60A (NSN 1520-01-035-0266); EH-60A (1520-01-082-0686); UH-60L (1520-01-298-4532); UH-60Q (1520-01-459-9468). 27 November 2000.
- TM 1-1520-237-23P-6. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Utility Tactical Transport, UH-60A (NSN 1520-01-035-0266); EH-60A (1520-01-082-0686); UH-60L (1520-01-298-4532); and UH-60Q (1520-01-459-9468). 15 June 2001.
- TM 1-1520-237-BD. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Battlefield Damage Assessment & Repair for Army Model UH-60A, EH-60A, and UH-60L Helicopters. 28 February 1995.
- TM 1-1520-237-CL. Operator's and Crewmember's Checklist for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 31 October 1996.
- TM 1-1520-237-MTF. Maintenance Test Flight Manual for UH-60A Helicopter, UH-60L Helicopter, and EH-60A Helicopter. 31 March 1997.
- TM 1-1520-237-PMS-1. Preventive Maintenance Services 10 Hour/14 Day (30 Hour/42 Day) Inspection Checklist for UH-60A, UH-60L and EH-60A Helicopters. 29 January 1999.
- TM 1-1520-237-PMS-2. Preventive Maintenance Services Periodic Inspection Checklist for Army Models UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, EH-60A Helicopters and UH-60Q Helicopters. 28 June 1996.
- TM 1-1520-237-S. Preparation for Shipment of Army Models, UH-60A Helicopter, UH-60L Helicopter, EH-60A Helicopter. 3 July 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-10. Operator's Manual for Army OH-58D Helicopter. 15 November 2001.
- TM 1-1520-248-23-1. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.

## ARTEP 1-500-MTP

- TM 1-1520-248-23-2. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopter. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-23-3. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopter. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-23-4. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-23-5. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopter. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-23-6. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-23-7. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army Model OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-23P. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List (Including Depot Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools) for Helicopter, Observation OH-58D (NSN 1520-01-125-5476). 3 March 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-CL. Operator's and Crewmembers Checklist for Army OH-58D Helicopter. 15 November 2001.
- TM 1-1520-248-MTF. Maintenance Test Flight for Army OH-58D Helicopter. 15 November 2001.
- TM 1-1520-248-PPM. OH-58D Helicopter Progressive Phase Maintenance Inspection Checklist and Preventive Maintenance Services. 30 April 1999.
- TM 1-1520-248-S. Preparation for Shipment of Army Model OH-58D and OH-58D(I) Helicopters. 31 January 1999.
- TM 1-1520-248-T-1. Operational Checks and Maintenance Action Precise Symptoms (MAPS) Diagrams Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-T-2. Operational Checks and Maintenance Action Precise Symptoms (MAPS) Diagrams Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-248-T-3. Operational Checks and Maintenance Action Precise Symptoms (MAPS) Diagrams Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Army OH-58D Helicopters. 28 February 2000.
- TM 1-1520-253-10. Operator's Manual for UH-60Q Helicopter. 29 January 1999.
- TM 11-1520-237-23-1. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for UH-60A Utility Helicopter (NSN 1520-01-035-0266), UH-60L Utility Helicopter (1520-01-298-4532), and UH-60Q Medical Evacuation Helicopter (1520-01-459-9468) UH-60A/L General Information, Navigational, and Command Instrument Sets. 1 May 1999.
- TM 11-1520-237-23-2. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance for UH-60A Utility Helicopter (NSN 1520-01-035-0266), UH-60L Utility Helicopter (1520-01-298-4532), and UH-60Q Medical Evacuation Helicopter (1520-01-459-9468) UH-60A/L Automatic Flight Control Set. 1 May 1999.
- TM 11-5820-1049-23P. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List for Radio Set AN/PRC-90-2. 15 August 1990.
- TM 11-5895-1174-23. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for Control, Communication System C-6533/ARC (NSN 5895-00-895-4175). 1 August 1991.
- TM 55-1520-210-10. Operator's Manual for Army Model UH-1H/V Helicopters. 15 February 1988.
- TM 55-1520-228-BD. Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Helicopter, Observation OH-58A and OH-58C (NSN 1520-00-169-7137) and (1520-01-020-4216). 4 January 1991.
- TM 55-1520-240-10. Operator's Manual for Army CH-47D Helicopter. 30 April 1992.
- TM 55-1520-240-23-9. Aviation Unit and Intermediate Maintenance Manual for CH-47D Helicopter. 10 May 1983.

TM 55-1680-317-23&P. Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance Manual With Repair Parts and Special Tools List for Army Aircraft Survival Kits. 26 March 1987.  
TM 743-200-1. Storage and Materials Handling. 15 January 1958.

**Training and Doctrine Pamphlet**

TRADOC Pam 11-9. Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990.

**Training Support Packages**

011-540-C068. Avionics/Instruments. 1 February 1999.  
011-540-C004. Supply Publications. 30 September 1998.

## MISSION TRAINING PLAN

### USER FEEDBACK

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

User feedback is an important link in the improvement of training publications. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, this standard questionnaire is provided. Please answer each question frankly, and mail the questionnaire to Commander, US Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (S-3, XO, or other)?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?

a. Active

b. Reserve

5. Where is your unit?

a. CONUS

b. Eighth US Army

c. US Army, Europe

d. US Army Western Command

e. Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How has this MTP affected training in your unit compared to other training products?

a. It has made training better.

b. It has had no effect on training.

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

c. It has made training worse (If so, explain why.).

7. How easy is this MTP to use compared to other training products?

a. Easier

b. About the same

c. More difficult (If so, explain why.) \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

8. Which part of the MTP was most useful? Why?

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training \_\_\_\_\_

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes \_\_\_\_\_

c. Chapter 3, Training Plans \_\_\_\_\_

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises \_\_\_\_\_

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines \_\_\_\_\_

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations \_\_\_\_\_

9. Which part of the MTP was *least* useful? Why?

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training \_\_\_\_\_

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes \_\_\_\_\_

c. Chapter 3, Training Plans \_\_\_\_\_

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises \_\_\_\_\_

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines \_\_\_\_\_

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations \_\_\_\_\_

10. What part of the MTP was the *easiest* to understand?

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training \_\_\_\_\_

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes \_\_\_\_\_

c. Chapter 3, Training Plans \_\_\_\_\_

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises \_\_\_\_\_

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines \_\_\_\_\_

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations \_\_\_\_\_

11. Which part of the MTP was the *most difficult* to understand?

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training \_\_\_\_\_

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes \_\_\_\_\_

c. Chapter 3, Training Plans \_\_\_\_\_

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises \_\_\_\_\_

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines \_\_\_\_\_

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations \_\_\_\_\_

12. What do you like best about this ARTEP?

a. Format

b. Content

c. Graphics

d. Readability

e. Organization

13. What would you like to see *added* to this MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

14. What would you like to see *deleted* from this MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

15. Would you like to have added to this MTP a training matrix that contains an alphabetical listing of all tasks?

a. Yes.

b. No.

16. Would you like to have added to this MTP a training matrix that contains a separate crosswalk between each collective task and its individual tasks?

a. Yes.

b. No.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES (FTX AND STXs):

17. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime missions. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

a. They provide 100 percent of my unit's training requirements.

**ARTEP 1-500-MTP**

- b. They provide 75 percent or more of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on separate sheet.)
- c. They provide 50 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on a separate sheet.)

d. They provide 25 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on a separate sheet.)

**18.** Would you recommend that any STX or FTX be added to or deleted from this MTP?

- a. No.
- b. Yes (specify). \_\_\_\_\_

**19.** What was the *greatest* problem you experienced with the exercises? (If more than one problem, please rank in order of importance; that is, 1, 2, 3, and so on.)

- a. Too many pages.
- b. Need more illustrations.
- c. Hard to read and understand.
- d. Need more information on leader training.
- e. Need more information on support and resources.
- f. Need more information on normally attached elements.
- g. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- h. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- i. Do not interface well with other training products such as crew drills.

**20.** How many STXs or FTXs have you trained on or participated in?

\_\_\_\_\_

**21.** Additional comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



**ARTEP 1-500-MTP  
1 APRIL 2002**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

Official:

  
**JOEL B. HUDSON**  
*Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army*  
0210803

**ERIC K. SHINSEKI**  
*General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff*

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and U. S. Army Reserve:* To be distributed according to the initial distribution number 212105, requirements for ARTEP 1-500-MTP.

**PIN: 039596-000**